



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

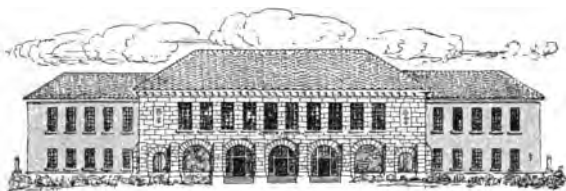
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

THE END





SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK  
COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARIES

THE  
FIRST LATIN BOOK

*Presented to  
Leland Stanford Jr. University*  
BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.

HEAD-MASTER ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL

*by The Seamen's Institute*  
AND  
M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M.

PRINCIPAL CHAUNCY-HALL SCHOOL, BOSTON

*of  
Yokohama*

---

BOSTON, U.S.A.  
PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY

1899

A.

683326

COPYRIGHT, 1894, BY  
WILLIAM C. COLLAR AND M. GRANT DANIELL

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

C



## PREFACE.

---

THIS book is not a revision of "The Beginner's Latin Book," nor is it intended to supersede that work. It has been written for the purpose of offering to schools that cannot afford the amount of time and practice required to complete "The Beginner's Latin Book," a work not less thorough, but easier, and demanding not more than two-thirds as much time. The reduction has been made almost wholly by shortening the exercises for translation, particularly those to be turned into Latin.

Those who compare the two books will find that the inflections of the language are illustrated with as much copiousness in this book as in the former. The same is true of the comparative completeness with which the principles of syntax are treated. In fact a place was found for some points of construction that were not taken up in the earlier book.

Except in the few pages of introduction, the *colloquia*, and some minor matters, the contents of the book are new, but everywhere increased simplicity and clearness have been studied, not novelty.

Deviations from the method of "The Beginner's Latin Book" will be found to be unimportant, except in the treatment of the pronouns, the subjunctive, the infinitive,

and the participle. Instead of deferring these subjects till very late and then dealing with them in mass, they have been brought forward much earlier in some of their uses, so as to distribute difficulties and make practice more gradual, varied, and extended. Reading lessons have been introduced early and great pains taken to grade them in point of difficulty to the progress of the learner, and at the same time to exemplify those forms and principles of syntax that have constituted the substance of preceding lessons.

Beyond such changes in order and method, it did not seem to us wise to depart from the plan of the earlier book. The surprising favor with which that book was received at once, on its publication, and its annually increasing use, amounting, as the publishers inform us, to more than 45,000 copies a year, seemed the strongest justification for building on the same plan.

In preparing the former book we conceived it to be of the highest importance, "while following a rigorously scientific method in the development of the successive subjects, to impart something of attractiveness, interest, freshness, and variety to the study of the elements of Latin."<sup>1</sup> To engage the interest of the young learner at the outset of his study of Latin is to gain for him an immense advantage in wrestling with so difficult a language. Though this principle seems to have been purposely ignored in some first Latin books that have appeared since the publication of "The Beginner's Latin Book," we are not shaken in our belief that both reason and experience will continue to condemn such works as

<sup>1</sup> See "The Beginner's Latin Book," p. vi.

fundamentally and fatally wrong in conception, whatever be the care and skill shown in their compilation. To acquire Latin is a task calling for patience, industry, perseverance, time. But if the beginner, as sometimes happens, has the misfortune to spend a good part of a year over a wooden book of forms and exercises, then to be thrust upon a difficult and uninteresting military history, there is considerable danger that he will become impatient, lazy, discouraged, and will abandon the study.

Whatever means were found available in the preparation of "The Beginner's Latin Book" for imparting "interest and freshness," have been used in this, and in particular the principle of continuity in separate exercises has been kept in view and applied as far as was found practicable. What is meant may be found illustrated in such exercises as those numbered 104, 118, 123, 128, 129, 310, 480.

It will be seen that this book is designed to be not simply a stile to a particular author, but rather a gate to the Latin language. No effort has been made to keep the vocabularies down to the point of meagreness and to circumscribe them to one set of ideas. It was accordingly no objection in the opinion of the authors, but rather a recommendation, that the selections for reading at the end of the book contain a copious and varied vocabulary. Yet it appears that the learner, after completing the lessons that precede, has already had and used more than two-thirds of the words occurring in these selections.

The attention of all who use this book is called to the special and general vocabularies at the end. They are



not mere catalogues of words. Great pains have been taken to make them thoroughly helpful to the learner. Besides references to the text, comparisons are constantly made with synonymous words, and the learner is reminded of the most interesting kindred words in English.

We are strongly of the opinion that, after the rudiments have been learned, it is wise to have some weeks or months of reading in easy Latin before Nepos and Caesar are taken up. Even in the course of the first few months of study it is desirable to give a part of the hour of recitation to reading at sight in such a book as "The New Gradatim," the teacher leading the way and supplying the meanings of words. This book may very well be followed by some easy Latin Reader, or by "Viri Romae," for which a term or more of the first year should remain after completing the lessons. We are confident that such a course would so much lessen the difficulty of beginning Nepos or Caesar, and so much increase the pleasure and confidence of the learner, that it would soon seem strange that a different practice should ever have prevailed.

The merits of "Viri Romae," as a reading book for boys and girls, seem not to be fully appreciated in this country. It is not too difficult, it is interesting from beginning to end, and it presents to the young many noble ideals of spirit and conduct. Occasionally a pedant objects to the Latinity; but the Latinity is at least as good as that of Nepos, and learned schoolmasters all over Europe put it into the hands of their pupils.

Our thanks are due to Miss Alice M. Wing, of the Springfield High School, and to Mr. J. H. Humphries, of the Girls' High School, Philadelphia, for suggestions

made while the proof-sheets were passing through the press. We are under special obligations to Mr. John L. March, of the Harry Hillman Academy, Wilkesbarre, Pa., and to Mr. Clarence W. Gleason, of the Roxbury Latin School. Both gentlemen made valuable suggestions and read the proofs with as much concentrated attention and scrupulous care as if the work were their own and its accuracy depended upon them individually.

WM. C. COLLAR.

M. G. DANIELL.

BOSTON, Sept. 14, 1894.



# CONTENTS.

---

LESSON	PAGE
GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1-6
I. FIRST DECLENSION : Nominative Singular and Plural . . . . .	7, 8
II. FIRST DECLENSION : Nominative and Accusative. — <i>Subject.</i> — <i>Direct Object</i> . . . . .	9-11
III. FIRST DECLENSION : Dative. — <i>Indirect Object.</i> — <i>Possessive Dative</i> . . . . .	11-13
IV. FIRST DECLENSION : <i>Genitive.</i> — <i>Predicate Nom- inative</i> . . . . .	14, 15
V. SECOND DECLENSION : Words in <b>-us</b> and <b>-um</b> . <i>Apposition</i> . . . . .	16-18
VI. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS : <i>Agreement of Adjectives</i> . . . . .	18-20
VII. SECOND DECLENSION : Words in <b>-er</b> . . . . .	21-23
VIII. THE VERB <b>sum</b> : Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative ; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — <i>Agreement of Verbs.</i> <i>Colloquium</i> . . . . .	23-25
IX. FIRST CONJUGATION : Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative ; Present Imperative and In- finitive . . . . .	26, 27
X. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. <i>Colloquium</i> . . . . .	27, 28
XI. THE VERB <b>sum</b> : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative ; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Instru- mental Ablative</i> . . . . .	29-31
XII. FIRST CONJUGATION : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative ; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Ablative of Manner</i> . . . . .	31-33

LESSON	PAGE
XIII. READING LESSON: THE ROMANS AND THE SABINES .	33, 34
XIV. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <i>hic</i> AND <i>ille</i> . . . . .	35-37
XV. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN . . . . .	37-39
XVI. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN: <i>Agreement of Relative</i>	40-42
XVII. THE DEMONSTRATIVE <i>is</i> . . . . .	42-44
XVIII. THIRD DECLENSION: Mute Stems . . . . .	45-47
XIX. THIRD DECLENSION: Mute Stems. — <i>Ablative of Cause. Colloquium</i> . . . . .	47-50
XX. THIRD DECLENSION: Liquid Stems. — <i>Descriptive Ablative and Genitive</i> . . . . .	51-53
XXI. READING LESSON: SCIPIO AND HANNIBAL. <i>Colloquium</i> . . . . .	53-55
XXII. THIRD DECLENSION: Stems in <i>i</i> . . . . .	56-58
XXIII. THIRD DECLENSION: Stems in <i>i</i> . — <i>Ablative of Time</i> . . . . .	58-61
XXIV. THIRD DECLENSION: Gender. — ANECDOTE. <i>Colloquium</i> . . . . .	61-63
XXV. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION . . . . .	64-66
XXVI. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION . . . . .	66, 67
XXVII. SECOND CONJUGATION: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive . . . . .	68, 69
XXVIII. READING LESSON: THE VOLSCIANS . . . . .	70
XXIX. THE LOCATIVE CASE . . . . .	71, 72
XXX. SECOND CONJUGATION: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive . . . . .	72, 73
XXXI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: Declension of Comparatives. — <i>Ablative of Comparison</i> . . . . .	74-76
XXXII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: <i>Partitive Genitive</i>	77-79
XXXIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: <i>Ablative of Degree of Difference</i> . . . . .	80-82
XXXIV. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS. — <i>Colloquium</i> . . . . .	82-85
XXXV. THIRD CONJUGATION: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive . . . . .	85-87
XXXVI. READING LESSON: CORNELIA'S JEWELS . . . . .	87, 88

# CONTENTS.

xi

LESSON	PAGE
XXXVII. FOURTH DECLENSION . . . . .	89, 90
XXXVIII. THIRD CONJUGATION: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive.— <i>Ablative of Accompaniment</i> . . . . .	91-93
XXXIX. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS: POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES . . . . .	94-97
XL. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE WITH <i>ut</i> AND <i>nē</i> .— Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> , <i>amō</i> , and <i>moneō</i> . . . . .	98, 99
XLI. FIFTH DECLENSION: <i>Accusative of Extent</i> . <i>Colloquium</i> . . . . .	100-102
XLII. THIRD CONJUGATION, VERBS IN <i>-iō</i> : Tenses of the Indicative; Present Imperative; Present and Perfect Infinitive.— <i>Accusa-</i> <i>tive of Place Whither</i> . . . . .	103-105
XLIII. READING LESSON: A BATTLE . . . . .	106, 107
XLIV. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT WITH <i>ut</i> AND <i>ut</i> <i>nōn</i> .— Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of <i>regō</i> and <i>capīō</i> . . . . .	107-109
XLV. NUMERALS: Cardinals. <i>Colloquium</i> . . . . .	110-112
XLVI. NUMERALS: Ordinals.— Irregular Adjec- tives . . . . .	113, 114
XLVII. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE: Indicative, Infinitive, Present and Imperfect Subjunc- tive of <i>possum</i> .— <i>Predicate Adjective after</i> <i>Complementary Infinitive</i> .— <i>Subject of the</i> <i>Infinitive</i> . . . . .	115-117
XLVIII. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <i>iste</i> , <i>idem</i> , <i>ipse</i> . . . . .	118-120
XLIX. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS . . . . .	121-123
L. READING LESSON: CICERONIS EPISTULA.— DE VITIIS HOMINUM . . . . .	123, 124
LI. ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE: <i>Indirect Dis-</i> <i>course</i> .— Future Infinitives.— <i>Tenses of the</i> <i>Infinitive</i> . . . . .	125-128
LII. FOURTH CONJUGATION: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present and Imper- fect Subjunctive; Present Imperative and <i>Infinitive</i> . . . . .	128-130

LESSON	PAGE
LIII. FOURTH CONJUGATION: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect and Future Infinitive. — <i>Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.</i> . . . . .	131-133
LIV. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	134, 135
LV. DERIVATION . . . . .	136-138
LVI. PRESENT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES . . . . .	139-141
LVII. DEPONENT VERBS: <i>Ablative with Certain Deponents. Colloquium</i> . . . . .	142-145
LVIII. THE IRREGULAR VERBS <i>volō, nōlō, mālō</i> : <i>Dative with Intransitive Verbs</i> . . . . .	146-148
LIX. READING LESSON: ARS MEMORIAE. — CERVA ET VITIS . . . . .	149, 150
LX. <i>Cum</i> -Clauses: Pluperfect Subjunctive. — NASICA ET ENNIUS . . . . .	150-152
LXI. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE . . . . .	153-155
LXII. READING LESSON: GALLIA PACATA . . . . .	156, 157
LXIII. COMPOUNDS OF <i>sum</i> : <i>Dative with Compounds. — Dative of Service. — DE AMICITIA.</i> . . . .	157-160
LXIV. THE VERB <i>eō</i> : <i>Expressions of Place. — Ablative of Separation. Colloquium</i> . . . . .	161-165
LXV. SEQUENCE OF TENSES: <i>Indirect Questions. — Perfect Subjunctive</i> . . . . .	166-169
LXVI. THE VERBS <i>ferō</i> AND <i>fiō</i> . <i>Colloquium</i> . . . . .	169-172
LXVII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES. — <i>Cum Causal and Concessive</i> . . . . .	172-174
LXVIII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN WISHES AND APPEALS: <i>Future Imperative</i> . . . . .	175-178
LXIX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. — ALEXANDER ET PARMENIO . . . . .	178-181
LXX. READING LESSON: PROSERPINA . . . . .	182, 183
LXXI. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS: Future Active Participle and Gerundive. — <i>Dative of Agent</i> . . . . .	184-186
LXXII. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE. — SUPINE. — TUBICEN . . . . .	187-190
READING LESSONS . . . . .	193-203
TABLES OF DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION . . . . .	205-238
VOCABULARIES . . . . .	239-286

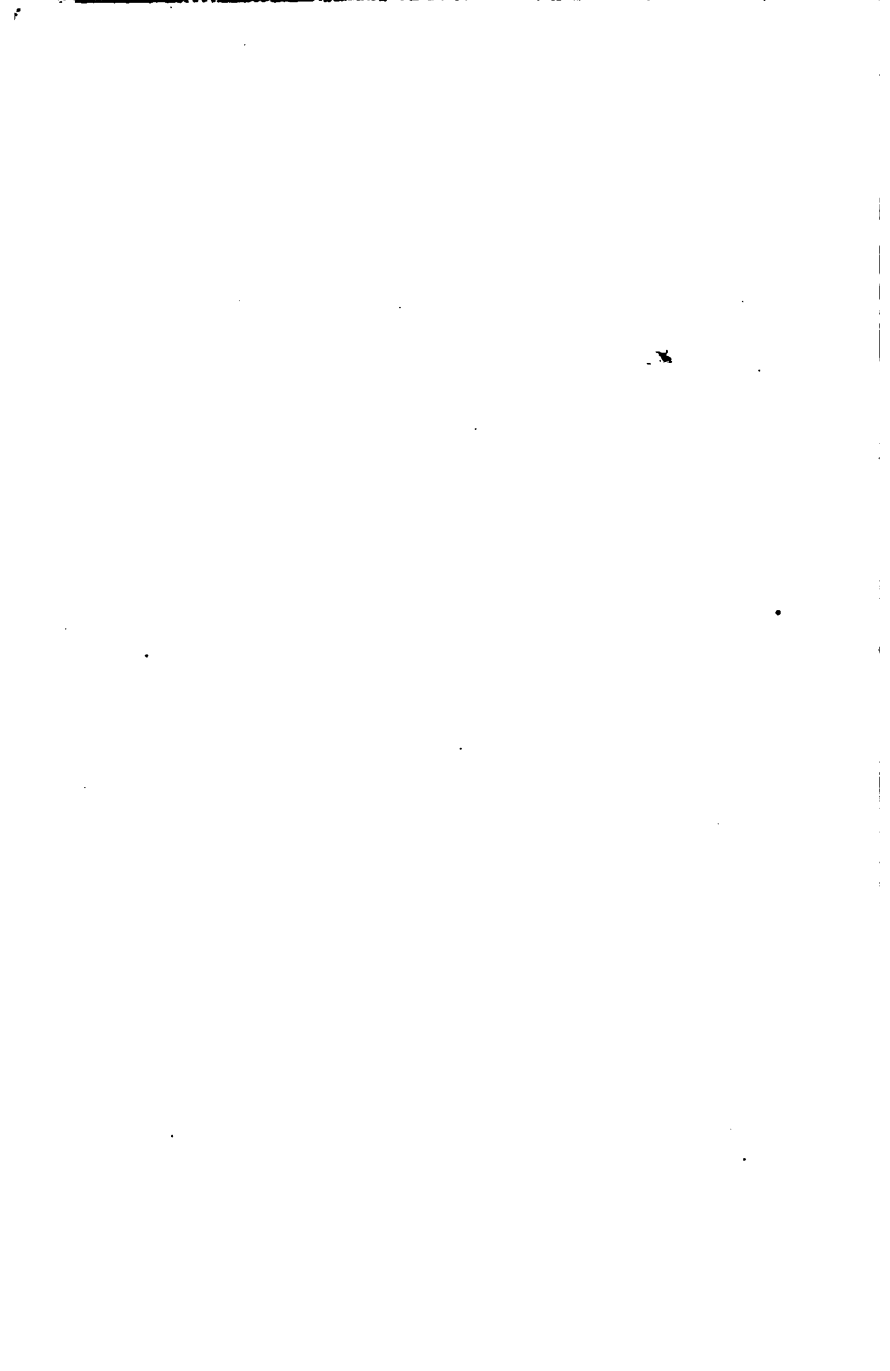
# ILLUSTRATIONS.

---

## THE YOUNG AUGUSTUS. *Frontispiece.*

	PAGE		PAGE
ARAE . . . . .	8	GALEAE . . . . .	97
TUBA . . . . .	13	PILA . . . . .	102
HASTA . . . . .	15	SIGNA . . . . .	105
CARRUS . . . . .	20	DENARIUS . . . . .	112
CYMBA . . . . .	25	GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR . . . . .	117
ARATRUM ANTIQUM . . . . .	34	CORNUA . . . . .	130
ROSTRA . . . . .	39	MILITES ROMANI . . . . .	133
EQUES . . . . .	44	CICERO . . . . .	141
SCIPIO . . . . .	55	TESTUDO . . . . .	148
HANNIBAL } . . . . .		CALCEI . . . . .	152
GLADIUS . . . . .	67	PHARETRA CUM SAGITTIS . . . . .	155
POCULUM . . . . .	69	CURRUS . . . . .	160
ARCUS . . . . .	73	VEXILLUM . . . . .	183
SCUTA . . . . .	76	CALCAR . . . . .	186
NAVIS PIRATA . . . . .	79	ROMANUS IN TOGA PRAE-	
NAVIS LONGA . . . . .	88	TEXTA . . . . .	191
TEMPLUM . . . . .	93		





# THE FIRST LATIN BOOK.

---

## GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.

THIS introduction, particularly so much of it as relates to pronunciation, may be most profitably used for reference. Pupils catch pronunciation quickly from the lips of the teacher, and, if they make mistakes, are interested in being referred to rules. It is therefore advised that the teacher begin with the *Colloquium*, page 5, pronouncing slowly each sentence, the pupils following successively, and then together.

---

**1. ALPHABET.**—The Latin alphabet has no *j* or *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

**2.** *I* does service both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the force of a consonant, and is called *i-consonant*.

### 3. Of the consonants

The mutes are . . . . . **p, b, t, d, c, k, g, q.**

The liquids are . . . . . **l, m, n, r.**

The sibilant is . . . . . **s.**

The double consonants are . . . **x = *cs* or *gs*, z = *ds*.**

## SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, ROMAN METHOD.

4. *Vowels.*

ā as the last <i>a</i> in <i>ahā'</i> .	ǣ as the first <i>a</i> in <i>ahā'</i> .
ē as in <i>they</i> .	ě as in <i>met</i> .
ī as in <i>machine</i> .	ĩ as in <i>pin</i> .
ō as in <i>holy</i> .	ö as in <i>wholly</i> .
ū <sup>1</sup> like <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i> .	ũ like <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i> .

5. *Diphthongs.*

æ like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> .	au like <i>ou</i> in <i>our</i> .
ei (rare) like <i>ei</i> in <i>eight</i> .	oe like <i>oi</i> in <i>boil</i> .
eu (rare) like <i>eu</i> in <i>feud</i> .	

6. *Consonants.*

Consonants generally have the same sounds as in English. But observe the following :—

c as in <i>come</i> .	g as in <i>get</i> .
f-consonant like <i>y</i> in <i>yet</i> .	s as in <i>sun</i> .
t as in <i>time</i> .	v like <i>w</i> in <i>wine</i> .
ch like <i>k</i> in <i>kite</i> .	ph like <i>f</i> in <i>far</i> .

## 7. SYLLABLES.

1. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs : *æ-gri-tū'-dō*, *sickness*.

<sup>1</sup> In *qu*, *gu*, and sometimes in *su*, before a vowel, *u* is a semi-vowel or consonant, is pronounced like *w*, and joined in utterance with the preceding letter; so likewise in *cui* and *huic*: *quis*, *qui*, *who*, *an'-guis*, *snake*; *cōu-suē'-tus*, *accustomed*.

2. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the vowel following: **a-mā'-bi-lis**, *amiable*.

3. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: **im'-pro-bus**, *bad*; **ho'-spes**, *guest*.

4. But in compound words the division must show the component parts: **ab'-est** (**ab**, *away*; **est**, *he is*), *he is away*.

5. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the one next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

### 8. QUANTITY.

1. Vowels are *long* (¯) or *short* (˘). In this book the long vowels are marked, except in some titles; unmarked vowels must be regarded as short.

2. A vowel is short before a vowel (with few exceptions) or *h*: **pō-ē'-ma**, *poem*; **grā'-tī-ae**, *thanks*; **nī'-hil**, *nothing*.

3. Diphthongs, vowels representing diphthongs, and vowels resulting from contraction are long: **in-cāū'-tus**, *heedless*; **in-ī'-quus** (*inaequus*), *unequal*; **cō'-gō** (*cōlgo*), *collect*.

4. A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **vō'-cēs**, *voices*; **ae'-dēs**, *temple*.

5. A syllable is long if it has a short vowel followed by two or more consonants (except a mute

followed by *l* or *r*), or by *x* or *z*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: *sunt, they are*; *tem'-plum, temple*; *dux, leader*.

### 9. ACCENT.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first: *tu'-ba, trumpet*.

2. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, otherwise on the antepenult: *prae-di'-cō, foretell*; *prae'-di-cō, declare*; *il-le'-ce-brae, snares*; *pa-ter'-nus,<sup>1</sup> paternal*.

3. Several words, called enclitics, of which the commonest are *-ne*, the sign of a question, and *-que, and*, are appended to other words, and such words are then accented on the syllable preceding the *-ne* or *-que*: *amat'-ne, does he love?* *dōna'-que, and gifts*.

10. ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION. — By this method the above rules relating to syllables (7) and accent (9) are observed, and words are pronounced substantially as in English; but final *es* is sounded as in English *ease*, and the final *ōs* (acc. plur.) as in *dose*.

<sup>1</sup>Here, though the *vowel* of the penult is short, the *syllable* is long by § 5.

The following *colloquium* may be used for practice and to illustrate the preceding statements. See introductory note, page 1.

11.

*Colloquium.*

*Augustus.* Quid tibi vis?      *What do you wish (for yourself)?*

*Iulus.* Tēcum ambulāre velim.      *I should like to take a walk with you.*

*A.* Ego nōlō; domī manēre mālō.      *I don't want to; I prefer to stay at home.*

*I.* Cūr māvis?      *Why do you prefer (that)?*

*A.* Ego et frāter vesperī cum patre ambulāre mālumus.      *My brother and I had rather take a walk at evening with our father.*

*I.* Cūr mēcum per silvās vagārī nōn vultis?      *Why don't you want to roam with me through the woods?*

*A.* Quod vesperī amoenitāte frui mālumus quam sōlis ardōre.      *Because we had rather enjoy the pleasantness of evening than the heat of the sun.*

*I.* At iam saepe mēcum ambulāre nōluitī.      *But often before now you have not wanted to walk with me.*

*A.* Nōn rēctē dīcis; nōn est causa cūr tēcum ambulāre nōlim; at cum hortus avī satis amplius sit et lacum silvamque contineat, ibi mālumus lūdere. Sī vis, nōbiscum venī.      *What you say is not true; there is no reason why I should not want to walk with you; but since grandfather's garden is quite large, and has a pond and a grove, we had rather play there. If you like, come with us.*

**12. CASES.**

1. The names of the cases in Latin are : *nomina* *tive*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *ablative*, *vocative*, *locative*. Their characteristics of form, meaning, and use are illustrated in the paradigms and exercises which follow.

**13. GENDER.**—The gender of Latin nouns is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning, but much oftener by the termination.

1. Nouns denoting males, and names of rivers, winds, and months, are *masculine* : *agricola*, *farmer* ; *Cicerō*, *Cicero* ; *Padus*, *Po* ; *aquilō*, *north wind* ; *Iānuārius*, *January*.

2. Nouns denoting females, and names of countries, towns, islands, and trees, are *feminine* : *rēgina*, *queen* ; *Tullia*, *Tullia* ; *Āfrica*, *Africa* ; *Rōma*, *Rome* ; *Sicilia*, *Sicily* ; *pirus*, *pear-tree*.

---

It is assumed that the learner knows the names and functions of the parts of speech in English, and the meanings of the common grammatical terms, such as *subject and predicate*, *case*, *mood*, *tense*, *voice*, *declension*, *conjugation*, etc. So much knowledge is absolutely essential for entering upon the study of the following lessons.

## LESSON I.

## First Declension.

THE STEM<sup>1</sup> ENDS IN *ā*.

GENDER. The gender is feminine ; but see 13, 1.

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

## 14.

*Models.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>mēnsa, table.</i>	<i>mēnsae, tables.</i>
<i>puella, girl.</i>	<i>puellae, girls.</i>
<i>hasta, spear.</i>	<i>hastae, spears.</i>

a. How does the plural of the Latin noun differ from the singular? Form the plural of the adjectives below in the same way.

## 15.

*Vocabulary.*

NOUNS.	ADJECTIVES.
<i>columba, f. dove.</i>	<i>alba, white.</i>
<i>dea, f. goddess.</i>	<i>bona, good.</i>
<i>filia, f. daughter.</i>	<i>lāta, wide, broad.</i>
<i>hasta, f. spear, p. 15.</i>	<i>longa, long.</i>
<i>mēnsa, f. table.</i>	<i>parva, small.</i>
<i>Mūsa, f. Muse.</i>	<i>tua, your, yours (247, a).</i>
<i>puella, f. girl.</i>	
<i>via, f. road, street.</i>	
VERBS.	ADVERBS.
<i>est, (he, she, it) is.</i>	<i>ubi, where.</i>
<i>sunt, (they) are.</i>	<i>-ne, sign of a question (9, 3).</i>

<sup>1</sup> The stem is the common base to which certain letters are added

to express the relation of the word to other words.



## 16.

*Model Sentences.*

1. Columba est alba, *the dove is white.*
2. Columbae sunt albae, *doves are white.*
3. Estne tua filia parva? *is your daughter small?*
4. Ubi sunt longae hastae? *where are the long spears?*

a. Observe that the adjectives in the above sentences agree with their nouns in number.

b. In Latin there is no article: *mēnsa* may be translated, *a table, the table, or table.*

**17.** 1. Via est longa. 2. Viae sunt longae. 3. Puella est parva. 4. Puellae sunt parvae. 5. Hastae sunt longae. 6. Mēnsa est lāta. 7. Deae sunt bonae. 8. Mūsa est bona. 9. Ubi est filia bona? 10. Suntne columbae parvae? 11. Estne via lāta? 12. Longa via est bona. 13. Longae viae sunt bonae. 14. Suntne longae viae lātae?

**18.** 1. Where is the little girl? 2. Where are the little girls? 3. Are the girls small? 4. Are the goddesses good? 5. The broad street is long. 6. The white dove is small. 7. The daughters are good. 8. Is the spear a good one<sup>1</sup>? 9. Is the spear long? 10. Are the spears long? 11. The tables are long and broad.

<sup>1</sup> Omit.



ARAE.

## LESSON II.

## First Declension. — Continued.

## NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

## 19.

## Paradigm.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

N. tuba, *a trumpet.*N. tubae, *trumpets.*G. tubae, *of a trumpet.*G. tubārum, *of trumpets.*D. tubae, *to or for a trumpet.*D. tubis, *to or for trumpets.*AC. tubam, *a trumpet.*AC. tubās, *trumpets.*AB. tubā, *with a trumpet.*AB. tubis, *with trumpets.*

a. TERMINATIONS, printed in the paradigm in blacker type, consist of case endings joined with the final letter of the stem. But sometimes the final letter of the stem is lost, and sometimes the case ending.

b. Decline the adjectives below like the nouns.

## 20.

## Vocabulary.

## NOUNS.

## ADJECTIVES.

āra, f. *altar.*grāta, *pleasing, acceptable.*Minerva,<sup>1</sup> f. *Minerva.*mea, *my, mine.*pecūnia, f. *money.*pulchra, *beautiful.*poēta, m. *poet* (13, 1).rēgina, f. *queen.*rosa, f. *rose.*et, conj. *and.*tuba, f. *trumpet*, p. 13.quid, pron. *what?*

## VERBS.

amat, (*he, she, it*) *loves.*dat, (*he, she, it*) *gives.*amant, (*they*) *love.*dant, (*they*) *give.*habet, (*he, she, it*) *has.*laudat, (*he, she, it*) *praises.*habent, (*they*) *have.*laudant, (*they*) *praise.*

a. How does the plural of the verb forms differ from the singular?

<sup>1</sup>No plural.

**21.***Model Sentences.*

1. **Minerva** **āram** habet, *Minerva has an altar.*
2. **Poēta** tuam **filiam** laudat, *the poet praises your daughter.*
3. **Quid** habent **Minerva** et **Mūsae**? *what have Minerva and the Muses?*
4. **Pecūniam** meam habent, *they have my money.*

*a.* Observe the adjectives **tuam** and **meam**. They agree with their nouns in case as well as in number.

*b.* Observe the order of the words in each Latin sentence, and compare it with the order in English.

*c.* Observe the cases. To what case in English does the accusative in these sentences correspond?

*d.* When the subject of the verb is not expressed, the ending of the verb shows the person and number of the omitted subject.

**22. Rule.** — *The subject of a finite<sup>1</sup> verb is in the nominative.*

**23. Rule.** — *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.*

- 24.** 1. **Tua** pecūnia est grāta. 2. **Quid** habent poētae? 3. **Meae** filiae rosās albās dant. 4. **Datne** dea bona pulchram tubam? 5. **Puellae** pulchrae columbās amant. 6. **Minerva** et **Mūsae** ārās habent. 7. **Poēta** amat columbam parvam. 8. **Hastās** longās laudat. 9. **Pulchrās** puellās laudant. 10. **Ubi** sunt tuae tubae?

- 25.** 1. They praise the broad streets. 2. The beautiful queen has a beautiful rose. 3. Where is the queen and where is the poet? 4. He gives a spear and a

<sup>1</sup> That is, in any mood except the infinitive.

trumpet. 5. Your spear is a long one.<sup>1</sup> 6. They have money. 7. What has Minerva? 8. Minerva has a spear. 9. Has the goddess a beautiful altar? 10. Are the tables pleasing?

## 26.

*Colloquium.*

Estne via lāta? Certē (*certainly*), via est lāta et longa.  
 Quid habet puella parva? Puella parva rosam albam habet.  
 Laudantne bonam rēginam? Rēginam laudant et amant.  
 Ubi est mea filia parva? Tua filia est in (*in*) viā.

## LESSON III.

First Declension. — *Continued.*

## DATIVE.

## 27.

*Model Sentences.*

1. Poēta rēginæ rosam dat, the poet gives a rose to the queen; or, the poet gives the queen a rose.

2. Columba alba est puellæ, there is a white dove to the girl; that is, the girl has a white dove.

3. Pecūnia poētae grāta est, money is acceptable to the poet.

a. Observe in the first sentence that the *direct object* of dat is rosam. What the poet gives is a rose; the person to whom he gives is rēginæ, representing the *indirect object*.

28. Rule. — The indirect object is put in the dative.

b. Observe now the second sentence. The meaning is exactly the same as if it were puella habet columbam. The dative thus used is called the *dative of the possessor*, or the *possessive dative*.

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

**29. Rule.** — *The dative is used with est, sunt, etc., forms of the verb sum (516), to denote possession, the thing possessed being the subject.*

*c.* The third sentence illustrates a use of the dative with adjectives.

**30.***Vocabulary.*

NOUNS.	VERBS.
agricola, m. <i>farmer.</i>	erat, <i>was.</i>
Britannia, f. <i>Britain.</i>	erant, <i>were.</i>
fābula, f. <i>story.</i>	nārrat, <i>tells.</i>
Galba, m. <i>Galba.</i>	nārrant, <i>tell.</i>
lūna, f. <i>moon.</i>	placet, <i>pleases,</i> }
silva, f. <i>forest.</i>	placent, <i>please,</i> } with dative
ADJECTIVES.	
cāra, <i>dear.</i>	in, prep. with abl., <i>in, on.</i>
nova, <i>new.</i>	grāta est = placet.
	grātae sunt = placent.

Follow the Latin order in the first rendering of Latin sentences into English. That will aid you in making out the meaning; you can then translate into good English.

**31.** 1. Agricolae est filia. 2. Agricola filiam habet. 3. Poēta rēginae nārrat fābulam. 4. Fābula rēginae est grāta. 5. Fābula rēginae placet. 6. Parvae puellae agricola dat rosam. 7. Tubae parvis puellis placent. 8. In Britannīā erant longae viae. 9. Galba et poēta in silvā erant. 10. Lūna nova erat agricolae grāta.

**32.** Note the arrangement of words in the preceding exercise.

*a.* In a Latin sentence the subject is oftener placed first than elsewhere, and the verb (except *est* and *sunt*) oftener comes last than elsewhere.

*b.* If the subject seems to be more emphatic than any other word, it should be placed first.

*c.* Of two words that go together, as an adjective and a noun, the more emphatic comes first. The adjective oftener precedes.

*d.* It follows that there is great freedom in the arrangement of words in a Latin sentence; but the order must have a meaning. Do not arrange your words at haphazard.

**33.** Examine these three forms of the fifth sentence of **31** and the translation :—

1. *Fābula rēginae placet, the STORY (not the poem) pleases the queen.*

2. *Rēginae placet fābula, the story pleases the QUEEN (not the king).*

3. *Placet fābula rēginae, the story PLEASES (not grieves) the queen.*

**34.** 1.<sup>1</sup> Galba has a daughter. 2. The daughter tells the poet<sup>2</sup> a story. 3. On the altar there<sup>3</sup> was a rose. 4. The new moon pleases<sup>1</sup> the farmer.<sup>4</sup> 5. The Muses were dear to Minerva. 6. My daughters give the farmer some<sup>3</sup> money. 7. And the farmers give my daughters<sup>5</sup> pretty roses. 8. What has the queen? 9. The altars please<sup>1</sup> the goddesses.<sup>5</sup>

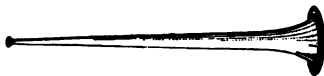
<sup>1</sup> Translate in two ways.

<sup>4</sup> Dative.

<sup>2</sup> Not the acc. Look out for other examples.

<sup>5</sup> *Dea* and *filia* have *abus* in the dative and ablative plural : *deabus, filiabus.*

<sup>3</sup> Omit.



TUBA.

## LESSON IV.

First Declension. — *Continued.*

## GENITIVE. PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

## 35.

*Model Sentences.*

1. *Vesta erat dea Rōmae, Vesta was a goddess of Rome.*
2. *Victōria est Britanniae rēgina, Victoria is queen of Britain.*
3. *Cāra deae est āra Mūsae, dear to the goddess is the Muse's altar.*
4. *Fīlia agricolae rosam dat poētae, the farmer's daughter gives a rose to the poet.*

a. Point out the genitive in each of the above sentences, and tell what word it limits.

**36. Rule.** — *A noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same person or thing, is put in the genitive.*

b. Examine the first two sentences. *Dea* denotes the same person as *Vesta* the subject; *rēgina* the same as the subject *Victōria*. Nouns thus used with *est* and similar verbs are called *predicate nouns*.

**37. Rule.** — *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.*

## 38.

*Vocabulary.*

*Eurōpa*, f. *Europe*.

*fera*, f. *wild beast*.

*Gallia*, f. *Gaul*.

*Graecia*, f. *Greece*.

*Helvētia*, f. *Helvetia*.

*insula*, f. *island*.

*Italia*, f. *Italy*.

*Rōma*, f. *Rome*.

*terra*, f. *land, country*.

*Vesta*, f. *Vesta (a goddess)*.

*Victōria*, f. *Victoria*.

*māgna*, adj. *great*.

*quis*, pron. *who?*

*hodiē*, adv. *to-day*.

*nōn*, adv. *not*.

*videt*, verb, *sees*.

*vident*, verb, *see*.

39. 1. *Helvētia erat terra Galliae.* 2. *Gallia erat Eurōpae terra.* 3. *Italia est Eurōpae magna terra.* 4. *Vesta et Minerva deae erant Rōmae.* 5. *Nōne<sup>1</sup> pulchrae erant Vestae et Minervae aerae?* 6. *Ubi sunt hodiē Graeciae deae?* 7. *Graecia erat terra Mūsarum.* 8. *Nōne sunt puellārum rosae māgnae?* 9. *Britannia est Eurōpae insula.* 10. *Quis viās Britanniae nōn laudat?*

a. In which sentences does the genitive precede the word which it limits? Account for its position.

40. 1. Italy and Greece are countries of Europe. 2. The roads of Greece are not wide and long. 3. Are the roads of the island long? 4. Who sees my daughters? 5. The queen sees the farmers' daughters. 6. She gives the beautiful girl money. 7. Galba has a trumpet. 8. Who sees wild beasts in Italy to-day? 9. They see the new moon. 10. Dear to the poet are the farmer's woods.

## 41.

*Colloquium.*

*Estne hodiē in Britannīā rēgina? Certē, Victōria est rēgina in Britannīā.*

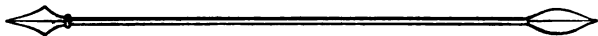
*Filiās habetne rēgina? Filiās habet rēgina.*

*Ubi sunt ferae māgnae? Sunt in Āfricā et in Āsiā.*

*Nōne sunt ferae in Eurōpā? Nōn sunt māgnae ferae.*

*Quid puellis placet? Rosae albae placent puellis.*

<sup>1</sup> Nōne expects the answer *yes*.



HASTA.



## LESSON V.

## Second Declension.

THE STEM ENDS IN ō.

APPOSITION.

42. GENDER. — Nouns of the second declension ending in *um* are neuter ; most others are masculine. But see 13, 2.

43. *Paradigms.*

<i>Hortus, garden.</i>		<i>Dōnum, gift.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. hortus	hortī	N. dōnum	dōna
G. hortī	hortōrum	G. dōnī	dōnōrum
D. hortō	hortīs	D. dōnō	dōnīs
AC. hortum	hortōs	AC. dōnum	dōna
AB. hortō	hortīs	AB. dōnō	dōnīs

a. The vocative singular of nouns in *-us* of the second declension has a special form in *ē*: hortē. The vocative of other nouns is the same in form as the nominative.

b. The vocative is the case of address: Mārce, Marcus.

c. What cases of *hortus* are alike in the singular? What in the plural? What case of the singular is like a plural case? What cases of the plural have endings like those of *tuba* (19)?

44. *Paradigm illustrating Apposition.*

N.	Mārcus amīcus, Marcus, a friend.
G.	Mārcī amīcī, of Marcus, a friend.
D.	Mārcō amīcō, to Marcus, a friend.
AC.	Mārcum amīcum, Marcus, a friend.
AB.	ā Mārcō amīcō, by Marcus, a friend.
V.	Mārce, amīce, Marcus, (my) friend.

a. When a descriptive noun is joined to another, meaning the same person or thing, as *amicus* to *Mārcus*, it is called an *appositive*.

**45. Rule.**—*An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.*

a. Read again the first two model sentences of Lesson IV. You will see that the *predicate nominative* resembles an *appositive*. Wherein do they differ?

**46.***Vocabulary.*

*amicus*, -i, m. *friend*.

*cibus*, -i, m. *food*.

*dominus*, -i, m. *lord, master*.

*equus*, -i, m. *horse*.

*hortus*, -i, m. *garden*.

*inimicus*, -i, m. *enemy*.

*nauta*, -ae, m. *sailor*.

*dōnum*, -i, n. *gift*.

*frūmentum*, -i, n. *grain*.

*pīlum*, -i, n. *javelin*, p. 102.

*pōculum*, -i, n. *cup*, p. 69.

*vinum*, -i, n. *wine*.

*dēlectat*, *delights*.

*dēlectant*, *delight*.

---

**47.** 1. *Mārcus amicus est domini.* 2. *Mārcus, agricolae amicus, erat nauta.* 3. *Puella pōculum, dōnum amici, habet.* 4. *Equi erant Galbae, agricolae.* 5. *Dōnum dēlectat poētā, rēginae amicum.* 6. *Agricolae frūmentum equis dant.* 7. *Cibus equōrum est frūmentum.* 8. *In pōculō est vinum.* 9. *Columba grāta est poētae, Mārci amicō.* 10. *Ubi erant tubae et pila, dōna amicōrum?* 11. *In Helvētiā, Galliae terrā, erant silvae māgnae.* 12. *Mārce, amice, quid est in pōculō nautae?* 13. *Nauta vinum in pōculō habet.*

**48.** 1. Where are the farmer's friends to-day? 2. Who sees wild beasts in Italy, a country of Europe? 3. Do the javelins and the cups delight the enemies? 4. They

tell Marcus, the sailor, a new story. 5. Marcus praises the good story. 6. To the maiden, daughter of the master, he gives a white rose. 7. The rose was the gift of a friend. 8. Friend, the little girl, your daughter, is in the garden. 9. Do not<sup>1</sup> the maidens love the farmer's garden? 10. The enemies of the farmers are in the forests of the island.

## LESSON VI.

### First and Second Declensions.

#### AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

**49.** Adjectives of the first and second declensions have three terminations to mark the different genders: **bonus**, masculine; **bona**, feminine; **bonum**, neuter. The masculine is declined like **hortus**, the feminine like **tuba**, and the neuter like **dōnum**.

*a.* For the full declension of **bonus**, see 500.

### 50.

#### *Model Sentences.*

- |                              |                                 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <b>Hortus est māgnus.</b> | 5. <b>Hastam longam habet.</b>  |
| 2. <b>Hortī sunt māgnī.</b>  | 6. <b>Hastās longās habent.</b> |
| 3. <b>Dōnum est grātum.</b>  | 7. <b>Agricola est bonus.</b>   |
| 4. <b>Dōna sunt grāta.</b>   | 8. <b>Agricolae sunt bonī.</b>  |

*a.* Adjectives are used in six of the above sentences, as in the first lesson, after **est** and **sunt**. So used, they are called *predicate adjectives*. Compare predicate nouns (35).

<sup>1</sup> See p. 15, note 1.

## 51.

*Paradigm.***Nauta bonus.** *good sailor.*

N. nauta bonus	nautae boni
G. nautae boni	nautarum bonorum
D. nautae bono	nautis bonis
Ac. <del>nautam</del> bonum	nautas bonos
Ab. <del>nauta</del> bono	nautis bonis

✓

52. In the first six of the model sentences, an adjective qualifying a noun has the same *termination* as its noun. But observe 7 and 8 and the paradigm *nauta bonus*.

53. **Rule.** — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

a. Decline *agricola validus*, *strong farmer*; *grātus poēta*, *pleasing poet*.

## 54.

*Vocabulary.*

carrus, -i, m. <i>wagon</i> , p. 20.	clārus, -a, -um, <i>famous</i> .
incola, -ae, m. <i>inhabitant</i> .	multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i> .
oppidum, -i, n. <i>town</i> .	multi (pl. of multus), -ae, -a, <i>many</i> .
rēmus, -i, m. <i>oar</i> .	peritus, -a, -um, <i>skilful</i> .
servus, -i, m. <i>slave, servant</i> .	validus, -a, -um, <i>strong</i> .
ventus, -i, m. <i>wind</i> .	

in, prep. with acc., *into*.

portat, *bears, carries*.

portant, *bear, carry*.

## ADJECTIVES ALREADY USED IN THE FEMININE.

albus, -a, -um, <i>white</i> .	longus, -a, -um, <i>long</i> .
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i> .	māgnus, -a, -um, <i>large</i> .
cārus, -a, -um, <i>dear</i> .	meus, -a, -um, <i>my, mine</i> .
grātus, -a, -um, <i>pleasing</i> .	novus, -a, -um, <i>new</i> .
lātus, -a, -um, <i>wide</i> .	parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i> .
tuus, -a, -um, <i>thy, thine, your, yours</i> .	

**55.** 1. Nōne agricola bonus hortum bonum habet? 2. Agricolae bonō est hortus māgnus. 3. Mārcus filiae dat pōcula, pulchra dōna. 4. Nautae peritō sunt rēmi māgnī. 5. Carri agricolārum erant validi. 6. Māgnī ventī nautis nōn sunt grāti. 7. Poēta clārus Mūsīs placet. 8. Equi domini frūmentum in oppida portant. 9. Multī horti in oppidō sunt. 10. Multum cibum in oppidum portant equi et servi.

**56.** 1. Galba is a sturdy<sup>1</sup> farmer. 2. He has much grain, a food pleasant to horses. 3. His<sup>2</sup> horses carry their<sup>2</sup> master into town. 4. The inhabitants of the town see Galba and the horses. 5. Marcus, where is your slave to-day? 6. He is in the garden. 7. And is telling<sup>3</sup> the little girl<sup>4</sup> a story. 8. The pleasing tale<sup>1</sup> delights the girl. 9. Where is the garden, Marcus, my<sup>2</sup> dear friend? 10. It is in Britain, the land of skilful sailors. 11. Are the inhabitants of Britain sailors?

<sup>1</sup> Occasionally words occur in the English exercises which are purposely not given as definitions in the vocabularies, but the pupil

will generally understand what Latin word is meant.

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

<sup>3</sup> Tells.

<sup>4</sup> Not accusative.



CARRUS.

## LESSON VII.

Second Declension. — *Continued.*

57.

*Paradigms.***Puer**, boy; **Ager**, field; **Vir**, man.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
N.	puer	puerī	ager	agrī	vir	virī
G.	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum	virī	virōrum
D.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs
AC.	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs	virum	virōs
AB.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs

a. Observe that the endings of **puer** and **ager** are everywhere the same. But **puer** keeps the *e* of the nominative; **ager** drops it, except in the nominative.

58. Most nouns and adjectives in **-er** of the second declension are declined like **ager**; that is, they drop the *e* of the nominative.

59. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** contract the genitive ending **ī** to **i**: **cōnsīlium**, *gen. cōnsīli*, *advice, plan*. **Filius**, *son*, and proper names in **-ius** contract **-ie** in the vocative to **i**: **filli**, *(my) son*; **Mercu'ri**, *Mercury*. But the place of the accent is not changed. See 495.

60.

*Model Sentences.*

1. **Puer filius est viri**, *the boy is the man's son.*
2. **Vir filiō dat cōnsilium**, *the man gives his son advice.*
3. **Galbae, agricolae, sunt agrī multi**, *Galba, the farmer, has many fields.*
4. **Fili, estne poēta Mūsae cārus?** *my son, is the poet dear to the Muse?*

a. The first sentence illustrates the *genitive* and the *predicate nominative*. What does each of the other sentences illustrate?

## 61.

## Vocabulary.

ager, agri, m. *field*.

vir, viri, m. *man*.

cōnsilium, -i, n. *advice, plan*.

Cornēlia, -ae, f. *Cornelia*.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick*.

filius, -i, m. *son*.

niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*.

liber, -bri, m. *book*.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,

liberi,<sup>1</sup> -ōrum (pl.), m. *children*.

*beautiful, pretty*.

magister, -tri, m. *master*.

liber, -era, -erum, *free*.

puer, -eri, m. *boy*.

miser, -era, -erum, *wretched*.

Sextus, -i, m. *Sextus*.

nam, conj. *for*.

dominus, *master of a household or slaves*.

magister, *a superior, director; hence, master of a school*.

pueri, *general word for children*.

liberi, *children of free parents*.

62. 1. Libri pueri sunt in mēnsā. 2. Cōnsilium virōrum clārōrum erat bonum. 3. Sexti liberi sunt aegri. 4. Cornēlia, poētae filia, librōs habet pulchrōs. 5. Servus miser nōn multum cibum habet. 6. Incolae liberī oppidum liberum habent. 7. Nigrī equi agricolārum in agris sunt. 8. Quis habet carrōs validōs et equōs nigrōs? 9. Nōne est aegrō nautae cāra pecūnia? 10. Estne Cornēliae vīnum parvō<sup>2</sup> in pōculō?

<sup>1</sup> The plural of the adjective used as a noun.

is often the order, where, as here, the three are combined.

<sup>2</sup> Adjective, preposition, noun,

What is the English order?

63. 1. The book is pleasing to the master. 2. The poet's books are pleasing to the master's son. 3. The poor slave has a long spear. 4. Sextus gives the sick boy a beautiful book. 5. The oar and the javelin please the skilful man.<sup>1</sup> 6. The son of Sextus is dear to Galba, the farmer. 7. The black boy is a servant of the free man. 8. They praise the farmer's black horse. 9. For it carries the sick girl into the town. 10. And many inhabitants of the town tell their children<sup>2</sup> the story.

---

## LESSON VIII.

### The Verb sum.

#### AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

64. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive of **sum** (516).

---

65. 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Sunt, erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Sum, eram, eris. 5. Es, erās, eris. 6. Estis, erātis, eritis. 7. Es, este, e se.

a. In the preceding lessons verb forms have been used only in the third person : **est, erat** for the singular ; **sunt, erant** for the plural. The forms in the exercise above show that the ending changes to denote person as well as number. The first and second persons as subjects are not commonly expressed.

**Rule.**—*A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

<sup>1</sup> See 33.

<sup>2</sup> See 56, note 4.



**66.** 1. I am, we are. 2. I was, we were. 3. I shall be, we shall be. 4. He is, they are. 5. He was, they were. 6. He will be, they will be. 7. You are, you were. 8. You will be. 9. Be thou, be you. 10. To be.

**67.***Vocabulary.*aqua, -ae, f. *water.*statua, -ae, f. *statue.*aurum, -ī, n. *gold.*deus, -ī, m. *god (499).*aureus, -a, -um, *golden.*Mercurius, -ī, m. *Mercury (59).*dēfessus, -a, -um, *tired, very*nūntius, -ī, m. *messenger (59).**tired.*scūtum, -ī, n. *shield, p. 76.*vocat, *calls, summons.*somnia, -ī, m. *sleep.*vocat, *call, summon.*

**68.** 1. Amicus Mercu'ri erō. 2. Nam Mercurius nūntius erat deōrum. 3. Servus est inimicus pulchri Mercuri. 4. Tū (*thou*), O miser serve, es Minervae inimicus. 5. Amici Mercuri nūnti erimus. 6. Tū (*thou*), O puer, agricolae validi es filius. 7. Pueri boni, este hodiē amici miseri equi. 8. Somnus puerō erit grātus. 9. Liberi magistrī dēfessi erunt. 10. Minervae in oppidō erat āra. 11. Dēfessō equō grāta est aqua. 12. Nūntius incolās vocat oppidi.

**69.** 1. Minerva had<sup>1</sup> a golden statue. 2. There was gold on the statue of Minerva. 3. Who has a golden shield? 4. Was not<sup>2</sup> Mercury messenger of the gods? 5. A girl gives a sick sailor some<sup>3</sup> wine and water. 6. The wine she carries in a pretty cup. 7. He praises the pretty cup and the wine. 8. The water he does not care for. 9. The maiden and the sailor were inhabitants

<sup>1</sup> Use a form of *sum*.<sup>2</sup> *Nōne.*<sup>3</sup> *Omit.*

of Britain. 10. Britain is a large island and has many towns and fields.

70.

*Colloquium.*

DUO PUERĪ.

two

Ubi est Carolus hodiē? Nōne est in scholā?

Charles

school

Minimē. Est in fluviō; nam habet cymbam parvam,

By no means

river

boat

et libenter nāvigat.

gladly sails = likes sailing

Unde Carolō est cymba? (Where did Charles get a boat?)

whence

Ab avunculō, nam avunculus Carolum amat.

from uncle

Quid in cymbā portat Carolus?

Nēsciō; sine dubiō cibum et pōculum; nam in

I don't know

without

doubt

animō habet . . .

mind

Quid in animō habet?

Valē, bone amice, crās patēbit.

good-by

to-morrow

it will be open = the secret will be out



CYMBA.

## LESSON IX.

## First Conjugation. — Ā-Verbs.

Amō (stem amā), *love*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS:<sup>1</sup> amō, *I love*; <sup>2</sup> amāre, *to love*; amāyī, *I loved*; <sup>3</sup> amātus, *loved*.

**71.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of amō (511).

**72.** 1. Amat, amābat, amābit. 2. Amātur, amābātur, amābitur. 3. Amant, amābant, amābunt. 4. Amantur, amābantur, amābuntur. 5. Amō, amābam, amābō. 6. Amor, amābar, amābor. 7. Amāmus, amāmur. 8. Amābāmus, amābāmur. 9. Amābimus, amābimur. 10. Amā, amāre. 11. Amāte, amāmini. 12. Amāre, amārī.

a. Notice how frequently *r* and *ur* mark forms as passive.

**73.** Like amō, inflect in the same moods and tenses the following :

dēlectō	dēlectāre	dēlectāvi	dēlectātus, <i>delight</i> .
laudō	laudāre	laudāvi	laudātus, <i>praise</i> .
nārrō	nārrāre	nārrāvi	nārrātus, <i>tell</i> .
portō	portāre	portāvi	portātus, <i>carry</i> .

a. The stem is found by dropping *re* of the infinitive.

<sup>1</sup> The present indicative, the present infinitive, the perfect indicative, and the perfect participle are called, from their importance, the *principal parts*. The

conjugations are distinguished by the vowel before *-re* in the present infinitive active. See 337.

<sup>2</sup> Also *do love*, *am loving*.

<sup>3</sup> Also *have loved*.

74. 1. He praises, he is praised. 2. He was praising, he was praised. 3. He will praise, he will be praised. 4. They are praising, they are praised. 5. They were praising, they were praised. 6. They will be praising, they will be praised. 7. To praise, to be praised. 8. Praise (sing.), praise (pl.). 9. They do praise, they will praise.

---

## LESSON X.

### ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

#### 75.

#### *Model Sentences.*

1. *Rēgīna agricolam laudat, the queen praises the farmer.*
2. *Agricola ā (or ab) rēgīnā laudātur, the farmer is praised by the queen.*

*a.* Observe the changes in turning the active into the passive. The object of the active becomes the subject of the passive ; the subject (that is, the *doer* or *agent*) of the active is expressed with the passive by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

**76. Rule.** — *The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

*a.* **Ab** is used before vowels or *h*, *ā* or *ab* before consonants.

- 
77. 1. *Vir peritum puerum laudat.* 2. *Puer peritus ā virō laudātur.* 3. *Galba Mārcum amicum amābat.* 4. *Mārcus ā Galbā amābātur.* 5. *Magister fābulam clāram liberis nārrābit.* 6. *Fābula clāra liberis ā magistrō nārrābitur.* 7. *Miseri servi dominum amābunt.* 8. *Ā servis miseris amābitur dominus.* 9. *Equus niger mul-*

tum frūmentum et aquam in oppidum portat. 10. Frūmentum in oppidum ab servō nigrō portātur. 11. Nūnti cōsiliū nārrābātur ā Galbā. 12. Nārratne Galba nūnti cōsilia ?

**78.** 1. Sextus loves the boy, his son. 2. The boy is called by Sextus. 3. The statues of the gods were praised by the free man. 4. The free man was praising the statues of the gods. 5. The tired messenger was carrying a golden shield. 6. A golden shield was carried by the messenger. 7. We shall tell a story to the inhabitants of the island. 8. Shall you carry javelins into the forest?

**79.**

*Colloquium.*

PATER ET FILIOLUS.

### Father and Little Son.

*P.* Quae, filiōle, hodiē in scholā tractābantur?  
 what little son were discussed

what little son were discussed

F. Tractābantur cāsus ablātivus et verbum *amō*.  
case word.

case word.

*P.* Quid significat Anglicē verbum *amō*?  
means in English

means in English

*F.* Verbum *amō* significat *love*.

*P. Dē ablātivō quoque mihi nārrā.*  
about also me

about                      also                      me

*F.* Rēgulam dē ablātivō tibi nārrābō.  
rule you I will tell

**rule**                      you I will tell

**P. Rēgulamne tibi dedit magister?**  
did give

**did give**

**F.** Certē, rēgulam dē ablātivō *agentis*. Ante ablā-  
certainly of the agent before

certainly of the agent before

tivum *agentis* semper praepositiō ā vel ab<sup>y</sup> pōnitur.  
preposition or is placed

preposition or is placed

*P.* Optimē, mī puer ; tibi erit rubrum mālum.  
well done my red apple

well done my

**red      apple**

## LESSON XI.

The Verb sum. — *Continued.*

## THE INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

**80.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive of **sum** (516).

---

**81.** 1. Fuit, fuerat, fuerit. 2. Fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint.  
 3. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 4. Fuerō, fueram, fui.  
 5. Fuerās, fueris, fuisti. 6. Fuistis, fueritis, fuerātis.  
 7. Esse, fuisse.

**82.** 1. He has been, they have been. 2. He had been, they had been. 3. He will have been, they will have been. 4. To have been, to be.

**83.** *Model Sentences.*

1. Nauta ventō et rēmīs portātur, *the sailor is borne by wind and oars.*

2. Virī tubā vocābantur aureā, *the men were summoned by a golden trumpet.*

3. Agrī ab agricolā arātrō novō arantur, *the fields are ploughed by a farmer with his new plough.*

*a.* Observe that the ablatives **ventō**, **rēmīs**, **tubā**, and **arātrō** answer the questions *by what? with what? by means of what?* The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of instrument or means*.

**84. Rule.** — *The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action.*

b. The third sentence illustrates the difference between the ablative of the agent and the ablative of means. How are they differently expressed in Latin? (See 76.)

## 85.

## Vocabulary.

arātrum, -ī, n. <i>plough</i> , p. 34.	Graecus, -ī, m. <i>a Greek</i> .
arma, -ōrum, n. (pl.) <i>arms</i> .	Rōmānus, -ī, m. <i>a Roman</i> .
bellum, -ī, n. <i>war</i> .	sagitta, -ae, f. <i>arrow</i> , p. 155.
gladius, -ī, m. <i>sword</i> , p. 67.	templum, -ī, n. <i>temple</i> , p. 93.
appellō, appellāre, appellāvi, appellātus, <i>name, call</i> .	
arō, arāre, arāvi, arātus, <i>plough</i> .	
fugō, fugāre, fugāvi, fugātus, <i>put to flight, rout</i> .	
ōrnō, ōrnāre, ōrnāvi, ōrnātus, <i>adorn, deck</i> .	
superō, superāre, superāvi, superātus, <i>overcome, outdo</i> .	
vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvi, vulnerātus, <i>wound</i> .	

86. 1. Servus fuerat vir liber. 2. Galbae (*dative*) fuerant equi et carri. 3. Nova lūna fuit pulchra. 4. In insulā fuerant multae silvae. 5. Nōne ager arātrō ā virō arābitur? 6. Inimicus gladiō et sagittis vulnerātur. 7. Viri equōs hastis et sagittis in bellō vulnerābant. 8. Minervae statua aurō ōrnābātur. 9. Poetae aegrō somnus erit grātus in hortō. 10. Rōmāni oppidum appellābant Rōmam.<sup>1</sup> 11. Ā Rōmānis oppidum appellābātur Rōma.<sup>2</sup> 12. Graeci nōn amābant Rōmānōs. 13. Rōmāni ā Graecis nōn amābantur. 14. Rōmāni Graecōs in bellō armis fugābant et superābant. 15. Graeci Rōmānōrum armis fugābantur.

87. 1. Where have we been? 2. Marcus, the friend of Galba, had been a sailor. 3. Fields are ploughed

<sup>1</sup> Predicate accusative.

<sup>2</sup> Predicate nominative.

by farmers with ploughs and horses. 4. The pretty girl decked the cup with roses. 5. Was not the cup decked with roses by the pretty girl? 6. Arrows and spears are the arms of the slaves. 7. With swords and arrows we shall overcome the men.

## LESSON XII.

First Conjugation. — *Continued.*

## ABLATIVE OF MANNER.

**88.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *amō* (511).

**89.** The compound forms of the passive are made by combining forms of *sum* with the perfect passive participle. The participle (declined like *bonus*), agrees in gender and number with the subject : *amāta est, she was loved; amātum est, it was loved; amāti sunt, they (masc.) were loved.*

**90.** 1. *Amāvit, amāverat, amāverit.* 2. *Amātus est, amātus erat, amātus erit.* 3. *Amāvērunt, amāverant, amāverint.* 4. *Amāvi, amātus sum.* 5. *Amāverāmus, amāti erāmus.* 6. *Amāvērimus, amāti erimus.* 7. *Amāvisse, amātus esse.*

**91.** 1. He has been praised, had been praised, will have been praised. 2. They have been praised, had



been praised, will have been praised. 3. We (masc.) have been praised, had been praised, shall have been praised. 4. We (fem.) have been praised, had been praised, shall have been praised.

## 92.

*Model Sentences.*

1. Agricola agrum cum cūrā arat, *the farmer ploughs his field with care (carefully).*

2. Agricola agrum māgnā cum cūrā arat, *the farmer ploughs his field with great care.*

3. Agricola agrum māgnā cūrā arat, *the farmer ploughs his field with great care.*

a. Observe how *manner* is expressed in the above Latin sentences : (1) cum cūrā ; (2) māgnā cum cūrā ; (3) māgnā cūrā. In Latin as in English the manner of an action may be expressed by an adverb : *fidēlīter, faithfully.*

**93. Rule.** — *The manner of an action is denoted by the ablative, usually with cum ; but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.*

## 94.

*Vocabulary.*

audācia, -ae, f. *daring, boldness.*

cūra, -ae, f. *care.*

diligentia, -ae, f. *industry.*

gaudium, -i, n. *joy, gladness (59).*

patientia, -ae, f. *patience.*

studium, -i, n. *zeal, eagerness (59).*

vicinus, -i, m. *neighbor.*

piger, pigra, pigrum, *lazy.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with.*

sed, conj., *but.*

aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvi, aedificātus, *build.*

agitō, agitāre, agitāvi, agitātus, *chase, drive.*

labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvi, labōrātus, *toil, suffer.*

pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvi, pugnātus, *fight.*

95. 1. Rōmāni māgnā cum audāciā in bellō pūgnāvē-  
runt. 2. Oppida multa in Ītaliā aedificāvērunt. 3. Cum  
cūrā ā Rōmānis aedificāta sunt oppida. 4. Cūrae somnum  
fugāverant. 5. Puer piger equum pigrum agitāvit. 6. Servi  
miseri māgnā patientiā labōrāverant. 7. Multō cum stu-  
diō ā viris agitātae erānt ferae. 8. Vir bonūs labōrat  
cum diligentīā et cūrā. 9. Māgnō gaudiō novōs librōs  
hodiē vident pueri. 10. Rosi ornāta erat puella.

96. 1. The inhabitants were eagerly<sup>1</sup> building a temple.  
2. A temple had been built zealously by the inhabitants.  
3. The boys toiled industriously and patiently. 4. The  
Greeks had fought daringly, but were overwhelmed by  
their neighbors. 5. The sick children were borne care-  
fully into the temple. 6. Joyfully they see the altar of  
the goddess. 7. The altar had been adorned with roses.  
8. On the altar there was a golden cup, the gift of a sick  
man.

### LESSON XIII.

97.

#### Reading Lesson.

##### THE ROMANS AND THE SABINES.

1 Rōma, pulchrum Ītaliae oppidum, ā Rōmulō aedi-  
ficāta est. 2 Incolae Rōmae igitur<sup>2</sup> appellāti sunt Rōmāni.  
3 Validi viri erant Rōmāni et patriam māximē amābant.  
4 Saepe cum Sabinis, vicinīs, pūgnābant prō patriā et  
saepe armis in bellō superābant. 5 Ōlim victōria diū erat  
dubia. 6 Nam Sabini arma bona habēbant,<sup>3</sup> et pilis longis

<sup>1</sup> With eagerness.

placed after one or more words

<sup>2</sup> Igitur is *postpositive*, that is, is in a sentence.

<sup>3</sup> Had.

māgnā cum audāciā pūgnāvērunt. Sed fugāti sunt ā Rōmānis et multi sagittis sunt vulnerāti. Cāra Rōmānis erat victōria.

**98.** 1. Tell the story, boys, to the master. 2. The boys told the story to the master. 3. Romulus built a fine town in Italy. 4. He called the inhabitants Romans. 5. The Sabines were neighbors of the Romans. 6. And they often fought with Romulus and the Romans. 7. Once they fought a long time with swords and spears. 8. The victory was doubtful, but the Romans wounded and put many to flight.

**99.***Vocabulary.*

**diū**, adv. *for a long time,*  
*long.*

**dubius**, -a, -um, *doubtful.*

**igitur**, conj. *therefore.*

**māximē**, adv. *especially.*

**ōlim**, adv. *once upon a time,*  
*once, formerly.*

**patria**, -ae, f. *country.*

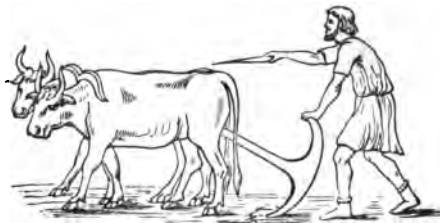
**prō**, prep. with abl., *in behalf*  
*of, for.*

**Rōmulus**, -i, m. *Romulus.*

**Sabini**, -ōrum, m. *the Sabines.*

**saepe**, adv. *often.*

**victōria**, -ae, f. *victory.*



ARATRUM ANTIQUM.

**Nudus ara, sere nudus.—Vergil.**

## LESSON XIV.

The Demonstratives *hic* and *ille*.

100.

*Paradigms.**hic, this.**ille, that.*

## SINGULAR.

N.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	N.	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
G.	<i>hīc</i>	<i>hūc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	G.	<i>illīc</i>	<i>illūc</i>	<i>illud</i>
D.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	D.	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>
AC.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	AC.	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
AB.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	AB.	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>

## PLURAL.

N.	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>	N.	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
G.	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	G.	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
D.	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	D.	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
AC.	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>	AC.	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
AB.	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	AB.	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

a. See how closely the plural forms correspond to those of nouns of the first and second declensions. What resemblances do you discover in the singular?

b. *Hic* is applied to what is near the speaker in *place, time, or thought*, and hence may be called the demonstrative of the first person: *hic equus, this horse (near me or belonging to me)*.

c. *Ille* is applied to what is relatively remote from the speaker in *place, time, or thought*, and hence may be called the demonstrative of the third person: *ille equus, that horse (yonder)*.

d. *Ille*, agreeing with a noun and commonly placed after it, sometimes means *that well-known, that famous*.

e. *Hic* and *ille* are sometimes used without a noun, in contrast : *hic*, *the latter* ; *ille*, *the former*.

f. The forms of *hic* and *ille* sometimes mean *he*, *she*, *it*.

## 101.

*Model Sentences.*

1. *Hic* puer est laetus, illa puella est maesta, *this boy is merry, that girl is sad*.

2. Dominus et servus sunt amici; ille est albus, hic niger, *the master and the servant are friends; the former is white, the latter black*.

3. Hōc dōnum deae est grātum, illud deō, *this gift is pleasing to the goddess, that one to the god*.

a. From the above remarks and model sentences it is plain that *hic* and *ille* have two distinct uses : (1) as *adjectives* in agreement with nouns ; (2) alone, as *pronouns*. They are, therefore, sometimes *demonstrative adjectives*, sometimes *demonstrative pronouns*.

## 102.

*Vocabulary.*

**Aedui**, -ōrum, m. *the Aeduans*.

**fēmina**, -ae, f. *woman*.

**habitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *inhabit, live*.

**Helvētīi**, -ōrum, m. (pl.) *the Helvetians*.

**laetus**, -a, -um, *glad*.

**maestus**, -a, -um, *sad*.

**nunc**, adv. *now*.

**pūgna**, -ae, f. *battle*.

**-que**, conj. *and* (9, 3).

**tum**, adv. *then*.

103. 1. Aedui et Helvētīi in terrā Galliā<sup>1</sup> ōlim habitābant. 2. Illi fuērunt Rōmānōrum amici, hī inimici. 3. Ubi sunt nunc illi amici inimicique? 4. Ōlim magister studium diligentiamque illius pueri et huius puellae laudāvit. 5. Illi igitur hunc gladium, huic illud pōcu-

<sup>1</sup> An appositive.

lum dat. 6. Nōne dominus huic servō dēfessō parvum dōnum dat? nam cum patientiā labōrāvit. 7. Fuitne maesta illa fēmina? 8. Haec fēmina laeta, illa maesta fuit. 9. Nautae illam lūnam novam māgnō cum gaudiō vident. 10. Agricola illōs agrōs hōc novō arātrō arābit. 11. Et filius illius agricolae equōs pigrōs agitābit.

✓104. 1. The Helvetians fought with the Romans. 2. The former fought for their<sup>1</sup> women and children. 3. The latter fought often for victory.<sup>2</sup> 4. But victory was not long doubtful in those battles. 5. For the Romans overcame the Helvetians. 6. Then were those poor women in Helvetia sad. 7. For the men of that land had been wounded. 8. The children of those men had<sup>3</sup> no<sup>4</sup> food.

## LESSON XV.

### The Interrogative Pronoun.

#### 105.

#### Paradigm.

quis? who? which? what?

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
N.	quis	quāe	quid	quī	quae	quae	
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	
Ac.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae	
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

<sup>3</sup> A form of sum.

<sup>2</sup> For victory = victōriae causā.

<sup>4</sup> Say not.

106. *Table of Meanings for Reference.*

## MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

## NEUTER.

N. who ?	which ?	what ?
G. of whom ?	of which ?	of what ? whose ?
D. to or for whom ?	to or for which ?	to or for what ?
AC. whom ?	which ?	what ?
AB. by, etc., whom ?	by, etc., which ?	by, etc., what ?

a. The meanings are not tabulated with reference to gender. They should be referred to only when the meaning of a sentence is not clear after faithful effort. The learner should accustom himself, in making out the meaning of the Latin, to pronounce any Latin word, the sense of which is not evident, as a part of his English sentence. For example, taking sentence 14 under 108, if the meaning of *cūius* is not clear, say, "*cūius* arms has that boy?" Probably this would suggest, "whose arms has that boy?"

107. *Model Sentences.*

1. *Quis amat patriam ? Who loves his country ?*
2. *Quis vir amat patriam ? What man loves his country ?*
3. *Quid amat vir ? What does the man love ?*
4. *Quae dōna puellae sunt grāta ? What gifts are pleasing to the girl ?*

a. Observe that *quis* in the first sentence and *quid* in the third are used as *interrogative pronouns*; that *quis* in the second sentence and *quae* in the fourth are used as *interrogative adjectives*.

b. But *quod* is always used in place of *quid* as an interrogative *adjective*, and often *quī* in place of *quis*; *Quod dōnum puellae est grātum? Quī vir patriam amat?*

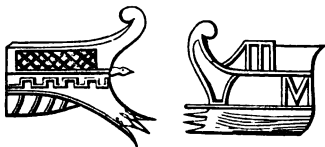
c. When forms of the interrogative pronoun are used as adjectives, they agree with their nouns like other adjectives.

**108.** 1. *Quī hōc templum aedificāvērunt?* 2. *Quī virī hōc templum aedificāvērunt?* 3. *Quid est in illō templō?* 4. *Quae fēmina nōn amat liberōs?* 5. *Cui dat Mārcus hōc pōculum?* 6. *Quibus viris nōn est cāra patria?* 7. *Quōs agrōs arat ille agricola?* 8. *Quem laudātis?* 9. *Quid in pōculō habet servus?* 10. *Quam puellam magister laudat?* 11. *Ā quō illi agrī sunt arāti?* 12. *Quō arātrō illōs agrōs agricola arāvit?* 13. *Ā quibus superāti sunt Rōmānī?* 14. *Cūius arma puer ille habet?*

**109.** 1. Who<sup>1</sup> was a messenger of the gods? 2. Whose messenger was Mercury? 3. Whose shield has that boy? 4. To whom does he give this shield? 5. Whom have you overcome? 6. With what arms have you overcome that man? 7. By what men was this temple built? 8. By whom was this temple built?

<sup>1</sup> *Ne* is not used in a question that begins with an interrogative

pronoun or other interrogative word.



ROSTRA.



## LESSON XVI.

## The Relative Pronoun.

## 110.

*Paradigm.*quī, *who, which, that.*

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae	
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	
AC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	
AB.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	

## 111.

*Table of Meanings for Reference.*

a. The meanings are not tabulated with reference to gender.

N. *who, which, that.*G. *of whom, of which, whose.*D. *to or for whom, to or for which.*AC. *whom, which, that.*AB. *by, etc., whom, which.*

## 112.

*Model Sentences.*1. Puer quī laudātur est laetus, *the boy who is praised is glad.*2. Puellae quās laudāmus sunt laetae, *the girls whom we praise are glad.*3. Librī quōs laudāmus sunt bonī, *the books that we praise are good.*4. Cōsillium quod vir dat laudāmus, *the advice which the man gives we praise.*

a. Observe that the relative has the same gender and number as its antecedent, and that the case of the relative is

sometimes the same as that of the antecedent and sometimes different. In 1, *quī* is subject of *laudātur*; in 2 and 3, *quās* and *quōs* are objects of *laudāmus*; in 4, *quod* is object of *dat*.

**113. Rule.**—*A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.*

---

**114.** 1. *Servus, quī agrum agricolae arat, est dēfessus.*  
 2. *Illī equī, quibus servus hunc agrum arat, sunt nigrī.*  
 3. *Dominus, cūius servus in hōc agrō labōrat, est in hortō.* 4. *Puerī, quōrum librōs magister habet, sunt pigri.*  
 5. *Laudāmus illa dōna quae puer puellae dat.* 6. *Puer, quem laudāmus, est laetus.* 7. *Vir, cui sunt multi rēmī, est nauta.* 8. *Fābulae quās nārrāvi hōs puerōs dēlectāvērunt.*

**115.** 1. This advice which the man gives is not pleasing. 2. Those men, whose town was in Italy, were Romans. 3. Those slaves, to whom the master gives wine, have worked with diligence. 4. The boy by whom the horses were driven is a farmer's son. 5. The girl who is tired is often sad.

### Review of Interrogative and Relative.

#### 116.

#### Vocabulary.

<b>Duilius</b> , -ī, m. <i>Duilius</i> (59).	<b>reportō</b> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>bring back, win, gain.</i>
<b>forum</b> , -ī, n. <i>forum.</i>	<b>rōstrum</b> , -ī, n. <i>beak of a ship,</i>
<b>Poenus</b> , -ī, m. <i>a Carthaginian.</i>	<b>praeda</b> , -ae, f. <i>booty.</i>

**117.** 1. Quis forum Rōmānum rōstris ōrnāvit? 2. Forum ōrnāvit Duilius ille, quī māgnam victōriam reportāvit. 3. Quam victōriam reportāvit Duilius? 4. Poenōs superāvit, quōrum patria in Āfricā fuit. 5. Quibus armis pūgnāvit Duilius? 6. Duilius et Rōmānī gladiis pilisque pūgnāvērunt. 7. Quibus<sup>1</sup> erat illa praeda, quam victōriā reportāvit Duilius? 8. Praeda erat Rōmānis ā quibus est laudātus Duilius.

**118.** 1. Duilius once gained a great victory. 2. He brought back many beaks of ships, with which he adorned the forum. 3. Duilius, where did you gain that booty? 4. Tell the story to those boys and these girls. 5. "That story," quoth<sup>2</sup> Duilius, "is a long one. 6. And I am very tired to-day."

## LESSON XVII.

### The Demonstrative is.

#### 119.

#### Paradigm.

*is, that, this; also he, she, it.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	is	ea	id	eī, īi	eae	ea
G.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, īis	eīs, īis	eīs, īis
AC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
AB.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, īis	eīs, īis	eīs, īis

*a.* Is as a demonstrative adjective is an unemphatic *that* or *this*. On the one hand it approaches *ille*, on the other, but less nearly, *hic*.

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

<sup>2</sup> Inquit.

b. The relations of *hic*, *is*, and *ille* will be understood from the following illustration : —

The place of the speaker.	<u>hic</u>	<u>is</u>	<u>is</u>	<u>is</u>	<u>ille</u>
---------------------------------	------------	-----------	-----------	-----------	-------------

c. As a pronoun *is* means *he, she, it*. It is frequently used as the antecedent of *quī, who*; *is quī, he who*; *eī quī, they who*.

## 120.

*Model Sentences.*

1. *Is servus cum cūrā labōrat, that slave toils with care.*

2. *Patientiam eius servi laudāmus, the patience of that slave we praise.*

3. *Patientia eius laudātur, his (of him) patience is praised.*

4. *Is quī patientiam habet laudātur, he who has patience is praised.*

a. Observe the translation of *eius* in 3. So *eōrum, eārum* must often be translated *their*.

## 121.

*Vocabulary.*

*benignus, -a, -um, kind.*

*fidus, -a, -um, faithful.*

*contentus, -a, -um, contented.*

*fortiter, adv. bravely.*

*dā (imperative), give.*

*malus, -a, -um, bad.*

*dedit, gave; has given.*

*territus, -a, -um, frightened.*

122. 1. *Eōs virōs amāmus, sed eōrum filii sunt mali.*  
 2. *Eae fēminae amantur, sed nōn eārum filiae.* 3. *Nōn bonum fuit cōsiliū eōrum virōrum.* 4. *Is quī est contentus et benignus amicis<sup>1</sup> placet.* 5. *Eum amici amant laudantque.* 6. *Māximē grātum servō fidō est aurūm quod ei dedit dominus.* 7. *Grāta equō est aqua quam*

<sup>1</sup> Observe the dative.

portat agricola benignus. 8. Ei periti nautae māgnō ventō territi sunt. 9. Quibus est illa praeda quae in forum reportātur? 10. Praeda est eis qui in pūgnis fortiter pūgnābant.

**123.** 1. Where do the sons of that man live? 2. "They live in a large town," said<sup>1</sup> Marcus, "and are lazy fellows."<sup>2</sup> 3. "They do not please the master<sup>3</sup>; for books do not delight them." 4. "Those books which a friend has given them<sup>4</sup> do not afford<sup>5</sup> them<sup>4</sup> joy." 5. But, good friend, give them good advice. 6. Then they will toil industriously, and will not be sad. 7. Those who labor are often merry. 8. Those boys are not lazy fellows<sup>2</sup>; they are tired.

<sup>1</sup> Inquit.

<sup>3</sup> Use *magister*.

<sup>2</sup> Omit. Adjectives are often used in the plural in Latin, as in English, without a noun: *boni*, *the good*, *multa*, *many things*.

<sup>4</sup> See sixth sentence above.

<sup>5</sup> *do . . . afford = give.*



EQUES.

## LESSON XVIII.

## Third Declension.

**124.** The stem ends in a consonant or in *i*.

**125.** Consonant stems are named, according to their final letter, *mute stems* and *liquid stems*.

## MUTE STEMS.

**126.** *Paradigms.*

<b>princeps</b> , m.	<b>rēx</b> , m.	<b>mīles</b> , m.	<b>caput</b> , n.
<i>chief.</i>	<i>king.</i>	<i>soldier.</i>	<i>head.</i>
STEM, <b>prīncip-</b>	<b>rēg-</b>	<b>mīlit-</b>	<b>capit-</b>

## SINGULAR.

N. <b>prīnceps</b>	<b>rēx</b>	<b>mīles</b>	<b>caput</b>
G. <b>prīncipis</b>	<b>rēgis</b>	<b>militis</b>	<b>capitis</b>
D. <b>prīncipī</b>	<b>rēgī</b>	<b>militi</b>	<b>capiti</b>
AC. <b>prīncipem</b>	<b>rēgem</b>	<b>militem</b>	<b>caput</b>
AB. <b>prīncipe</b> <sup>v=</sup>	<b>rēge</b>	<b>militē</b>	<b>capite</b>

## PLURAL.

N. <b>prīncipēs</b>	<b>rēgēs</b>	<b>mīlitēs</b>	<b>capita</b>
G. <b>prīncipum</b>	<b>rēgum</b>	<b>militum</b>	<b>capitum</b>
D. <b>prīncīpibus</b>	<b>rēgibus</b>	<b>mīlī'tibus</b>	<b>capī'tibus</b>
AC. <b>prīncipēs</b>	<b>rēgēs</b>	<b>militēs</b>	<b>capita</b>
AB. <b>prīncīpibus</b>	<b>rēgibus</b>	<b>mīlī'tibus</b>	<b>capī'tibus</b>

*a.* Notice that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in forming the nominative. No rule can be given.

*b.* The stem can generally be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular, which is always given.

c. Notice that, except in neuters, the endings are the same in all the paradigms (*rēx* = *rēgs*). Neuters have the accusative like the nominative.

d. To decline a noun with a mute stem, add to the stem the endings, as in the paradigms given above.

e. Decline together is *princeps*, *mīles fidus*, *id caput*.

## 127.

## Vocabulary.

<i>caput, capitū, n. head.</i>	<i>oppidānus, -ī, m. townsman.</i>
<i>dux, ducis, m. leader, general.</i>	<i>oppūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, besiege, attack.</i>
<i>eques, equitū, m. horseman.</i>	<i>pedes, peditū, m. foot-soldier.</i>
<i>expūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, take by storm, take, capture.</i>	<i>princeps, principis, m. chief, leader.</i>
<i>habuit, had, has had, held, kept.</i>	<i>rēx, rēgis, m. king.</i>
<i>mīles, militū, m. soldier, p. 133.</i>	<i>tentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, try, attempt.</i>
<i>Titus, -ī, m. Titus.</i>	

128. 1. *Ōlim Titus, quī princeps erat peritus, oppidum oppūgnābat.* 2. *Fidōs militēs, et<sup>1</sup> equitēs et peditēs, habuit.* 3. *In eō oppidō fuit Sextus rēx cum oppidānis, — viris, fēminis, liberisque.* 4. *Diū oppidum, in quō fuit Sextus, expūgnāre tentābat ille dux cum militibus.* 5. *Nam in eō fuit māgna praeda, et<sup>1</sup> arma et aurum.* 6. *Prō quibus pūgnābant oppidāni?* 7. *Fortiter pūgnābant illi oppidāni prō liberis fēminisque.* 8. *Caput ducis militum sagittā vulnerātum est.* 9. *Tum territi erant peditēs equitēsque.* 10. *Nunc oppidāni eōs fugant et cum studiō agitant.* 11. *Este contenti, oppidāni, nam dei<sup>2</sup> fuērunt benigni.*

<sup>1</sup> Et . . . et = both . . . and.

<sup>2</sup> See 499.

✓129. 1. There was once a town that<sup>1</sup> had a great amount<sup>2</sup> of booty. 2. This booty<sup>3</sup> a leader tried to gain for his<sup>4</sup> soldiers. 3. With horsemen and foot-soldiers he attacked the town. 4. But he was wounded by the king, Sextus. 5. His black horse, which he was especially fond<sup>5</sup> of, was wounded. 6. For a long time he kept his sword and fought bravely. 7. But his frightened soldiers were put to flight by the townsmen.

## LESSON XIX.

## Third Declension.

MUTE STEMS. — *Continued.*

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

130.

*Paradigms.*

pēs, m. <i>foot.</i>	lapis, m. <i>stone.</i>	virtūs, f. <i>manliness.</i>
STEM, ped-	lapid-	virtūt-
SINGULAR.		
N. pēs	lapis	virtūs
G. pedis	lapidis	virtutis
D. pedi	lapidi	virtutī
Ac. pedem	lapidem	virtutem
Ab. pede	lapide	virtute

<sup>1</sup> Nominative.<sup>2</sup> Express a great amount of by one word.<sup>3</sup> The object.<sup>4</sup> Omit here and in the following sentences.<sup>5</sup> See p. 20, n. 1.



PLURAL.		
N. pedēs	lapidēs	virtūtēs
G. pedum	lapidum	virtutum
D. pedibus	lapidibus	virtutibus
Ac. pedēs	lapidēs	virtūtēs
Ab. pedibus	lapidibus	virtutibus

a. Notice that the final letter of the stem is dropped in forming the nominative.

b. Notice that the endings are the same as those of the last preceding paradigms.

c. Decline together *pēs malus, ille lapis, haec virtūs*.

## 131.

*Model Sentences.*

1. *Puer patientiā laudātur, the boy is praised on account of (because of) his patience.*

2. *Miles ā duce audāciā laudābitur, the soldier will be praised by the leader for his daring.*

3. *Equi frūmenti inopiā labōrant, the horses suffer from want of grain.*

4. *Pedes longā viā est dētessens, the foot-soldier is tired with the long march.*

a. Observe that *patientiā, audāciā, inopiā, and viā* denote the cause. Notice the various translations of these ablatives: *on account of, because of, for, from, with*.

**132. Rule.** — *The ablative is used to express cause.*

**133.** We have now seen that, —

1. The ablative of *agent* answers the question *by whom?*
2. The ablative of *means* or *instrument* answers the question *by what?*
3. The ablative of *manner* answers the question *how?*
4. The ablative of *cause* answers the question *why?*

## 134.

## Vocabulary.

adulēscēna, adulēscēntia, m.	lapis, lapidia, m. stone.
youth (152, a).	pēs, pedis, m. foot.
celeritās, celeritātis, f. swift-	properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
ness, speed.	hasten.
cōstantia, -ae, f. firmness.	servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	save.
blame, find fault with.	vīginti (indecl.) twenty.
fortūna, -ae, f. fortune, good	virtūs, virtūtis, f. courage,
fuga, -ae, f. flight. [fortune.	virtue, bravery.
inopia, -ae, f. want, lack.	vīta, -ae, f. life.

135. 1. Illi milites ab hoc principe fugā culpābantur. 2. Quis eos virtute culpabit? 3. Quos celeritate dux laudabat? 4. Equites laudabat, quorum equi nunc frumentū inopiā laborant. 5. Pedes horum peditum lapidibus vulnerati erant. 6. Magnā celeritate in illud oppidum properabant amici et inimici. 7. Ei amici Mārci bonā fortunā sunt contenti. 8. Dux cōstantiā delectābatur militum qui fortiter pugnāverant. 9. Oppidani lapidibus vulnerati sunt. 10. Viginti adulēscēntes vitam principis servāverunt. 11. Oppidum expugnāre tentābat, sed caput sagittā vulneratum est.

a. Point out four different uses of the ablative above, and tell how you can distinguish them.

136. 1. The king was delighted with the courage of those foot-soldiers. 2. But they were tired out with the march,<sup>1</sup> which had been a long one.<sup>2</sup> 3. And had

<sup>1</sup> See p. 20, n. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

suffered from lack of food. 4. The feet of the poor horses had been wounded by the stones on the road. 5. Who will bring for them<sup>1</sup> some<sup>2</sup> water and grain? 6. Bring food, boys, for the men, and water for the tired horses. 7. The food and the water were speedily<sup>3</sup> brought by the good boys.

## 137.

*Colloquium.*

FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA.  
brother little sister

F. Fābūdam bonam amicus mihi hodiē nārrāvit.  
to me

S. Dē quō tibi nārrāvit amicus?  
about to you

F. Dē Īcarō, Daedali filiō, quī in Crētā habitābat.

S. Mihi quoque dē Īcarō Latīnē nārrā. Fuitne Īcarus  
also in Latin

puer malus?

F. Minimē malus sed miserrimus. Habēbat ālās  
by no means most unfortunate wings  
quās cērā aptāverat Daedalus; Īcarus ēvolāvit sed cēra  
with wax had fitted flew away

sōle liquefacta est. Tum . . .  
by the sun was melted then

S. Tum . . . quid?

F. Mihi nōn sunt verba Latina; itaque haesitō.  
words and so I hesitate

S. Ergō nārrā Anglicē. Nam linguam Anglicam  
well, then language

intellegō.

I understand.

F. Minimē. Latīnē tibi nārrābō, nōn Anglicē.

<sup>1</sup> eis.

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

either of the three ways illus-

<sup>3</sup> This may be expressed in trated in 92.

## LESSON XX.

## Third Declension.

## LIQUID STEMS.

## DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE.

138.

## Paradigms.

cōnsul, m. <i>consul.</i>	pater, m. <i>father.</i>	victor, m. <i>victor.</i>	homō, m. <i>man.</i>
STEM, cōnsul-	patr-	victōr-	homin-
SINGULAR.			
N. cōnsul	pater	victōr	homō
G. cōnsul <del>is</del>	patr <del>is</del>	victōr <del>is</del>	homin <del>is</del>
D. cōnsul <del>i</del>	patr <del>i</del>	victōr <del>i</del>	homin <del>i</del>
AC. cōnsule <del>m</del>	patrem	victōre <del>m</del>	hominem
AB. cōnsul <del>e</del>	patre	victōre	homine
PLURAL.			
N. cōnsul <del>ēs</del>	patr <del>ēs</del>	victōr <del>ēs</del>	homin <del>ēs</del>
G. cōnsul <del>um</del>	patr <del>um</del>	victōr <del>um</del>	homin <del>um</del>
D. cōnsul <del>ibus</del>	patr <del>ibus</del>	victōr <del>ibus</del>	homin <del>ibus</del>
AC. cōnsul <del>ēs</del>	patr <del>ēs</del>	victōr <del>ēs</del>	homin <del>ēs</del>
AB. cōnsul <del>ibus</del>	patr <del>ibus</del>	victōr <del>ibus</del>	homin <del>ibus</del>
vulnus, n. <i>wound.</i>	corpus, n. <i>body.</i>		
STEM, vulner-	corpor-		
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. vulnus	vulnera	corpus	corpora
G. vulner <del>is</del>	vulner <del>um</del>	corpor <del>is</del>	corpor <del>um</del>
D. vulner <del>i</del>	vulner <del>ibus</del>	corpor <del>i</del>	corpor <del>ibus</del>
AC. vulnus	vulnera	corpus	corpora
AB. vulner <del>e</del>	vulner <del>ibus</del>	corpore	corpor <del>ibus</del>

a. Observe that the endings in the preceding paradigms are the same as in the paradigms of mute stems.

## 139.

*Model Sentences.*

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 1. Galba agricola fuit magnā<br>diligentiā.   | } | <i>Galba was a farmer of<br/>great industry.</i>   |
| 2. Galba agricola fuit magnae<br>diligentiae. |   |  |
| 3. Cornēlia fuit parvis pedi-<br>bus.         | } | <i>Cornelia was (a woman)<br/>with small feet.</i> |
| 4. Cornēlia fuit parvōrum pe-<br>dum.         |   |  |

a. Observe that in each sentence the ablative or genitive is used *with an adjective* for the purpose of description. These sentences, then, illustrate the *descriptive ablative* and the *descriptive genitive*.

**140. Rule.** — *The ablative or the genitive of a noun may be used with an adjective to describe a person or thing.*

a. You cannot say in Latin, as we do in English, *a man of courage, of honor, of property*. An adjective or its equivalent must be used : *a man of great courage*, etc.

## 141.

*Vocabulary.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ad, prep. with acc., near,<br>towards, to. | pater, patria, m. father.              |
| annus, -ī, m. year.                        | Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m. Scipio.          |
| cōsul, cōsulis, m. consul.                 | septendecim, seventeen.                |
| flūmen, flūminis, n. river.                | summus, -a, -um, highest,<br>greatest. |
| Hannibal, -alis, m. Hannibal.              | tener, -era, -erum, tender.            |
| Hispānia, -ae, f. Spain.                   | Ticinus, -ī, m. the Ticinus.           |
| homō, hominis, m. man.                     | victor, victōris, m. victor.           |

homō, man, as distinguished from the lower animals.

vir (57), man, as distinguished from woman ; hero.

**142.** 1. Hannibal et Scipiō ōlim erant clārī ducēs.  
 2. Ille erat Poenus, quī diū Rōmānōs superāre tentābat.  
 3. Hīc erat Rōmānus, cuius virtūs patriam servāvit.  
 4. Fuērunt summae virtūtis. 5. Pueri<sup>1</sup> annis teneris  
 fuērunt in pūgnis, hīc in Italiā, ille in Hispāniā.  
 6. Scipiō patrem in pūgnā ad Ticinum flūmen servāvit.  
 7. Tum fuit adulēscēns septendecim annōrum. 8. Hanni-  
 bal, adulēscēns<sup>2</sup> nōn viginti annis, oppida in Hispāniā  
 oppūgnāvit.

**143.** 1. The consul's soldiers fought in Italy and  
 Africa. 2. The consul had a son Scipio of tender years,  
 who fought in a battle with the Carthaginians. 3. In  
 that battle the soldiers of the Romans were not the  
 victors. 4. They were put to flight by Hannibal's horse-  
 men. 5. But they were men of the greatest courage.

## LESSON XXI.

### 144. Reading Lesson.

#### SCIPIO AND HANNIBAL.

In this lesson and some of the following, less important words that need not be committed to memory are given only in the general vocabulary.

Pūblius Cornēlius Scipiō Africānus Māior,<sup>3</sup> adulēscēns septendecim annōrum, ad Ticinum flūmen vitam patris servāvit. In pūgnā Cannēnsi<sup>4</sup> fortiter pūgnāvit. Postea Carthāginem Novam, oppidum in Hispāniā expūgnāvit.

<sup>1</sup> When boys.    <sup>2</sup> When a youth.    <sup>3</sup> The Elder.    <sup>4</sup> Of Cannae.

Obsidibus Hispānōrum benignus erat et eis libertātem dedit. Nōn minus fēliciter in Āfricā bellāvit ibique Poenōs superāvit. Ad Zamam Scipiō et Hannibal castra habuērunt.<sup>1</sup> Clārum est illud colloquium quod ante pūgnam habuērunt. Poenī ā Scipiōne superāti et fugāti sunt. Scipiō triumphum māgnificum ex Āfricā reportāvit et ā populō Āfricānus est appellātus.

**145.** 1. Who saved his father by his bravery near the river Ticinus? 2. Scipio, who was then a youth of seventeen years. 3. Whom did he afterwards defeat? 4. He defeated Hannibal, that famous Carthaginian. 5. The victory which Scipio won was famous. 6. Famous was the triumph that Scipio had.<sup>2</sup> 7. And the people called him Africanus.

**146.***Vocabulary.*

castra, -ōrum, n. (pl.) <i>camp.</i>	libertās, libertātis, f. <i>liberty, freedom.</i>
colloquium, -i, n. <i>conversation, colloquy.</i>	obses, obsidia, m. <i>hostage.</i>
fēliciter, adv. <i>luckily, successfully.</i>	populus, -i, m. <i>people.</i>

**147.***Colloquium.*

## PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

*P.* Quis fuit Hannibal? Fuit Rōmānus an Poenus?  
or

*D.* Fuit Poenus et ā Scipiōne victus est.

*P.* Ubi fuit Hannibalis patria?

*D.* Carthāgō, Hannibalis patria, fuit in Āfricā.

*P.* Cūr fuit? cūr nōn est in Āfricā?

why

<sup>1</sup> *Had.*

<sup>2</sup> *Habuit.*

*D.* Quia Carthāgō iam dūdum dēlēta est.  
 because long ago was destroyed.

*P.* Quot nōmina erant Scipiōnī?  
 how many names

*D.* Tria Scipiōnī erant nōmina: Pūblius Cornēlius  
 three

Scipiō.

*P.* Rēctē, mī puer, praenōmen Pūblius; Cornēlius  
 correct first name  
 nōmen gentile; Scipiō cōgnōmen.  
 family cognomen

*D.* Nōne interdum appellātus est Scipiō *Āfricānus*?  
 sometimes

*P.* Certissimē. Hōc autem nōmen dicēbant Rōmāni  
 cōgnōmen secundum. moreover called  
 second



SCIPIO.

57012



HANNIBAL.

7. 11. 11. 11. 11.



## LESSON XXII.

Third Declension. — *Continued.*

## STEMS IN I.

148.

*Paradigms.*

<b>ignis, m.</b> <i>fire.</i>	<b>hostis, m.</b> <i>enemy.</i>	<b>nūbēs, f.</b> <i>cloud.</i>	<b>mare, n.</b> <i>sea.</i>
STEM. <b>igni-</b>	<b>hosti-</b>	<b>nūbi-</b>	<b>mari-</b>
SINGULAR.			
N. <b>ignis</b>	<b>hostis</b>	<b>nūbēs</b>	<b>mare</b>
G. <b>ignis</b>	<b>hostis</b>	<b>nūbis</b>	<b>maris</b>
D. <b>igni</b>	<b>hosti</b>	<b>nūbi</b>	<b>mari</b>
AC. <b>ignem</b>	<b>hostem</b>	<b>nūbem</b>	<b>mare</b>
AB. <b>igni, e</b>	<b>hoste</b>	<b>nūbe</b>	<b>mari</b>
PLURAL.			
N. <b>ignēs</b>	<b>hostēs</b>	<b>nūbēs</b>	<b>maria</b>
G. <b>ignium</b>	<b>hostium</b>	<b>nūbium</b>	—
D. <b>ignibus</b>	<b>hostibus</b>	<b>nūbibus</b>	<b>maribus</b>
AC. <b>ignis, -ēs</b>	<b>hostis, -ēs</b>	<b>nūbis, -ēs</b>	<b>maria</b>
AB. <b>ignibus</b>	<b>hostibus</b>	<b>nūbibus</b>	<b>maribus</b>

**animal, n.** *animal.***calcar, n.** *spur.*STEM. **animālī-****calcārī-**

SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N. <b>animal</b>	<b>animālīa</b>	<b>calcar</b>	<b>calcārīa</b>
G. <b>animālīs</b>	<b>animālitum</b>	<b>calcārīs</b>	<b>calcāritum</b>
D. <b>animālī</b>	<b>animālībus</b>	<b>calcārī</b>	<b>calcārībus</b>
AC. <b>animal</b>	<b>animālīa</b>	<b>calcar</b>	<b>calcārīa</b>
AB. <b>animālī</b>	<b>animālībus</b>	<b>calcārī</b>	<b>calcārībus</b>

a. Compare the declension endings of **hostis** and **nūbēs** with those of mute stems (126, 130, 138). In the singular, except in the nominative, which is variable, the endings are the same. What are the differences in the plural?

b. Nouns in *-ēs* (gen. *-is*) are declined like *nūbēs*.

c. How does the declension of *ignis* differ from that of *hostis*? The most common nouns declined like *ignis* are *avis*, *bird*, *civis*, *citizen*, *finis*, *end*.

d. A few nouns in *-is* have both *-im* and *-em* in the accusative singular. These will be noted as they occur.

e. As a guide to the learner, all words having *i*-stems will be followed by the stem in the succeeding vocabularies.

## 149.

## Vocabulary.

animal, <i>-ālis</i> , n. ( <i>animālī-</i> ), animal.	finis, <i>-is</i> , m. ( <i>finī-</i> ), <i>end</i> , <i>border</i> , pl. <i>territories</i> .
animus, <i>-ī</i> , m. <i>mind</i> , <i>soul</i> .	hostis, <i>-is</i> , m. ( <i>hostī-</i> ), <i>ene-</i> <i>my</i> .
calcar, <i>-āris</i> , n. ( <i>calcārī-</i> ), <i>spur</i> , p. 186.	ignis, <i>-is</i> , m. ( <i>ignī-</i> ), <i>fire</i> .
civis, <i>-is</i> , m. and f. ( <i>civī-</i> ), <i>citizen</i> .	mare, <i>-is</i> , n. ( <i>marī-</i> ), <i>sea</i> .
concitō, <i>-āre</i> , <i>-āvi</i> , <i>-ātus</i> , <i>rouse up</i> , <i>spur</i> .	nāvis, <i>-is</i> , f. ( <i>nāvi-</i> ), [acc. <i>-em</i> or <i>-im</i> , abl. <i>-ī</i> or <i>e</i> ], <i>ship</i> , pp. 79, 88.
ex ( <i>ē</i> ), prep. with abl., <i>out</i> <i>of</i> , <i>from</i> .	necō, <i>-āre</i> , <i>-āvi</i> , <i>-ātus</i> , <i>kill</i> . nūbēs, <i>-is</i> , f. ( <i>nūbi-</i> ), <i>cloud</i> .
hostis, general word for <i>enemy</i> ; a <i>public enemy</i> .	
inimicus, a <i>private</i> or <i>personal enemy</i> ; opposed to <i>amicus</i> .	

150. 1. Cīvēs nūbem equitum in fine terrae vident.  
2. Quid habent ei equitēs in animō? 3.<sup>1</sup> Quid eis est  
in animō? 4. Equōs calcāribus concitant et oppidum  
expūgnābunt. 5. In hōc oppidō multi erant hominēs  
quī rēgem inopiā armōrum culpābant. 6. Cīvēs māximē  
territi sunt (*were terrified*) et ad mare summā cele-  
ritāte properāvērunt. 7. Multa animālia ab hostibus

<sup>1</sup> What do they intend, or mean?

lapidibus necāta sunt. 8. Necātī sunt in fugā viginti civēs. 9. Iī quōrum vīta servāta est nunc vident in oppidō māgnū ignem.

- 151.** 1. A citizen<sup>civ.</sup> sees a great ship on the<sup>mar</sup> sea.  
 2. In the ship that he sees there are many enemies.  
 3. Their<sup>1</sup> chief is a man of great stature.<sup>2</sup> 4.<sup>3</sup> What have those soldiers in mind? 5. They are hastening from the ship upon<sup>4</sup> the land. 6. They have horses and spurs.  
 7. They will try to take this town with fire and sword.  
 8. Will not the firmness of the citizens save the town?

## LESSON XXIII.

### Third Declension.

STEMS IN I. — *Continued.*

#### ABLATIVE OF TIME.

### 152.

#### *Paradigms.*

	cliēns, m. <i>dependent.</i>	urbs, f. <i>city.</i>	arx, f. <i>citadel.</i>	nox, f. <i>night.</i>
STEM.	clienti-	urbi-	arci-	nocti-

#### SINGULAR.

N.	cliēns	urbs	arx	nox
G.	clientis	urbis	arcis	noctis
D.	clientī	urbī	arci	noctī
Ac.	clientem	urbem	arcem	noctem
Ab.	cliente	urbe	arce	nocte

<sup>1</sup> Eōrum.

<sup>2</sup> Use corpus.

<sup>3</sup> See 150, 2 and 3.

<sup>4</sup> In with acc.

## PLURAL.

N. clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	noctēs
G. clientum	urbium	arcium	noctium
D. clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	noctibus
AC. clientis, -ēs	urbis, -ēs	arcis, -ēs	noctis, -ēs
AB. clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	noctibus

a. Most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs** are declined like those above. *Parēs, parent*, has the genitive plural *parentum*.

b. Besides *nox*, three common monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** following a vowel, *mūs* (gen. *mūris*), *mouse*, *nix* (gen. *nivis*), *snow*, and *os* (gen. *ossis*), *bone*, have **-ium** in the genitive plural.

**153.** A review of the paradigms of nouns with **i**-stems indicates that to **i**-stems belong

1. Nouns in **-is** and **-ēs** not increasing in the genitive.<sup>1</sup>
2. Neuters in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**.
3. Nouns in **-ns**. So also those in **-rs**.
4. Monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** following a consonant.

a. Decline together *nigra nūbēs*, *animal māgnum*, *urbs pulchra*, *illa arx*, *hōc mare*.

**154.** *Model Sentences.*

1. *Hieme et aestāte hominēs labōrant, men toil in winter and summer.*

2. *Primā lūce multōs hostēs vident, at daybreak (first light) they see many enemies.*

3. *Hīs viginti annis aedificātae sunt multae urbēs, within these twenty years many cities have been built.*

a. Observe that the ablatives in the above sentences are expressions of time. They answer the questions, *When?* *in*, or *within what time?*

<sup>1</sup> That is, having no more syllables than in the nominative.

**155. Rule.** — *Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative.*

**156.***Vocabulary.*

<i>aestās, aestātis, f. summer.</i>	<i>nox, noctis, f. (nocti-), night.</i>
<i>arx, arcis, f. (arci-), citadel,</i> <i>fortress.</i>	<i>primus, -a, -um, first.</i>
<i>avis, -is, f. (avi-) bird.</i>	<i>recreō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, re-</i> <i>fresh.</i>
<i>ēheu, interj. alas!</i>	<i>secundus, -a, -um, second.</i>
<i>hiems, hiemis, f. winter.</i>	<i>tempus, -oris, n. time.</i>
<i>hōra, -ae, f. hour.</i>	<i>urbs, urbis, f. (urbi-), city.</i>
<i>lūx, lūcis, f. light.</i>	<i>volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus,<sup>1</sup> fly.</i>

**157.** 1. Hieme ventus mare et nūbēs agitāt. 2. Aestāte somnus est grātus hominibus dēfessīs. 3. In mari nūbem avīum primā lūce vident puerī. 4. Hōrā secundā vident animālīa māgnō corpore. 5. Hominēs territi equōs concitant calcāribus. 6. Primā nocte<sup>2</sup> avēs ex mari in terram volant. 7. Cōsul filium virtūte laudāvit. 8. In urbe est ignis quem hostēs vident ex fine terrae. 9. Hostēs oppūgnābunt arcem quam in fine urbis vident. 10. Quō tempore arx oppūgnāta est? 11. Primā hōrā viginti, secundā septendecim hominēs ā victōribus sunt necātī.

**158.** 1. Where had those arms been with which the citizens fought? 2. They had been in the highest citadel. 3. Who is that leader whom the citizens see? 4. At the second hour of the night there will be a big moon. 5. Then by the light of the moon they will attack this city boldly.<sup>3</sup> 6. They mean<sup>4</sup> to take the city

<sup>1</sup> See p. 96, n. 1.    <sup>2</sup> See 3 above.    <sup>3</sup> See 93.    <sup>4</sup> See 150, 3.

and the citadel. 7. Alas! will the tender women and children be slain by the enemy? 8. On that night the bodies of the weary citizens were not refreshed by sleep.

## LESSON XXIV.

### Third Declension. — *Continued.*

#### 159.

#### GENDER.

1. Nouns in **-ō**, **-or**, **-ōs**, **-er**, and **-es** increasing in the genitive (commonly **-itis**, **-idis**), are masculine.

2. But nouns in **-dō**, **-gō**, together with abstract and collective nouns in **-iō**, are feminine.

3. Nouns in **-ās**, **-ēs** not increasing in the genitive, **-is**, **-ūs**, **-s** following a consonant, and **-x**, are feminine.

4. Nouns in **-a**, **-e**, **-i**, **-y**, **-c**, **-l**, **-n**, **-t**, **-ar**, **-ur**, **-ūs**, are neuter.

*a.* The above rules are subordinate to the general rules of gender (13).

*b.* Distinguish carefully nouns ending in **ūs** and **ūs**.

*c.* The rules will assist in remembering the gender of nouns, but there are many exceptions which the learner should carefully note as they occur.

## 160. Table for Review of Nouns of Third Declension.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
*dux, ducia, m. leader.	celeritas, -atis, f. quickness.
eques, -itis, m. horseman.	virtus, -utis, f. virtue, courage.
miles, -itis, m. soldier.	aetas, -atis, f. age.
pedites, -itis, m. foot-soldier.	avis, -is, f. (avi-), bird.
*princeps, -ipis, m. chief.	navis, -is, f. (navi-), ship.
*rex, regis, m. king.	nubes, -is, f. (nubi-), cloud.
*lapis, -idis, m. stone.	aestas, -atis, f. summer.
pēs, pedis, m. foot.	arx, arcis, f. (arci-), citadel.
*adulescēna, -entia, m. (adulē- scenti-), youth.	lux, lucis, f. light.
*cōsul, -ulis, m. consul.	nox, noctis, f. (nocti-), night.
*Hannibal, -alis, m. Hannibal.	urbs, urbis, f. (urbi-), city.
obseas, -idis, m. hostage.	libertas, -atis, f. liberty.
pater, patris, m. father.	
Scipio, -ōnis, m. Scipio.	NEUTER.
victor, -ōris, m. victor.	caput, -itis, n. head.
homō, -inis, m. man.	flūmen, -inis, n. river.
*civis, -is, m. (civi-), citizen.	vulnus, -eris, n. wound.
*finis, -is, m. (fini-), end.	corpus, -oris, n. body.
*hostis, -is, m. (hosti-), enemy.	animal, -alis, n. (animālī-), animal.
*ignis, -is, m. (igni-), fire.	calcar, -āris, n. (calcārī-), spur.
*cliēna, -entia, m. (clienti-), dependent.	mare, -is, n. (mari-), sea.
	tempus, -oris, n. time.

a. Exceptions to the rules of gender (159) are starred. See how many of these are covered by the general rules for gender (13).

b. Prove the gender of nouns not starred by applying the proper rule to each.

c. Make a list of all the above nouns having mute stems, and another of i-stems.

161.

*Anecdote.*

CICERO.

Cicerō, vir facētus,<sup>1</sup> ioca<sup>2</sup> amābat. Ōlim Lentulum generum,<sup>3</sup> quī parvae statūrae<sup>4</sup> erat, cum gladiō longō videt. “Quis,” inquit<sup>5</sup> Cicerō, “generum meum ad illum gladium adligāvit?”<sup>6</sup>

162.

*Colloquium.*

FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA.

brother little sister.

S. Nārrā mihi, frāter, dē Polyphēmō; quis fuit et ubi habitābat?

F. Polyphēmus filius Neptūnī fuit et cum frātribus in insulā habitābat.

S. Fuitne arātor et agrōs arābat?

ploughman

F. Minimē. Neque fuit arātor neque agrōs arābat Polyphēmus.

neither

nor

S. Nautā igitur sine dūbiō fuit, et maria nāvibus nāvigābat.

F. Errāvisti, mea sorōrcula, Polyphēmus fuit pāstor et

You are mistaken

shepherd

māgnās ovium gregēs habēbat. Fuit ingentis corporis

of sheep flocks

huge

et ūnum tantum oculum habuit. Ulixēs dolōsus eī ūnum

one only eye

Ulysses

crafty

his one

oculum stīpite perforāvit.

stake bored out

S. Ēheu! miserrimum Polyphēmum!

Oh dear! poor

<sup>1</sup> Witty.

<sup>2</sup> Jokes.

<sup>3</sup> Son-in-law.

<sup>4</sup> Stature.

<sup>5</sup> Said.

<sup>6</sup> Tied.



## LESSON XXV.

## Adjectives of the Third Declension.

163.

*Paradigms.***audāx, bold. STEM audāci-**

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
G. audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
D. audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
AC. audācem	audāx	audācia, -ēs	audācia
AB. audācī, -e	audācī, -e	audācibus	audācibus

**prūdēns, prudent. STEM prūdenti-**

N. prūdēns	prūdēns	prudentēs	prudentia
G. prudentis	prudentis	prudentium	prudentium
D. prudentī	prudentī	prudentibus	prudentibus
AC. prudentem	prūdēns	prudentia, -ēs	prudentia
AB. prudentī, -e	prudentī, -e	prudentibus	prudentibus

**brevis, short. STEM brevi-**

N. brevis	breve	brevēs	brevia
G. brevis	brevis	brevium	brevium
D. brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus
AC. brevem	breve	brevia, -ēs	brevia
AB. brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus

**ācer, keen, eager, active. STEM ācri-**

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G. ācris	ācris	ācris	ācium	ācium	ācium
D. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
AC. ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācria, -ēs	ācria, -ēs	ācria
AB. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. Adjectives declined like **audāx** and **prūdēns**, having one form in the nominative singular for all genders, are called *adjectives of one termination*; those declined like **brevis**, *adjectives of two terminations*; those declined like **ācer**, *adjectives of three terminations*.

b. Like what noun in the paradigms of i-stems are **audāx** and **prūdēns** declined in the masculine and feminine? How does the neuter differ in declension from **mare**?

c. Observe that adjectives of two terminations (like **brevis**), and also those of three terminations (like **ācer**), have only -ī in the ablative singular.

NOTE. — Adjectives of one termination have the genitive indicated in the vocabularies. The nominatives only of the others are given.

164.

*Vocabulary.*

<b>ā</b> or <b>ab</b> , prep. with abl., <i>from, by.</i>	<b>iuvō</b> , -āre, <b>iūvi</b> , <b>iūtus</b> , <i>help,</i>
<b>audāx</b> , -ācia, <i>bold, daring.</i>	<i>aid.</i>
<b>brevis</b> , -e, <i>short, brief.</i>	<b>mox</b> , adv. <i>presently.</i>
<b>comes</b> , -itis, m. <i>comrade.</i>	<b>occupō</b> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
<b>convocō</b> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>call</i>	<i>seize, take.</i>
<i>together, summon.</i>	<b>parō</b> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>get</i>
<b>cūr</b> , adv. <i>why?</i>	<i>ready, prepare for.</i>
<b>frāter</b> , <b>frātris</b> , m. <i>brother.</i>	<b>prūdēns</b> , -entis, <i>wise, prudent.</i>
<b>gravis</b> , -e, <i>heavy, severe.</i>	<b>vulnus</b> , -eris, n. <i>wound.</i>

165. 1. Brevi tempore principēs audācēs populum convocābunt. 2. Laudāmus prūdentem populum qui bellum parat. 3. Militēs ācrēs castra māgnā cum cūrā parāvērunt. 4. Dā, Ō Hannibal, obsidibus libertātem. 5. Frāter ducis gravī vulnere<sup>1</sup> ad castra portātus est.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of cause.

6. Nūntius ā liberō populō celeritāte laudātur. 7. Illa castra hostium primā lūce occupābimus. 8. Tum civēs virtūte iuvābimus. 9. Quis amīcōs iuvāre nōn tentābit?

**166.** 1. The war will be short, for the leader is wise. 2. He will try to seize the camp of the enemy. 3. Why will the camp be seized by the prudent commander? 4. He will aid the hostages, who are now in the camp. 5. His brother will help him in this war. 6. His comrade is now getting ready arms — shields, spears, arrows. 7. Presently the eager soldiers will be called together.

## LESSON XXVI.

### Ablative of Specification.

#### 167. *Model Sentences.*

1. Rōmānī Gallōs virtūte superābant, *the Romans surpassed the Gauls in bravery.*

2. Puer comitī diligentīā est similis, *the boy is like his comrade in industry.*

3. Bibulus nōmine tantum cōsul fuit, *Bibulus was consul only in name.*

a. Virtūte limits superābant in meaning. In the same way diligentīā and nōmine limit similis and cōsul. These ablatives answer the question *in what respect?* The ablative thus used is called the ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

**168. Rule.** — *The ablative is used with verbs, adjectives, and nouns, to denote in what respect a thing is true.*

169.

Vocabulary.

ācer, ācria, ācre, <i>keen, shrewd.</i>	pār, paria, <i>equal (to).</i>
fortis, -e, <i>brave, strong.</i>	scientia, -ae, f. <i>knowledge,</i>
ingēns, -entis, <i>huge, great.</i>	<i>skill.</i>
nōmen, -inis, n. <i>name.</i>	similis, -e, <i>like, similar.</i>
numerus, -i, m. <i>number.</i>	Often with dative.
omnia, -e, <i>all, whole.</i>	terror, -ōris, m. <i>alarm, terror.</i>

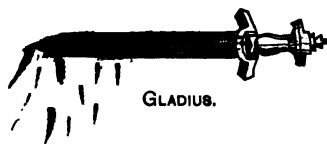
170. 1. Ille pedes comitem celeritāte pedum superāvit.  
 2. Is miles ab hōc oppidānō audāciā superātus est.  
 3. Cōsul est rēgī pār belli scientiā. 4. Brevi tempore  
 in urbe terror fuit ingēns. 5. Nam hostēs audācēs numerō  
 civēs superāvērunt. 6. Omnēs ducēs, hominēs fortēs  
 prūdētēsq̄ue, multa vulnera habent. 7. Quis igitur eōs  
 inopiā virtūtis nunc culpābit? 8. Nunc somnus grātus  
 est ei fortī militī, quī animō et corpore est dēfessus.  
 9. Laudāte principem ācri animō<sup>1</sup> et corpore<sup>1</sup> validō.

171. 1. Hannibal, leader of the Carthaginians, sur-  
 passed the Romans in skill in war.<sup>2</sup> 2. He was a  
 man of <sup>acris</sup> shrewd mind. 3. In courage he was like his  
 father. 4. Who was his<sup>3</sup> equal in daring? 5. In a short  
 time his name was a terror to the enemy on account of  
 his many victories. 6. But in good fortune he was not  
 equal to Scipio. 7. In what great battle was he defeated  
 by that Roman?

<sup>1</sup> See 140.

<sup>2</sup> Genitive.

<sup>3</sup> EI.



GLADIUS.

## LESSON XXVII.

Second Conjugation. — *Ē-Verbs.***Moneō** (stem *monē*), *advise.*PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitus**.

**172.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō** (512).

*a.* Compare the forms of **moneō** with those of **amō**. To inflect **moneō**, you have only to remember that the stem vowel is *ē* instead of *a*.

**173.** 1. **Monet**, **monēbat**, **monēbit**. 2. **Monētur**, **monēbatur**, **monēbitur**. 3. **Monent**, **monēbant**, **monēbunt**. 4. **Monentur**, **monēbantur**, **monēbuntur**. 5. **Moneō**, **monēbam**, **monēbō**. 6. **Moneor**, **monēbar**, **monēbor**. 7. **Monēmus**, **monēmur**. 8. **Monēbāmus**, **monēbāmur**. 9. **Monēbimus**, **monēbimur**. 10. **Monē**, **monēre**. 11. **Monēte**, **monēmini**. 12. **Monēre**, **monēri**.

*a.* Like **moneō** inflect in both voices the following: **habeō**, *have, hold*; **videō**, *see*; **terreō**, *frighten*; **moveō**, *move*.

**174.** 1. He sees, he is seen. 2. He was seeing, he was seen. 3. He will see, he will be seen. 4. They are seeing, they are seen. 5. To have, to see, to frighten. 6. To be had, to be seen, to be frightened. 7. We shall see, we shall be seen. 8. You were seeing, you were seen. 9. Does he hold? Is he seen? Is he frightened? 10. See (thou), see (ye). 11. Be thou seen, be ye seen.

## 175.

## Vocabulary.

antiquus, -a, -um, <i>old, of old, ancient.</i>	[ <i>increase.</i>	moveō, -ēre, mōvi, mōtus, <i>move.</i>
augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctus, <i>have, keep.</i>		quoque, conj. <i>too, also.</i>
habeō, -ēre, -ui, habitus, <i>hold, wait, remain, stay.</i>		sine, prep. with abl., <i>without.</i>
maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus, <i>wait, remain, stay.</i>		terreō, -ēre, terrui, territus, <i>frighten.</i>
mora, -ae, f. <i>delay.</i>		vetus, veteris, <i>old.</i>
		videō, -ēre, vidi, visus, <i>see.</i>

antiquus, *ancient, old*, as opposed to *modern, new*.

vetus, *old*, as opposed to *recent, young*.

176. 1. Incolae terrēbantur et omnia quae habēbant ex urbe movēbant. 2. Secundā noctis hōrā ingēns ignis omnibus ā civibus vidēbātur. 3. Ubi fuit is ignis quem civēs vidēbant? 4. Ignis fuit in illā arce vetere quam hominēs antiqui aedificāverant. 5. Ignem ventus māgnus auget; augētur igitur civium illōrum terror. 6. Qui aquam portābunt? 7. Cūr manētis? 8. Nōne sunt in illā arce viginti hominēs? 9. Sine morā aqua ab oppidānis et servis fidis portābātur. 10. Fēliciter brevi tempore ii viri fortēs in arce servātī sunt. 11. Omnēs civēs gaudent (*rejoice*) et nōs (*we*) quoque gaudēmus.



POCULUM.

## LESSON XXVIII.

177. Reading Lesson.<sup>1</sup>

## THE VOLSCIANS.

Ōlim Volscī, Rōmānōrum hostēs audācēs, urbī Rōmae<sup>2</sup> ingentem terrōrem praebēbant. Terror subitus erat, nam hostēs prope erant. Tūm cōsul sine morā iuventūtem armat, complet cibō urbem, omnia<sup>3</sup> tūta et tranquillā praebet. Interim hostēs aedificia multa in agris dēlent. Ita terrōrem augent rūsticōrum quōs civēs frūstrā iuvāre tentant. Hostēs ridēbant et gaudēbant, sed rūstici lūgēbant.

178. 1. Who are causing great terror to this city? 2. The enemy are close at hand, consul; arm the youth without delay. 3. The youth were armed speedily by the consul. 4. He will fill the city with food, he will render all things in the city safe. 5. In the meantime the enemy were destroying many buildings in the fields. 6. The alarm of the country people is increased. 7. For the enemy are increasing in number.

## 179.

## Vocabulary.

aedificium, -ī, n. *building.*

compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus,  
*fill, fill up, cover.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus,  
*destroy.*

frūstrā, adv. *in vain.*

interim, adv. *in the meantime.*

iuventūs, -ūtis, f. *youth.*

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxi, —, *mourn.*

praebeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus,  *furnish, render, cause.*

prope, adv. *near.*

rideō, -ēre, risi, risus, *laugh.*

rūsticus, -ī, m. *peasant.*

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*

<sup>1</sup> See introductory note to 144.

<sup>2</sup> Appositive. <sup>3</sup> All things.

## LESSON XXIX.

## The Locative Case.

180. *Model Sentences.*

1. Caesar Rōmae mānait, *Caesar remained at Rome.*
2. Athēnis erat templum pulchrum, *at Athens there was a fine temple.*
3. Cōsul rūri habitābat, *the consul was living in the country.*

a. Names of towns and a few other words have a form called the Locative, which expresses the idea of *at, in, on.*

b. The Locative has the following endings :

	SING.	PLU.
First declension . . . . .	-ae	-is
Second declension . . . . .	-i	-is
Third declension . . . . .	-ī(-e)	-ibus

181. *Vocabulary.*

Athēna, -ae, f. <i>Athena</i> (a goddess).	laceō, -ēre, lacui, —, lie.
Athēnae, -ārum, f. (pl.) <i>Athens.</i>	Trallēa, -ium, f. (pl.) <i>Tralles.</i>
Capua, -ae, f. <i>Capua.</i>	Zama, -ae, f. <i>Zama.</i>
Carthāgō, -inis, f. <i>Carthage.</i>	domī, at home (499).
Corinthus, -ī, f. <i>Corinth.</i>	humī, on the ground.
Delphī, -ōrum, m. (pl.) <i>Delphi.</i>	militiae, in the field (of war).
	rūri, in the country.

182. 1. Corinthi clārum vidēbāmus templum quod nunc dēlētur. 2. Statua Athēnae antiquis temporibus Athēnis vidēbātur. 3. Ubi nunc est illa statua quam olim vidēbant hominēs? 4. Rōmānī Scīpiōnis victōriis



fuērunt laeti. 5. Quem clārum principem necāvērunt Poenī Carthāgini? 6. Principem Rōmānum, cui nōmen fuit Rēgulus, necāvērunt. 7. Meus frāter domi manēbat. 8. Humi diū iacēbant milites qui vulnera multa et gravia habēbant. 9. Rōmāni domi militiaeque clārī fuērunt. 10. Frūstrā diū Trallibus manēbimus.

**183.** 1. Hannibal kept the horsemen and infantry at Capua. 2. The fear of Hannibal kept the citizens in the city. 3. Meanwhile peasants furnished grain for the horses, food for the men. 4. At Zama in Africa Hannibal was defeated by Scipio. 5. At Delphi there was a famous temple. 6. By whom was the temple at Delphi built? 7. Why are you lying on the ground, lazy boys? 8. Men, be brave at home and in the field.



### LESSON XXX.

#### Second Conjugation. — *Continued.*

**184.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **monēō** (512).

**185.** 1. Monuit, monuerat, monuerit. 2. Monuērunt, monūerant, monuerint. 3. Monui, monitus sum. 4. Monuerit, monitus erit. 5. Monueram, monitus eram. 6. Monuisti, monuerās, monueris. 7. Monitus est, monita erat, monita erit. 8. Monuisse, monitus esse.

**186.** 1. Mōvi, mōveram, mōverō. 2. Mōtus sum, mōtus eram, mōtus erō. 3. Praebitus est, praebitus erat,

praebitus erit. 4. Vidit, viderat, viderit. 5. Visus est, visus erat, visus erit. 6. Terruērunt, terruerant, terruerint. 7. Territi sunt, territi erant, territi erunt. 8. Dēlētum est, dēlētum erat, dēlētum erit.

187. 1. We had, we had had, we shall have had. <sup>1 habuimus</sup> <sup>2 eramus</sup> <sup>3 erimus</sup>  
 2. They had, they had had, they will have had. <sup>1 erant</sup> <sup>2 erant</sup> <sup>3 erunt</sup>  
 3. We saw, we were seen. <sup>1 vidimus</sup> <sup>2 eramus</sup>  
 4. We had seen, we had been seen. <sup>1 videramus</sup> <sup>2 eramus</sup>  
 5. We shall have seen, we shall have been seen. <sup>1 viderimus</sup> <sup>2 erimus</sup>  
 6. He filled, he increased. <sup>1 complēvit</sup>  
 7. They remained, they mourned.

## 188.

## Vocabulary.

Caesar, -aris, m. *Caesar*; p. 117.

postea, adv. *afterwards*.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,

poterat, *could, was able*.

*remove, go away.*

poterant, *could, were able*.

Pompēius, -eī, m. *Pompey*.

quia, conj. *because*.

189. 1. Sine scūtis militēs pūgnāre nōn poterant.  
 2. Hannibal Capuae sine multō cibō manēre nōn poterat.  
 3. Cūr Hannibal in Āfricā dēmigrāvit ex Italiā? 4. Quia in Āfricā erat māgnus terror. 5. Caesar quī Rōmae mānserat māgnā cum celeritatē ex urbe properāvit.  
 6. Caesar multum ex Galliā aurum portāverat. 7. Id aurum, quod ā Caesare portātum erat, in antiquō templō habitum est. 8. Hōc aurum Caesar ex templō postea mōvit. 9. Caesar secundō belli annō Pompēium quī fuit inimicus superāvit.



ARCUS.

## LESSON XXXI.

## Comparison of Adjectives.

## ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

190. In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

## 191.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>altus</i> (alto-), <i>high</i>	<i>altior</i>	<i>altissimus</i>
<i>brevis</i> (brevis-), <i>short</i>	<i>brevior</i>	<i>brevissimus</i>
<i>audāx</i> (audāci-), <i>bold</i>	<i>audācior</i>	<i>audācissimus</i>

a. Observe that the comparative is formed from the stem of the positive by dropping the stem vowel, if there is one, and adding -ior; the superlative by adding -issimus.

<i>misér</i> (misero-), <i>wretched</i>	<i>miserior</i>	<i>miserrimus</i>
<i>ācer</i> (ācri-), <i>keen</i>	<i>ācrior</i>	<i>ācerrimus</i>

b. Observe that adjectives in -er form the superlative by adding -rimus to the positive. The comparative is formed as in adjectives in -us.

## DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

## 192.

## Paradigm.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>altior</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
G. <i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>
D. <i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>
Ac. <i>altiōrem</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs, -is</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
Ab. <i>altiōre, -ī</i>	<i>altiōre, -ī</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>

a. The comparative of all adjectives except *plūs, more* (207), is declined like *altior*; the superlative like *bonus*.

b. Compare and decline in the comparative, *cārus, grātus, fortis, prūdēns*.

193.

*Model Sentences.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Virtūs hominibus cārior est<br>quam aurum,                | } <i>virtue is more precious to<br/>men than gold.</i> |
| 2. Virtūs hominibus cārior est<br>aurō,                      |  |
| 3. Via est brevior, <i>the way is rather (or too) short.</i> |  |
| 4. Via est brevissima, <i>the way is very short.</i>         |  |

a. Observe that the comparative may be followed, as in the first sentence, by *quam*. If *quam* is used, the two objects compared (*virtūs* and *aurum*) are in the same case.

b. But *quam* may be omitted, as in the second sentence; then the comparative is followed by the ablative. The ablative can be used only in place of *quam* and the nominative, or *quam* and the accusative.

**194. Rule.** — *The comparative is followed by the ablative when quam (than) is omitted.*

c. Observe in 3 and 4 an occasional use of the comparative meaning *too* or *rather*, and of the superlative meaning *very*.

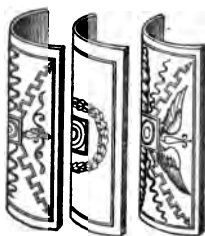
195.

*Vocabulary.*

altus, -a, -um, <i>high, deep.</i>	mōns, montis, m. (monti-), <i>mountain</i> (496).
angustus, -a, -um, <i>narrow.</i>	nix, nivis, f. (nivi-), <i>snow.</i>
imperātor, -ōris, m. <i>commander, general.</i>	Padus, -i, m. <i>the Po.</i>
iter, itineris, n. <i>way, march, journey</i> (499).	sapiēns, -entis, <i>wise.</i>
	ūtilis, -e, <i>useful.</i>
	umbra, -ae, f. <i>shade.</i>

**196.** 1. Quis urbem pulchriorem quam Rōmam vidit? 2. Quis urbem pulchriorem Rōmā vidit? 3. Aestāte umbra grātor est quam hieme. 4. Miles gladium longiorem habuit. 5. Hōc iter ad castra Caesaris est brevissimum. 6. Montēs altissimi aestāte nive sunt albī. 7. Padus fuit Italiae flūmen pulcherrimum. 8. Quod flūmen pulchrius Padō Poenī viderant? 9. Arma quibus Rōmānī pūgnābant gravia erant. 10. Helvētīi angustōs finēs habuērunt. 11. Quod iter est brevius quam illud? 12. Quod iter est brevius illō?

**197.** 1. What commander have you seen braver than Caesar? 2. Did not his name terrify the Gauls? 3. The bravest men are not always the wisest. 4. Seas are deeper than rivers. 5. What is more useful to men than money? 6. My companion was very prudent. 7. The companion whom we had was very wise. 8. My sword is rather long.



SCUTA.

## LESSON XXXII.

Comparison of Adjectives. — *Continued.*

## PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

The following tables are given for reference.

**198.** Six adjectives in *-lis* drop the final vowel of the stem and add *-limus* to form the superlative:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, <i>-e, easy.</i>	facillor, <i>-ius</i>	facillimus, <i>-a, -um</i>
difficilis, <i>-e, hard.</i>	difficillor, <i>-ius</i>	difficillimus, <i>-a, -um</i>
similis, <i>-e, like.</i>	simillor, <i>-ius</i>	simillimus, <i>-a, -um</i>
dissimilis, <i>-e, unlike.</i>	dissimillor, <i>-ius</i>	dissimillimus, <i>-a, -um</i>
humilis, <i>-e, low.</i>	humillor, <i>-ius</i>	humillimus, <i>-a, -um</i>
gracilis, <i>-e, slender.</i>	gracillor, <i>-ius</i>	gracillimus, <i>-a, -um</i>

**199.** The following also form their superlative irregularly. The positives are not used in the nominative singular masculine.

exterus, <i>outward.</i>	exterior, <i>outer,</i>	extrēmus } <i>outermost,</i>
	<i>exterior.</i>	extimus } <i>last.</i>
inferus, <i>below.</i>	inferior, <i>lower.</i>	infinus } <i>lowest.</i>
		imus } <i>lowest.</i>
posterus, <i>following.</i>	posterior, <i>later.</i>	postrēmus } <i>last.</i>
		postumus } <i>last.</i>
superus, <i>above.</i>	superior, <i>higher.</i>	suprēmus } <i>highest.</i>
		summus } <i>highest.</i>

**200.** The following want the positive. They form the comparative and superlative from prepositions or adverbs.

[cis, citrā, <i>on this side.</i> ]	citerior, <i>hither.</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost.</i>
[in, intrā, <i>in, within.</i> ]	interior, <i>inner.</i>	intimus, <i>inmost.</i>
[prae, prō, <i>before.</i> ]	prior, <i>former.</i>	primus, <i>first.</i>
[prope, <i>near.</i> ]	propior, <i>nearer.</i>	proximus, <i>next.</i>
[ultrā, <i>beyond.</i> ]	ulterior, <i>further.</i>	ultimus, <i>furthest, last.</i>

**201.** Some adjectives are compared, as in English, by means of adverbs:

*idōneus, fit; magis idōneus, more fit; m̄ximē idōneus, most fit.*

**202.**

*Model Sentences.*

1. *Hōrum Gallōrum fortissimī erant Belgae, of these Gauls the bravest were the Belgians.*

2. *Multi militum necātī sunt, many of the soldiers were killed.*

3. *Plūs pecūniae habent quam virtūtis, they have more (of) money than (of) worth.*

*a.* Observe that each genitive denotes a *whole* of which a *part* is taken. This genitive is called the *Partitive Genitive*.

**203. Rule.** — *The partitive genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.*

*a.* Sometimes *ē (ex)* with the ablative is used instead of the partitive genitive: *multi ex militibus, many of the soldiers.*

**204.**

*Vocabulary.*

*Brūtus, -ī, m. Brutus.*

*citerior, -ius, hither.*

*collis, -is, m. (collī-), hill.*

*cōnallium, -ī, n. wisdom (59).*

*difficilis, -e, difficult, hard.*

*dissimilis, -e, unlike, with dat.*

*facilis, -e, easy.*

*Gallus, -ī, m. a Gaul.*

*idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable.*

*inferus, -a, -um, lower.*

*māgnitūdō, -inis, f. size.*

*Ocelum, -ī, n. Ocelum, a town.*

*pars, partis, f. (parti-), part, share.*

*pōnsum, -ī, n. task, lesson.*

*propior, -ius, nearer, with dat.*

*superus, -a, -um, high.*

*ūterior, -ius, further.*

**205.** 1. *Multum itineris est angustum sed facillimum.*

2. *Hominēs Āfricae hominibus<sup>1</sup> Eurōpae sunt dissi-*

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

millimi. 3. Pēsum quod est facile omnibus placet. 4. Illud oppidum, Ocelum nōmine, est citeriōris Galliae ūltimum. 5. Galli quōs primā hōrā vidimus in superiōre parte collis erant. 6. Sed secundā hōrā inferiōrem partem complēverant. 7. Oceli viginti ex equitibus vulnerāti sunt. 8. Brūtus, vir summī cōnsili, ūltimus Rōmānōrum appellātus est. 9. Primā lūce pars hostium in monte vidēbātur ā militibus. 10. Urbs Rōma mari<sup>1</sup> nōn erat proxima. 11. Omnium collium quōs vidēmus ille est māgnitūdine castris māximē idōneus.

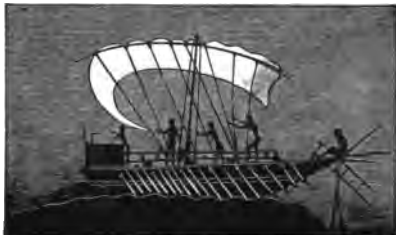
**206.** 1. What easier task do you see than this? <sup>vide</sup> 2. We have seen more difficult things.<sup>2</sup> 3. These new books are very unlike in size.<sup>3</sup> 4. Which<sup>4</sup> of those hills is the nearest? 5. What towns are very near that river yonder, the Po? 6. In a very short time the bravest of the enemy were frightened. 7. All the soldiers that we saw on the next hill were Gauls. 8. Whose horses are handsomer than Marcus's?

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

<sup>2</sup> See 168.

<sup>3</sup> Omit and use the neuter plural of the adjective.

<sup>4</sup> Masculine gender. Why?



NAVIS PIRATA.



## LESSON XXXIII.

Comparison of Adjectives. — *Continued.*

## ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.

207. The following adjectives form the comparative and superlative irregularly:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good.</i>	mellor, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad.</i>	pēlor, pēlius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great.</i>	mālor, mālus	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much.</i>	—, plūs (208)	plūrimus, -a, -um
multi, -ae, -a, <i>many.</i>		
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small.</i>	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
senex, senis, <i>old.</i>	senior <sup>1</sup>	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young.</i>	iūnior <sup>1</sup>	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris, <i>old.</i>	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

208. Declension of *plūs, more*, plur. *more* or *many*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. —	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G. —	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D. —	—	plūribus	plūribus
Ac. —	plūs	plūris, -ēs	plūra
Ab. —	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

209. *Model Sentences.*

1. Caesar sex annis minor nātū erat Pompēiō, *Caesar was six years younger (younger by six years) than Pompey.*

2. Arcēs decem pedibus sunt altiōrēs quam mūrus, *the towers are ten feet higher (higher by ten feet) than the wall.*

<sup>1</sup> Instead of *senior, mālor nātū* and instead of *iūnior, minor nātū*; (*greater by birth*) is often used, but *nātū* is sometimes omitted.

a. Observe that the ablatives **annis** and **pedibus** answer the question (*by*) *how much?* and denote the DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE between the objects compared.

**210. Rule.** — *Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative.*

**211.***Vocabulary.*

<b>Catilina</b> , -ae, m. <i>Catiline</i> .	<b>prudentia</b> , -ae, f. <i>wisdom,</i>
<b>Cicerō</b> , -ōnis, m. <i>Cicero</i> ; p. 141.	<i>prudence, foresight.</i>
<b>interdum</b> , adv. <i>sometimes.</i>	<b>semper</b> , adv. <i>always.</i>
<b>nātū</b> , abl., m. <i>by birth, in age.</i>	<b>senex</b> , <b>senis</b> , <i>old (499).</i>
<b>ōrātor</b> , -ōris, m. <i>orator.</i>	<b>sex</b> (indecl.), <i>six.</i>
<b>pigritia</b> , -ae, f. <i>laziness.</i>	<b>timeō</b> , -ēre, <b>timui</b> , —, <i>fear.</i>

**Senex**, used mostly of persons, and implying respect.

**Vetus**, much more used as an adjective, and applied to persons and things.

**212.** 1. Pompēius sex annis māior nātū erat quam Caesar. 2. Nōne ōrātor quoque clārissimus sex annis māior<sup>1</sup> erat Caesare? 3. Quid erat ei nōmen? 4. Cicerō, quī ōrātōrum Rōmānōrum māximus appellātur. 5. Optimī ōrātōrēs interdum sunt pessimī civēs. 6. Sed Cicerō civis optimus erat et ācērrimus cōsul. 7. Sapientissimis cōsiliis Rōmam servāvit, quam Catilina dēlere tentāvit. 8. Optimōs<sup>2</sup> amāmus, timēmus<sup>3</sup> pessimōs. 9. Catilina ab omnibus bonis civibus timēbātur. 10. Multō melius<sup>3</sup> est amāri quam timēri, et nōn difficilior.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 80, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> *The best (men).* See p. 44, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> Neuter, because the infinitive is regarded as a neuter noun.

213. 1. A man with a large head<sup>1</sup> is not always superior in wisdom. 2. It is much easier to love friends than enemies. 3. What is worse than laziness? 4. Very many of the soldiers had more courage<sup>2</sup> than prudence.<sup>3</sup> 5. The oldest wines are not always the best.<sup>4</sup> 6. My brother, who is older than Sextus, is a head<sup>5</sup> taller than Marcus. 7. Was not Caesar a better general than Pompey? 8. Caesar had a great many<sup>6</sup> friends.

## LESSON XXXIV.

### Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

#### FORMATION.

#### 214.

#### Models.

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
grātus, <i>agreeable</i> .	grāto-	grātē, <i>agreeably</i> .
miser, <i>wretched</i> .	misero-	miserē, <i>wretchedly</i> .
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i> .	pulchro-	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i> .

a. Observe that adverbs from adjectives with o-stems are formed by changing the o to ē.

fortis, <i>brave</i> .	forti-	fortiter, <i>bravely</i> .
ācer, <i>eager</i> .	ācri-	ācritēr, <i>eagerly</i> .
prūdēs, <i>wise</i> .	prūdenti-	prūdentēr, <i>wisely</i> .

b. Observe that adverbs are formed from adjectives with i-stems by adding ter to the stem.

c. Observe that stems in -nti- drop ti before ter.

<sup>1</sup> See 140.

<sup>2</sup> See 193, a.

<sup>6</sup> Express a great many by

<sup>3</sup> See 202, 3.

<sup>4</sup> See 209.

one word.

ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
multus, <i>much</i> .	multum, <i>much</i> .
facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facile, <i>easily</i> .
impūnis, <i>unpunished</i> .	impūne, <i>with safety</i> .

d. The accusative singular neuter of the adjective is sometimes used as an adverb.

citus, <i>quick</i> .	citō, <i>quickly</i> .
subitus, <i>sudden</i> .	subitō, <i>suddenly</i> .
primus, <i>first</i> .	primō, <i>at first</i> .

e. The ablative singular neuter of the adjective is sometimes used as an adverb.

#### COMPARISON.

### 215.

#### Models.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
grātō, <i>agreeably</i> .	grātius	grātissimō
miserō, <i>wretchedly</i> .	miserius	miserimō
ācritēr, <i>eagerly</i> .	ācrius	ācerrimō
fēliciter, <i>luckily</i> .	fēlicius	fēlicissimō
bene, <sup>1</sup> <i>well</i> .	melius	optimō
male, <i>badly</i> , <i>ill</i> .	pēlius	pessimō
multum, <i>much</i> .	plūs	plūrimum
—	magis	māximō

a. Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective ; and that the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing, as in the positive, the final o of the stem to ē.

b. If the adjective is irregular in comparison, the adverb is also irregular.

c. Form adverbs from the following adjectives and compare them : brevis (brevis-), *short*, liber (liber-), *free*, aeger (aegro-), *weak*, similis (simili-), *like*.

<sup>1</sup> Formed irregularly from bonus.

## 216.

## Vocabulary.

ācritēr, adv. *eagerly, fiercely*. diūtius, adv., comp. of diū,  
 amplius, adv. *more, longer*. [superl., diūtissimē], *longer*.  
 cārē, adv. *dearly*. facile, adv. *easily*.  
 cōpla, -ae, f. *plenty, abundance*. fidēliter, adv. *faithfully*.  
 dēbeō, -ēre, dēbui, dēbitus, ibi, adv. *there, in that place*.  
*owe, ought, must*. lēx, lēgis, f. *law*. [(152, a).  
 diligenter, adv. *diligently*. parēns, -entis, m. and f. *parent*  
 pārēō, -ēre, pārui, —, (w. dat.) *obey*.  
 subitō, adv. *suddenly*.

217. 1. Militēs Rōmānī virtūte Gallōs facile supē-  
 rābant. 2. Longīs hastis multō fortius pūgnābant.  
 3. Amplius sex hōris fortissimē pūgnāvērunt. 4. Cōsul  
 Rōmae diūtius manēbat quam Capuae. 5. Caesar castra  
 mōvit et subitō oppidum oppūgnāvit. 6. Hieme montēs  
 altissimī cōpiā nivis complentur. 7. Tum miserī rūstici  
 in aedificiis, animālia in agris vivunt (*live*). 8. Puerī<sup>1</sup>  
 parentēs cārissimē amāre dēbent. 9. Parentēs pueris  
 cōnsilium optimum dant. 10. Prō eis diligentissimē labō-  
 rant. 11. Pueri, parentibus<sup>2</sup> pārēte, quibus omnia dēbētis.  
 12. Lēgibus<sup>3</sup> patriae fidēlissimē pārēre dēbēmus.

218. 1. The Gauls were more easily frightened than  
 the Romans. 2. Did not Caesar stay a very long time  
 in Gaul? 3. There he fought battles most successfully.  
 4. Suddenly he moved his camp into lower Italy. 5. The  
 elders<sup>3</sup> who were in the city remained, and luckily were  
 saved. 6. That boy laughs much; he is merry. 7. Laugh-  
 ing<sup>4</sup> is much better than mourning.<sup>5</sup> 8. Children some-  
 times do not obey their parents faithfully.

<sup>1</sup> Children.<sup>3</sup> Older (men).<sup>4</sup> To laugh.<sup>2</sup> Notice the dative with pārēō.<sup>5</sup> To mourn. Cf. 212, 10.

## 219.

*Colloquium.*

PATER ET FĪLIOLUS.

*P.* Quid, mī filiōle, in scholā hodiē discēbās?

little son

learn

*F.* Discēbam, mī pater, pēnsū de adverbīis longissimū.*P.* Cui parti ōrātiōnis est adverbium simillimū?

speech

*F.* Simillimū, ut opīnor, est adverbium adiectivō.

as I think

*P.* Rēctē, puer; sed illud mihi explicā, sī poteris: Sī, ut dīcis, adverbium adiectivō est simile, unde nōmen trāxit?

explain if you can

as

say

whence

has derived

*F.* Fortasse propter hōc, quia saepissimē verbis adiungitur.

perhaps

on account of

very often

verbs

it is joined

*P.* Optimē, filiōle; ēn tibi āsem!

behold for you

penny

## LESSON XXXV.

## Third Conjugation. — Ē-Verbs.

Regō, (STEM rege) *rule*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus.

**220.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of regō (513).*a.* Compare the forms of regō with those of amō and moneō. See wherein they are alike, and wherein they differ.**221.** 1. Regit, regēbat, reget. 2. Regitur, regēbātur, regētur. 3. Regunt, regēbant, regent. 4. Reguntur,

regēbantur, regentur. 5. Regis, regēbās, regēs. 6. Rege-  
ris, regēbāris, regēris. 7. Regimus, regimur. 8. Regē-  
bāmus, regēbāmur. 9. Regēmus, regēmur. 10. Regere,  
regi. 11. Regite, regimini. 12. Rege, regere.

a. Like *regō* inflect in both voices the same tenses of *dūcō*,  
*lead*, *mittō*, *send*, and *scribō*, *write*.

**222.** 1. He leads, he is led. 2. He was leading, he  
was led. 3. He will lead, he will be led. 4. They lead,  
they are led. 5. To lead, to send, to write. 6. To be  
led, to be sent, to be written. 7. We shall send, we  
shall be sent. 8. You were leading, you were led.  
9. Does he lead? Is he sent? Does he write?  
10. Write, lead,<sup>1</sup> send. 11. Be thou led, be ye led.  
12. I lead, I am led.

**223.***Vocabulary.*

<i>dēfendō</i> , -ere, <i>dēfendī</i> , <i>dē-</i>	<i>Labiēnus</i> , -ī, m. <i>Labiēnus</i> .
<i>fēnsus</i> , <i>defend</i> , <i>protect</i> .	<i>legiō</i> , -ōnis, f. <i>legion</i> .
<i>dūcō</i> , -ere, <i>dūxi</i> , <i>ductus</i> ,	<i>mittō</i> , -ere, <i>misī</i> , <i>missus</i> , <i>send</i> .
<i>lead</i> , <i>conduct</i> .	<i>scribō</i> , -ere, <i>scripsi</i> , <i>scriptus</i> ,
<i>dum</i> , conj. <i>while</i> , <i>as long as</i> .	<i>write</i> , <i>write out</i> .
<i>epistula</i> , -ae, f. <i>letter</i> .	<i>sī</i> , conj. <i>if</i> , <i>whether</i> .
<i>gerō</i> , -ere, <i>gessi</i> , <i>gestus</i> , <i>bear</i> ,	<i>uxor</i> , -ōris, f. <i>wife</i> .
<i>carry on</i> , <i>wage</i> ( <i>war</i> ).	<i>vincō</i> , -ere, <i>vici</i> , <i>victus</i> , <i>con-</i>
<i>iuvenis</i> , -e, <i>young</i> (207).	<i>quer</i> , <i>defeat</i> .

**224.** 1. *Dēfendite*, O *civēs*, *hanc pulcherrimam urbem*.  
2. *Diligentissimē eam dēfendere dēbētis*. 3. *Si ācritēr*  
*pūgnābitis*, *uxōrēs liberōsque dēfendētis*. 4. *Si Caesar*  
*est in urbe*, *facillimē dēfendētur*. 5. *Is semper hostis*

<sup>1</sup> The present imperative second singular is *dūc* for *dūce*.

vincit. 6. Caesar sex legiōnēs in ūlteriōrem Galliam mittit. 7. Bellum cum Gallis ibi gerēbātur. 8. Eae legiōnēs quās Caesar mittit ā Labiēnō dūcuntur. 9. Eā aestāte, dum Caesar bellum gerit<sup>1</sup> in ūlteriōre Galliā, Pompēius Rōmae fuit. 10. Fuitne Pompēius imperātor melior quam Caesar?

**225.** 1. The town will be defended by the most skillful generals. 2. At this time many lands are ruled by kings. 3. Boys and girls, write letters to all your<sup>2</sup> friends. 4. You ought to write them with great care. 5. Who of our generals will lead the legions into battle? 6. If Caesar leads<sup>3</sup> them, they will fight with the greatest courage. 7. Send all the elders into the citadel. 8. The younger men, whose valor is great, will defend the city.



## LESSON XXXVI.

### 226. Reading Lesson.

#### CORNELIA'S JEWELS.

Tiberius Gracchus et Gāius Gracchus erant filii Cornēliae, Scipiōnis Āfricāni filiae. Ii pueri bonis artibus flōruērunt. Ā mātrem educāti sunt et ab<sup>4</sup> eā sermōnis ēlegantiam discēbant. Cornēlia erat mulier sapientissima. Cum Campāna mātṛōna ōrnāmenta sua<sup>5</sup> pretiōsissima ei<sup>6</sup> ostendēbat, Cornēlia duōs<sup>7</sup> filiōs vocāvit. "Haec," inquit, "sunt mea ōrnāmenta."

<sup>1</sup> Was carrying on; the present indicative with *dum* is often used of a past act.

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

<sup>3</sup> Shall lead.

<sup>4</sup> From.

<sup>5</sup> Her (own).

<sup>6</sup> Feminine.

<sup>7</sup> Two.



**227.** 1. Cornelia had two sons. 2. The elder was called Tiberius,<sup>1</sup> the younger Caius.<sup>2</sup> 3. They were boys of very good qualities.<sup>3</sup> 4. For their mother faithfully educated them.<sup>4</sup> 5. Elegance of speech is a great ornament to boys. 6. If boys are well trained, they learn to obey their elders.<sup>4</sup> 7. Ladies always like<sup>5</sup> to display jewels, if they have them. 8. What precious jewels did Cornelia display?

**228.***Vocabulary.*

*ars, artis, f. (arti-) art, skill;*

*in plu., qualities.*

*cum, conj. when, while.*

*discō, -ere, didici, —, learn.*

*educō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, train, educate.*

*flōreō, -ēre, flōrui, —, flourish, be conspicuous, be distinguished.*

*libenter, adv. gladly.*

*māter, -tris, f. mother.*

*mātrōna, -ae, f. matron, lady.*

*mulier, mulieris, f. woman.*

*ornāmentum, -i, n. ornament, jewel.*

*ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus, show, display.*

*pretiōsus, -a, -um, precious.*

*sermō, -ōnis, m. speech, conversation.*

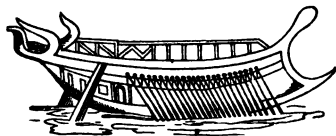
<sup>1</sup> See 37.

<sup>2</sup> Note that the Latin *Gaius* is *Caius* in English.

<sup>3</sup> See 140.

<sup>4</sup> Their elders = older (men); dative.

<sup>5</sup> Like to display = gladly display.



· NAVIS LONGA.

## LESSON XXXVII.

## Fourth Declension.

THE STEM ENDS IN U.

**229. GENDER.** — Nouns of the fourth declension in **-us** are masculine, those in **-ū** are neuter, except so far as **13, 2** is applicable.

*a. Domus, house, idūs, the Ides, manus, hand, and a few others, are feminine.*

**230. Paradigms.**

gradus, m. <i>step.</i>		cornū, n. <i>horn.</i>	
STEM, gradu-		STEM, cornu-	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. gradus	gradūs	cornū	cornua
G. gradūs	graduū	cornūs	cornuum
D. graduī, -ū	gradibus	cornū	cornibus
Ac. gradum	gradūs	cornū	cornua
Ab. gradu	gradibus	cornū	cornibus

**231. Artus, joint, portus, harbor, and a few other nouns, together with dissyllables in -cus, have the dative and ablative plural in -abus: portubus, arcubus, with bows.**

**232. Domus, house, has also forms of the second declension. See 499. Domī is used only as a locative.**

**233. Decline together māgnus exercitus, large army; mea manus, my hand; longum cornū, long horn.**

## 234.

## Vocabulary.

cornū, -ūs, n. <i>horn</i> ; <i>wing</i> (of an army); p. 130.	manus, -ūs, f. <i>hand</i> ; <i>band</i> , <i>force</i> .
dexter, -era, -erum (oftener -tra, -trum), <i>right</i> .	peditātus, -ūs, m. <i>infantry</i> .
domus, <del>us</del> <sup>us</sup> <i>house</i> , <i>home</i> (499).	portus, -ūs, m. <i>harbor</i> .
elephantus, -ī, m. <i>elephant</i> .	prope, prep. with acc., <i>near</i> .
equitātus, -ūs, m. <i>cavalry</i> .	sinister, -tra, -trum, <i>left</i> .
exercitus, -ūs, m. <i>army</i> .	teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, <i>hold</i> , <i>keep</i> .

235. 1. Meā<sup>1</sup> manū hās epistulās mǎximā cum cūrā scribam. 2. Multi Rōmānōrum artem belli puerī didicerunt. 3. Corinthī erant duo<sup>2</sup> portūs. 4. In quibus portubus erant plūrimae nāvēs. 5. Dextrum exercitūs cornū fortissimē pūgnāvit. 6. Caesar exercitum in proximum oppidum dūcit. 7. Subitō peditātus hostium in<sup>3</sup> eius legiōnēs mittitur. 8. Exercitūs Gallōrum equitātū flōrēbant. 9. Bellum ab eis equitātū<sup>4</sup> peditātūque gerēbātur. 10. Scipiōnis equitātus territus est elephantis Hannibalis.

236. 1. The general with all the cavalry held the right wing of the army. 2. At home and in the field we ought to learn prudence. 3. Many animals fight with their<sup>5</sup> horns. 4. Bands of the enemy were seen near the house of Marcus. 5. And in the further part of the harbor they saw a rather<sup>6</sup> large ship. 6. Marcus holds his<sup>5</sup> sword in his right hand. 7. And with it<sup>7</sup> he will defend his wife and children. 8. In his left hand he carries a shield.

<sup>1</sup> *My own*.<sup>3</sup> *Against*.<sup>5</sup> *Omit*.<sup>6</sup> *See 194, c.*<sup>2</sup> *Two*.<sup>4</sup> *See 84.*<sup>7</sup> *And with it = with which.*

## LESSON XXXVIII.

Third Conjugation. — *Continued.*

## ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

**237.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *regō* (513).

a. Compare these forms with the same tenses of *amō* and *moneō*.

---

**238.** 1. *Rēxit, rēxerat, rēxerit.* 2. *Rēctus est, rēctus erat, rēctus erit.* 3. *Rēxērunt, rēxerant, rēxerint.* 4. *Rēxi, rēcta sum.* 5. *Rēxistis, rēctae estis.* 6. *Rēxerimus, rēctae erimus.* 7. *Rēximus, rēcti sumus.* 8. *Rēxisse, rēctus esse.* 9. *Rēxi, rēxeram, rēxerō.* 10. *Rēctus sum, rēctus eram, rēctus erō.*

**239.** 1. He has led, he has been led. 2. He had led, he had been led. 3. You will have led, you will have been led. 4. They have sent, they have been sent. 5. He led, he was led. 6. We had sent, we had been sent. 7. You wrote, you led, you sent. 8. To have led, to have sent. 9. To have been led, to have been sent.

**240.** *Model Sentences.*

1. *Caesar Labiēnum in Galliam cum exercitū misit, Caesar sent Labienus into Gaul with an army.*

2. *Domī cum liberis mānsimus, we stayed at home with our children.*

**241. Rule.**—*Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.*

a. If the ablative is modified by an adjective, *cum* is sometimes omitted: *māgnō exercitū, with a large army.* See ablative of manner (92, 93).

**242.***Vocabulary.*

<i>caedēs, -is, f. (caedi-), slaughter, carnage.</i>	<i>locus, -i, m. (pl. loci and loca) place, position.</i>
<i>discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, depart, withdraw.</i>	<i>pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, place, put; pitch (camp).</i>
<i>inter, prep. w. acc., between, among, amid.</i>	<i>putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, think, reckon, believe.</i>
<i>legō, -ere, lēgi, lēctus, read.</i>	<i>Rhēnus, -i, m. the Rhine.</i>
<i>senātus, -ūs, m. senate.</i>	
<i>trāns, prep. w. acc., across, the other side of, beyond.</i>	

**243.** 1. Epistulās lēgi quās scripsisti. 2. Oppidum positum est<sup>1</sup> inter flūmen Rhēnum et montem. 3. Cōsul urbem Rōmam dēfendit. 4. Ūnus<sup>2</sup> ducum māgnū exercitum in Galliam dūxerat. 5. Scipiō in Hispāniam cum sex legiōnibus missus erat. 6. Bellum in Ītaliā ab Hannibale gestum est. 7. Saepissimē exercitūs Rōmānōs vicit Hannibal. 8. Dux castra prope portum posuit. 9. Hostēs pila ē locō superiōre misērunt. 10. Dum haec in dextrō cornū geruntur,<sup>3</sup> sinistrum<sup>4</sup> fugātum est. 11. Quō<sup>5</sup> plūrēs erant hostēs, eō<sup>5</sup> māior caedēs fuit. 12. Virtūtem militi putāmus optimum esse ōrnāmentum.

<sup>1</sup> positum est = *is situated.*

<sup>2</sup> *One.*

<sup>3</sup> See p. 87, n. 1.

<sup>4</sup> Supply cornū.

<sup>5</sup> Quō . . . eō, *by which . . . by that = the . . . the.* See 210.

**244.** 1. Caesar wrote many letters to<sup>1</sup> the senate.  
 2. And these<sup>2</sup> letters were read by the chief of the senate.  
 3. Labienus hastened with all the infantry towards the river. 4. He pitched his camp on the other side of the river. 5. Large bands of the enemy were seen in many places. 6. They had withdrawn from<sup>3</sup> the place in which the camp had been pitched. 7. At daybreak several<sup>4</sup> soldiers departed from the camp. 8. If the army is destroyed,<sup>5</sup> the citizens will mourn.

<sup>1</sup> ad.    <sup>2</sup> And these = which.    <sup>3</sup> ex.    <sup>4</sup> aliquot.    <sup>5</sup> Future.



TEMPLUM.

## LESSON XXXIX.

## Personal and Reflexive Pronouns.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

245.

## Paradigms.

## FIRST PERSON.

## Ego, I.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. ego, I.	nōs, we.
G. mei, of me.	nostrū, or nostri, of us.
D. mihi, (mī), to or for me.	nōbis, to or for us.
Ac. mē, me.	nōs, us.
Ab. (ā) mē, by me.	(ā) nōbis, by us.

## SECOND PERSON.

## Tū, thou.

N. tū, thou (you).	vōs, you, ye.
G. tui, of thee (you).	vestrū, or vestri, of you.
D. tibi, to or for thee (you).	vōbis, to or for you.
Ac. tē, thee (you).	vōs, you.
Ab. (ā) tē, by thee (you).	(ā) vōbis, by you.

## THIRD PERSON (REFLEXIVE).

## Sui, of himself, etc.

N. _____	_____
G. sui, of himself, herself, itself.	sui, of themselves.
D. sibi, to or for himself, etc.	sibi, to or for themselves.
Ac. se (sēsē), himself, etc.	se (sēsē), themselves.
Ab. (ā) se (sēsē), by himself, etc.	(ā) se (sēsē), by themselves.

a. The personal pronoun of the third person, when not reflexive, is supplied by the demonstrative *is*, *ea*, *id*, and sometimes by *hic* and *ille*. See 100, *f*, and 119, *c*.

## 246.

## Model Sentences.

1. **Ego sum tristis, tū es laetus, I am sad, you are glad.**
2. **Omnēs hominēs sē (or sēsē) amant, all men love themselves.**
3. **Quis vestrū sē nōn amat? who of you does not love himself?**
4. **Filius mēcum domi Rōmae manet, my son stays at home with me at Rome.**

a. Observe in 1 that the subjects **ego** and **tū** are expressed. In general, nominatives of personal pronouns are not expressed; when they are used, it is for emphasis or contrast.

b. The reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands, as in 2.

c. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are often used with reflexive sense: **tū tē amās, thou lovest thyself; omnēs nōs amāmus, we all love ourselves.**

d. The forms **nostrū** and **vestrū** are chiefly used in the partitive sense. See 202.

e. The preposition **cum** with the ablative of personal pronouns is appended to them: **mēcum, with me; tēcum, with thee;** etc. So also with relatives and interrogatives: **quibuscum, with whom.**

## POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

**247.** The possessive adjectives are formed from the stems of personal pronouns. They are sometimes used as pronouns.

<b>meus, -a, -um, my, mine</b> (voc. sing. masc., <b>mī</b> ).	<b>suus, -a, -um</b> (reflexive), <b>his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.</b>
<b>tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine; your, yours.</b>	<b>noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours. vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours.</b>

a. When **your, yours** refers to one person, use **tuus**; when to more than one, use **vester**.



## 248.

*Model Sentences.*

1. **Ego** quī haec scribō sum tuus amicus, *I who write this am your friend.*

2. **Tū** quī haec scribis es meus amicus, *you who write this are my friend.*

a. Observe that the relative does not change to conform to the *person* of the antecedent, and that the verb of the relative clause is in the same person as the antecedent.

3. **Hic** est eius liber, *this is his book.*

4. **Librum** suum amicō dat, *he gives his (own) book to a friend.*

b. Notice the difference between *eius*, *his*, and *suum*, *his*, the latter referring back to the subject (reflexive like *sē*). In EXERCISE 129 "his" occurs in 2, 5, 6, and 7. If translated into Latin, in which two would it be expressed by *eius*, and in which by *suis*?

## 249.

*Vocabulary.*

**bene**, adv. *well.*

**cōservō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,

*preserve, save.*

**culpa**, -ae, f. *blame, fault.*

**laus**, laudis, f. *praise, glory.*

**trīstis**, -e, *sad, gloomy.*

**valeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus,<sup>1</sup> *be*

*strong, be in good health.*

**250.** 1. Ego vōs videō, vōs mē-vidētis. 2. Putātisne mē tristem esse?<sup>2</sup> 3. Ego nōn sum trīstis, sed vōs mihi tristissimae esse vidēmini.<sup>3</sup> 4. Ego et tū<sup>4</sup> Cornēliae ōrnāmenta nostra ostendēmus. 5. Illane nōbis

<sup>1</sup> In the principal parts of verbs invariably intransitive, the future active participle is given instead of the perfect passive.

<sup>2</sup> *Me to be sad* = *that I am sad.*

<sup>3</sup> The passive of *videō* often means *seem*.

<sup>4</sup> *Ego et tū* = *you and I.*

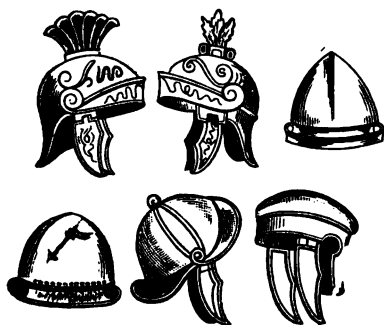
ostendet ōrnāmenta sua? 6. Si tū et frāter tuus valētis, bene est. 7. Estne Mārcus māior nātū frātre suō? 8. Nōs qui tē laudāmus illōs culpāmus. 9. Tibi laus, illis erit culpa. 10. Cōservāte vōs,<sup>1</sup> uxōrēs, liberōs, fortūnāsque vestrās. 11. Caesar omnēs equitēs sēcum habuit. 12. Librī quōs nōs legimus sunt optimī.

**251.** 1. If your father is in good health, it is well. 2. You and I<sup>2</sup> are in good health. 3. I have put my fortunes into your hands. 4. Preserve them diligently for me and my children. 5. You who find fault with us praise them. 6.<sup>3</sup> My life is dear to me, yours to you. 7. While you were laughing, we were mourning. 8. Cornelia saw *her* jewels, but praised her own. 9. What helmets (*galeae*) are handsomer than the Romans'?

<sup>1</sup> See 246, c.

<sup>3</sup> In this order: *to me my*

<sup>2</sup> *You and I* = *we*, hence the *life, to you yours is dear*. Cf. 250, 9.  
250, 4.



GALEAE.

## LESSON XL.

## Subjunctive of Purpose with ut and nē.

**252.** Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive of *sum* (516), and of the active and passive of *amō* (511) and *moneō* (512).

*a.* In the same way inflect the present and imperfect subjunctive of *culpō*, *blame*, *iuvō*, *help*, *moveō*, *move*, *dēleō*, *destroy*, and *iubeō*, *bid*, *order*.

**253.** *Model Sentences.*

1. *Sē armant ut pūgnent, they arm themselves that they may fight, in order that they may fight, in order to fight, to fight, for the purpose of fighting.*

2. *Sē armābant ut pūgnārent, they armed themselves that they might fight, to fight, etc.*

3. *Civēs pūgnant nē oppidum dēleātur, the citizens fight that the town may not be destroyed, lest the town be destroyed.*

4. *Servī labōrābant nē culpārentur, the slaves were toiling, lest they should be blamed, so that they might not be blamed.*

*a.* Observe that the subordinate clauses express the *purpose* or *motive* of the subjects of the principal clauses, *ut* introducing a positive and *nē* a negative purpose.

*b.* Observe that the verbs in the purpose clauses are in the subjunctive, and that the tense depends upon the tense of the principal clause, the present (*pūgnent*, *dēleātur*) following the present (also the future), and the imperfect (*pūgnārent*, *culpārentur*) following a past tense.

*c.* Notice the various ways of translating *ut*.

*d.* Purpose clauses are often called *final clauses*.

**254. Rule.**—*The subjunctive is used with ut and nē to express purpose.*

a. The infinitive is not to be used in Latin, as it is in English, to express purpose, but the Latin purpose clause may often be translated by the English infinitive.

- 255.** 1. Eum misit ut, —  
oppugnāret, dēlēret, occupāret, tenēret, cōservāret.
2. Nōs mittit ut, —  
pugnēmus, dēlēamus, necēmus, terreāmus, culpēmus.
3. Mittuntur ut, —  
oppugnent, dēleant, occupent, teneant, obsidēs sint.
4. Missi sunt nē oppidum, —  
oppugnārētur, dēlērētur, occupārētur, tenērētur.
5. Tē mittam ut, —  
ōrnēs, praebeās, aedificēs, moneās, rideās, laudēs.
6. Vōs moneō ut, —  
amētis, moveātis, laudētis, placeātis, fortēs sītis.
7. Eum monuit nē, —  
ōrnāret, movēret, culpāret, piger esset.
8. Monētur nē, —  
superētur, moveātur, occupētur, teneātur, sit piger.

- 256.** 1. I was sent, —  
to besiege, to destroy, to seize, to hold, to overcome.
2. They will send him, —  
to fight, to destroy, to kill, to frighten, to furnish.
3. You were sent for the purpose of, —  
toiling, pleasing, ploughing, furnishing, filling.
4. They were sent that the city might not be, —  
besieged, destroyed, seized, held, taken by storm.
5. He advises us, —  
to love, to move, to praise, to laugh, to be prudent.
6. We advised him not to be, —  
surpassed, moved, seized, frightened, a soldier.

## LESSON XLI.

## Fifth Declension.

THE STEM ENDS IN ĕ.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

**257. GENDER.** — Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *diēs*, *day*, which is commonly masculine in the singular, and always in the plural.

**258.***Paradigms.*

<i>diēs</i> , <i>day</i> .		<i>rēs</i> , <i>thing</i> .	
STEM, <i>diē-</i>		<i>rē-</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V. <i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
G. <i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>
D. <i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
Ac. <i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
Ab. <i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

a. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have nominative and accusative plural.

**259.***Model Sentences.*

1. *Decem annōs Trōia oppugnābātur*, *Troy was besieged for ten years.*

2. *Arx alta est centum pedēs*, *the citadel is a hundred feet high.*

a. The accusative *annōs* denotes duration or extent of *time*, *pedēs*, extent of *space*. The accusative, then, is used to answer the question *how long?* or *how far?* (in *time* or *space*), and may be called the ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

**260. Rule.** — *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.*

**261.***Vocabulary.*

**aciēs, -ēi, f.** *line of battle.*

**circum, prep. w. acc.,** *around.*

**dē, prep. w. abl.,** *from, about, concerning.*

**diēs, -ēi, m.** *day.*

**instruō, -ere, -strūxi, -strūctus,** *draw up, form, arrange, instruct.*

**tubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus,** *bid, order, command.*

**mille (indecl. in sing.); plu.**

**mīlia, mīlium,** *thousand.*

**mille passuum,** *a thousand (of) paces, mile.*

**nē, conj.** *lest, that not.*

**passus, -ūs, m.** *pace, step.*

**plānitīēs, -ēi, f.** *plain.*

**posterus, -a, -um,** *following, next, coming after.*

**relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictus,** *leave, abandon.*

**rēs, rei, f.** *thing, circumstance, affair.*

**ut, conj.** *that, in order that.*

**262.** 1. Caesar castra in māgnā plānitīē posuit. 2. Haec plānitīēs erat duo<sup>1</sup> milia passuum lāta. 3. Ibi aciem instrūxit. 4. Sex hōrās equitātus peditātusque in aciē mānsērunt. 5. Sed hostēs nocte discesserant. 6. Posterō diē discessit Caesar ex illō locō. 7. Labiēnum cum parvā manū reliquit ut castra servāret. 8. Multōs diēs exercitus sine frūmentō erat. 9. Et rēs erant in angustō.<sup>2</sup> 10. Labiēnus igitur nūntium dē hāc rē ad Caesarem mīsit.

**263.** 1. The enemy's cavalry saw a broad plain near the hill. 2. What did they see in this plain? 3. They saw the line of battle of the Romans. 4. And they were greatly alarmed at this circumstance. 5. But on the next day the plain was abandoned. 6. The Romans had

<sup>1</sup> *Two.*

<sup>2</sup> Adjective used as noun ; *a strait.*

withdrawn from the plain in order to save a town which was near by.<sup>1</sup> 7. Around the town was a wall twenty feet high. 8. For many hours the enemy assaulted this wall.

## 264.

## Colloquium.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

*P.* Omnium dēclinātiōnum quae est difficillima?  
which

*D.* Tertia mihi vidētur difficillima.

*P.* Quārē ita cēnsēs?  
why think

*D.* Varietātis causā terminātiōnum in nōminātivō singulārī. Genus quoque est mihi molestissimum, praesertim nōminum in *is* dēsinentium.  
variety on account gender troublesome especially nouns ending

*P.* Tenēsne memoriā quae nōmina plūrālem genetivum in *ium* habeant?

*D.* Prīmum nōmina in *is* et *is* dēsinentia, sī in genitivō singulārī nōn crēscunt; ut *hostis* et *nūbēs*.  
first increase as

Deinde monosyllaba in *s* vel *x* dēsinentia, sī ante *s* et *x* stat cōnsonāns; ut *urbs* et *arx*.  
then stands consonant

Tum nōmina in *ns* et *rs* dēsinentia; ut *cliēs* et *cohors*.

Dēnique neutra in *e*, *al*, *ar* dēsinentia; ut *mare*, *animal*, *calcar*.  
neuters

<sup>1</sup> See 179.



PILA

## LESSON XLII.

## Third Conjugation. — Verbs in -iō.

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE WHITHER.

**Capiō**, (STEM *cape*), *take*.PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō**, **capere**, **cēpi**, **captus**.

**265.** Verbs in -iō of the third conjugation vary in inflection in certain tenses from the model verb **regō**.

*a.* Learn all the tenses of the indicative, the present imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **capiō** (514).

*b.* Compare the present, imperfect, and future indicative of **capiō** with the same tenses of **regō**, and note the differences.

**266.** 1. **Capit**, **capiēbat**, **capiet**. 2. **Capiunt**, **capiēbant**, **capient**. 3. **Capior**, **capiēbar**, **capiar**. 4. **Capimus**, **capimur**. 5. **Capis**, **caperis**. 6. **Capiēbātis**, **capiēbāmini**. 7. **Cēpi**, **captus sum**. 8. **Cape**, **capere**. 9. **Cēperāmus**, **captae erāmus**. 10. **Caperis**, **cēperis**.

*a.* In like manner practice upon **faciō**, *make*, and **iaciō**, *throw*.

**267.** 1. He was making, he was throwing. 2. It was made, it was thrown. 3. They make, they were making, they will make. 4. I take, I am taken. 5. We took, we were taken. 6. Take (thou), make,<sup>1</sup> throw. 7. They will be taken, they will be thrown. 8. I shall take, I shall be taken. 9. To take, to be taken. 10. He makes, he takes, he throws.

<sup>1</sup> **Fac** for **face**. Cf. p. 86, n. 1.



## 268.

*Model Sentences.*

1. **Caesar ad urbem properāvit**, *Caesar hastened to the city.*
2. **Caesar Rōmam properāvit**, *Caesar hastened to Rome.*
3. **Exercitum in Graeciam misit**, *he sent an army into Greece.*
4. **Exercitum Athēnās misit**, *he sent an army to Athens.*

a. Observe in 1 and 3 that the place whither is expressed by the accusative with a preposition, while in 2 and 4 there is no preposition.

**269. Rule.** — *Names of towns used to express place whither are put in the accusative without a preposition.*

a. The accusatives of *domus*, *home*, and *rūs*, *country*, are used like names of towns.

## 270.

*Vocabulary.*

Hereafter derivations will be indicated in the vocabularies. English derivatives will be indicated in *this type*. See 342.

capīō, -ere, cēpī, captus, <i>take, capture.</i>	lēgātus, -ī, m. <i>ambassador, lieutenant; deputy.</i>
cupīō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus, <i>desire, wish.</i>	nēmō, -īnī (dat.), m. [nē-homō] (no gen. or abl.) <i>no one.</i>
decem (indecl.), <i>ten.</i>	pāx, pācis, f. <i>peace.</i>
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, <i>do, make.</i>	proelium, -ī, n. <i>battle.</i>
fugīō, -ere, fūgī, —, <i>flee, run away.</i>	re-cipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [capīō], <i>take back, receive, recover.</i>
itaque, conj. <i>and so, therefore.</i>	sē (mē, tē, etc.) recipere, <i>withdraw, retreat, betake one's self.</i>
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, <i>throw, hurl.</i>	



## LESSON XLIII.

## 273. Reading Lesson.

## A BATTLE.

Eō diē Caesar ex castris exercitum ēdūxit, et iter ad flūmen fēcit. Quae rēs tamen hostibus nōta est, quōrum peditātus ā nostris<sup>1</sup> in summō<sup>2</sup> colle vidēbātur. Tum Caesar in dextrō et sinistrō cornū equitēs conlocāvit ut peditātum iuvārent, et militum suōrum animōs ad pūgnam ita incitāvit : “ Militēs, omnis rei pūblicae spēs in nostrā virtūte posita est. Audācēs fortūna iuvat ; fortibus erit victōria.” Illi ācritē in nostram aciem impetum fēcērunt, sed neque eōrum pīla neque māgnī clāmōrēs nostrōs<sup>1</sup> terruērunt. Brevi tempore ex<sup>3</sup> omnibus partibus hostis vicērunt, quī trāns flūmen fūgērunt. Dux eōrum captus<sup>4</sup> et Rōmam missus est.

**274.** 1. On the next day bands of horsemen were seen near the hill. 2. Our line of battle was drawn up by Caesar. 3. Meanwhile their<sup>5</sup> leader had aroused their minds so that they might not fear the attack of the Romans. 4. “Soldiers,” said he, “you see those Romans yonder on the plain. 5. They are brave men, but are not we much braver? 6. You will fight for your country, which they are trying to destroy ; for your children, whom they wish to capture. 7. Make your attack upon their left wing ; put that to flight, and victory will be yours.<sup>6</sup> 8. Then depart to your homes,<sup>7</sup> where you shall receive the rewards of victory.”

<sup>1</sup> *Our (men).*<sup>4</sup> *Est* is often omitted with compound tenses.<sup>2</sup> *The top of.*<sup>5</sup> *Eōrum* or *suus* ?<sup>3</sup> *In.*<sup>6</sup> *To you.*<sup>7</sup> See 269, *a.*

## 275

## Vocabulary.

clāmor, -ōris, m. *shout, cry*.  
 con-locō (col-) -āre, -āvī,  
 -ātus, *place, station*.  
 ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,  
*lead out, lead forth*.  
 impetus, -ūs, m. *attack, as-*  
*sault*.  
 incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arouse,*  
*excite, incite*.  
 ita, adv. *so, thus*.

ne-que, conj. *neither*. neque  
 . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*.  
 nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *learn,*  
*find out*. Perf. *know*.  
 praemium, -ī, n. *reward*.  
 pūblicus, -a, -um, *public*.  
 rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, f.  
*republic, commonwealth*.  
 spēs, speī, f. *hope*.  
 tamen, adv. *nevertheless, yet*.

## LESSON XLIV.

## Subjunctive of Result with ut and ut nōn.

276. Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of regō (513) and capiō (514).

## 277.

## Model Sentences.

1. Hostēs ita terrentur ut fugiant, *the enemy are so frightened that they flee*.

2. Hostēs ita terrēbantur ut fugerent, *the enemy were so frightened that they fled*.

3. Is miles tam fortis erat ut ā duce laudārētur, *that soldier was so brave that he was praised by the general*.

4. Is puer tam malus est ut ā magistrō nōn laudētur, *that boy is so bad that he is not praised by the teacher*.

a. Observe that the dependent clauses express a *result*, and that a negative result is introduced by ut nōn. Compare these model sentences with those illustrating *purpose* (253), and observe that a negative purpose is introduced by nē.

b. Result clauses with the perfect subjunctive do not require special illustration.

**278. Rule.** — *The subjunctive is used with ut and ut nōn to express result.*

**279. 1.** Accidit ut, —

ostendam, dūcātur, capiās, capiātur, cupiantur.

2. Accidit ut, —

cupiāmus, capiantur, dūcātis, mittantur, faciam.

3. Accidit (perf.) ut nōn, —

vincerēmus, mitterētis, dēfenderet, pōnerentur.

4. Accidit (perf.) ut nōn, —

facerētis, fugerētis, mitterētur, vincerentur.

**280. 1.** It happens that, —

I take, I lead, he sends, he departs, they display.

2. It happens that, —

we learn, we are led, you are conquered, you throw.

3. It happened that, —

they did not defend, they did not receive, they were not led out.

## 281.

### Vocabulary.

ac-cidō, -ere, -cidī, —, [ad,

cadō], *fall upon; happen.*

aut, conj. *or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.*

cō-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gni-

tus [com, (g)nōscō], *learn, understand. Perf. know.*

cōplae, -ārum (pl. of cōpia, 216), *f. troops, forces.*

diligēns, -entis, *industrious, diligent.*

eō, adv. *thither, to that place.*

fluctus, -ūs, m. *wave.*

paucus, -a, -um (generally plu.), *few, little.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *rule, reign.*

salūs, -ūtis, *f. safety.*

spatium, -ī, n. *space, room.*

tam, adv. *so, so much.*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great, such.*

vix, adv. *with difficulty, hardly.*

In the following sentences both purpose and result clauses are found.

**282.** 1. Is miles tam fidus erat ut Rōmam ā suō duce mitterētur. 2. Eō missus est ut epistulās ad cōsulem portāret. 3. Quis nostrūm est tam sapiēns ut omnia cōgnōscat? 4. Puerī, este tam diligentēs ut plūrima discātis. 5. Recipite vōs<sup>1</sup> ad silvās nē ab hostibus capiāmini. 6. Nōs<sup>1</sup> recēpimus tantā celeritatē<sup>2</sup> ut nēmō caperētur. 7. In silvis tam diū manēbāmus ut hostēs impetum in nōs nōn facerent. 8. Hostēs tam dēfessi erant ut multōs diēs aciem nōn instruerent. 9. Nostri<sup>3</sup> in proximum collem sē recēpērunt nē Galli superiōrem locum occupārent. 10. Ita ācritē pūgnātum est<sup>4</sup> ut pauci aut nostrōrum aut illōrum relinquerentur. 11. Rōmulus ita ā populō amātus est ut multōs annōs rēgnāret.

**283.** 1. The waves were of so great size<sup>5</sup> that in a short time the ships were filled with water. 2. So fierce<sup>6</sup> was the enemies' attack that our men put all hope of safety in flight. 3. The soldiers are neither so terrified as to flee, nor so eager as to make an attack. 4. Labienus, lead out the troops from the camp in order to draw up the line of battle. 5. So great were the forces of the enemy that Labienus departed from that place. 6. We all desire peace in order that we may educate our children. 7. Between the mountain and the river the space is so narrow that the army makes its way with difficulty. 8. That horse is so spirited that he is not easily led.

<sup>1</sup> Accusative.

<sup>2</sup> 93.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. 273, note 1.

<sup>4</sup> *It was fought = they fought, or the battle was fought.*

<sup>5</sup> 140.

<sup>6</sup> *Acet.*

## LESSON XLV.

## Numerals.

284. Learn the cardinals (505) :

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
N.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
G.	ūnūs	ūnūs	ūnūs	trium	trium
D.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
AC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs	tria
AB.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLU.
N.	duo	duae	duo	mille	milia
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	millium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	millibus
AC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mille	milia
AB.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	millibus

a. In what respects does the declension of *ūnus* vary from that of *bonus*? Compare the declension of *hic* and *ille* (100). Observe that *trēs* is declined like the plural of *brevis*, 163.

b. The cardinal numerals from *quattuor* to *centum* inclusive are indeclinable : *quattuor hominēs, four men; quattuor hominum, of four men.*

c. The hundreds, not including *centum*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

d. *Mille* in the singular is an indeclinable adjective ; in the plural it is a neuter noun, and is followed by the partitive genitive : *mille hominēs, a thousand men; tria milia hominum, three thousand men.*

e. In *viginti ūnus, viginti duo, centum ūnus*, and similar cases, the declinable numeral is still inflected, as when standing alone : *centum tria proelia, one hundred and three battles.*

**285.** 1. Ūnus collis, ūnius hōrae, ūni legiōnī. 2. Duo impetūs, cum duābus manibus. 3. Tribus portubus, tria nōmina, ā tribus rūsticīs. 4. Quattuor impetūs, cum quattuor manibus. 5. Decem vulnera, sexāgintā diēs. 6. Vigintī mulierēs, cum ūnā et vigintī mulieribus. 7. Duodētrigintā gradūs, duae et vigintī domūs. 8. Centum annī, ducentae mātērēs.

**286.** 1. In one plain, in two battles. 2. For seven lieutenants, with eighteen legions. 3. Forty-one things, fifty-three birds. 4. Of seventy-five steps, with a hundred and one steps. 5. With a thousand paces, with eight thousand paces.

**287.** 1. Ūna avis vēr (*spring*) nōn facit. 2. Rōmulus, primus Rōmānōrum rēx, trigintā septem annōs rēgnāvit. 3. Flūmen centum pedēs lātum, vigintī duōs pedēs altum fuit. 4. Caesar quinquāgintā sex annōs vixit (*lived*). 5. Trium frātrum Mārcus nātū māximus est. 6. Mōns decem milia pedum altus fuit. 7. Filius meus duōbus annīs est minor nātū quam tua filia. 8. Tū mē misisti ut ēius nōmen cōgnōscerem. 9. Eōrum quinque milia fūgērunt nē caperentur.

**288.** 1. Alexander the Great reigned only<sup>1</sup> thirteen years. 2.<sup>2</sup> Cicero lived to be sixty-three years old. 3. There were ten thousand soldiers<sup>3</sup> in the plain on that day. 4. We had been in the city nine hours. 5. We send him to do your task. 6. Flee, boys, so as not to be taken !

<sup>1</sup> Omit.<sup>2</sup> Express as in 287, 4.<sup>3</sup> See 284, d.



## 289.

## Colloquium.

## FRATER ET SORORCULA.

*F.* Age, sorōrcula mea, si tibi placet, ambulābimus.  
come walk

*S.* Quō est tibi in animō, cāre frāter, ambulāre?  
whither

Nōnne in agrōs?

*F.* Ita est, in agrōs et in umbrā silvārum.  
= yes

*S.* Libenter tēcum ambulō, tamen —  
but

*F.* Quid? cūr tantum dubitās, si, ut dicis, mēcum  
hesitate as you say  
 ambulās libenter?

*S.* Nōli mē ridēre, mī frāter. Metuō anguēs.  
don't laugh at fear snakes

*Frigidus, Ō puerī, fugite hinc, latet anguis in herbā,*  
cold hence lurks snake grass

ut cantat Vergilius.  
sings

*F.* Nōli metuere, mea sorōrcula. Venī; repperi ubi  
 frāga mātūra sint.  
strawberries ripe are come I have found

*S.* O quam suāve! In mē nōn iam est mora.  
how delightful no longer

*F.* Domī manēre est admodum molestum.  
downright stupid

*S.* Ista sunt, neque mihi iam est in animō.  
those things are = yes indeed.

*F.* Ecce, frāga! iam corbulās complēbimus. Nōnne  
lo = here are now baskets  
 est suāvissimum?  
jolly



DENARIUS.

## LESSON XLVI.

## Numerals.—Continued.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

**290.** Learn the first twenty-one ordinals, and read the rest. The ordinals are declined like *bonus*. (500.)

**291.** The following adjectives have the ending *-ius* in the genitive singular of all genders, and *-i* in the dative ; the plural is regular :—

<i>alius, alia, aliud, another.</i>	<i>tōtus, -a, -um, whole, all.</i>
<i>alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two).</i>	<i>ūllus, -a, -um, any.</i>
<i>neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither (of two). [no.</i>	<i>ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone.</i>
<i>nūllus, -a, -um, no one, none,</i>	<i>uter, utra, utrum, which (of two) ?</i>
<i>sōlus, -a, -um, alone, sole.</i>	<i>uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both.</i>

**292.***Paradigm.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>tōtus</i>	<i>tōta</i>	<i>tōtum</i>
G.	<i>alius</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>tōtius</i>	<i>tōtius</i>	<i>tōtius</i>
D.	<i>alii</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>
AC.	<i>alium</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>tōtum</i>	<i>tōtam</i>	<i>tōtum</i>
AB.	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>tōtō</i>	<i>tōtā</i>	<i>tōtō</i>

- a. alius . . . alius, one . . . another.*  
*alii . . . alii, some . . . others.*  
*alius . . . aliud, one one thing, another another.*  
*alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.*

## 293.

## Vocabulary.

ante Christum nātum, <i>before the birth of Christ</i> = B.C.	nōbilis, -e [nōscō], <i>of high birth, noble.</i>
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, <i>say.</i>	orbis, -is, m. (orbī-), <i>circle :</i>
dō, dare, dedī, datus, <i>give.</i>	orbis terrārum, <i>the world.</i>
familia, -ae, f. <i>household.</i>	sempiternus, -a, -um [semper], <i>everlasting.</i>
ingenium, -i, n. <i>genius.</i>	

Vergilius, -i, m. *Vergil.*

voluptās, -ātis, f. [volō], *pleasure.*

294. 1. Rōma duōs hominēs summī ingenī, alterum imperātōrem, alterum poētā, habuit. 2. Alterius familia nōbilis, alterius rūstica<sup>1</sup> fuit. 3. Nullī imperātōrī, nullī poētae, māior laus est data quam illis. 4. Caesar victor fuit tōtius Galliae. 5. Vergilius tōtī orbī terrārum voluptātem dedit. 6. Utrī fuit melior fōrtūna? 7. Nātus est<sup>2</sup> Caesar centēsīmō annō ante Christum nātum. 8. Nātus est Vergilius annō septuāgēsīmō ante Christum nātum. 9. Neutrius fuit vīta longissima, sed utriusque erit laus sempiterna. 10. Dē illis hominibus alius aliud dicet, nōs utrumque laudāmus.

295. 1. On the second day the camp was moved. 2. By the bravery of the tenth legion alone the whole army was saved. 3. We shall remain three days at Rome, the sixth, seventh, and eighth. 4. But on the ninth day we shall hasten without any delay to the mountains. 5. The king had ruled so well that the whole people loved him. 6. Vergil was thirty years younger<sup>3</sup> than Caesar. 7. To neither was granted a very long life. 8. Some will give greater praise to the one, others to the other.

<sup>1</sup> *Of the country.*

<sup>2</sup> *Nātus est = was born.*

<sup>3</sup> *See p. 80, note 1.*

## LESSON XLVII.

## The Infinitive used as in English.

**296.** Learn the indicative, the infinitive, the present and imperfect subjunctive of **possum** (517), and review the infinitives present and perfect of **sum** and the model verbs.

*a.* **Possum** is compounded of **potis**, *able*, and **sum**. To inflect **possum**, prefix the syllable **pot** to the forms of **sum**, changing **t** to **s** before **s**, and dropping the **f** of **fuī**, **fueram**, etc.

**297.***Model Sentences.*

1. **Errāre est humānum**, *to err is human.*
2. **Potui vidēre**, *I could (was able to) see.*
3. **Urbs capta esse dicitur**, *the city is said to have been taken.*
4. **Puella esse bona cupiēbat**, *the girl wished to be good.*
5. **Nōs esse bonōs cupiunt**, *they desire us to be good.*

*a.* Observe that in each sentence the infinitive is used precisely as in English. These uses, as presenting no difficulty of syntax, have been illustrated in exercises of preceding lessons without comment. Cf. I with **212**, 10.

*b.* The infinitive used as in 2 and 4, to complete the meaning of the main verb, is called the *complementary infinitive*.

*c.* Note that the predicate adjective **bona** (also the participle **capta**) agrees with the subject of the main verb.

**298. Rule.**—*A predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.*

*d.* In 5, **nōs** is called the subject of the infinitive **esse**. Note that here the adjective after the infinitive agrees with the subject of the infinitive.

**299. Rule.**— *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

---

**300.** 1. Dux equitatum terrere et fugare potest. 2. Castra moveri et poni potuerunt.<sup>1</sup> 3. Puer discere potuisse dicitur. 4. Discedere, fugere potuimus. 5. Illae matres amari et iuvare debent. 6. Amatae esse dicuntur. 7. Properabo ut te iuvare possim. 8. Ille<sup>2</sup> properavit ut nos iuvare posset. 9. Cum non properavimus ut eos recipere possemus? 10. Te fortem benignumque esse cupiebant. 11. Iter breve fuisse dicitur. 12. Milites vulnerati esse dicuntur.

**301.** 1. You can carry and throw a spear. 2. They can read and write. 3. Who was not able to think and learn? 4. They will be able to take the town. 5. You bid me to be adorned and to delight. 6. They are said to have been terrified and routed. 7. He was said to have been brave and to have conquered. 8. They were thought to have labored and received a reward. 9. The army was thought to be getting defeated.<sup>3</sup> 10. He bade you be diligent.

**302.** 1. Videri<sup>4</sup> est non semper esse. 2. Vergilius et Caesar maximi ingeni<sup>5</sup> fuisse putantur; uter maior fuisse dicitur? 3. Quis nostrum rem publicam conservari non cupit? 4. Is qui rem publicam conservare tentabit et vitam pro ea dabit, laudem recipiet sempiternam. 5. Quis maius virtutis praemium recipere aut cupere

<sup>1</sup> As the subject *castra* is plural, the verb must be plural.

<sup>2</sup> See 245, a.

<sup>3</sup> Present passive infinitive.

<sup>4</sup> See page 96, note 3.

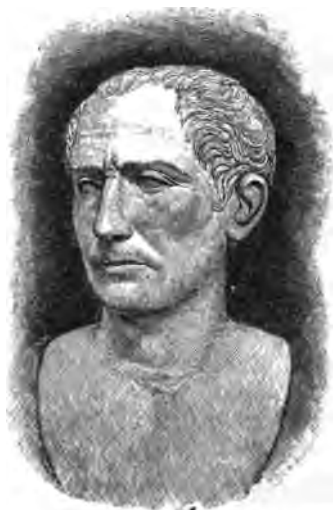
<sup>5</sup> See 140.

potest? 6. Prō patriā, prō salūte pūblicā vitam dare dēbēmus. 7. Nēmō tōtius exercitūs tam fortis fuit ut hostium impetum nōn timēret. 8. Alter hōc pēnsū, alter illud facere poterat; sed neuter utrumque pēnsū<sup>1</sup> facere poterat. 9. Exercitus hostium inopiā<sup>2</sup> aquae magis<sup>3</sup> labōrāvisse nostrō exercitū dicēbātur. 10. Quī parēns liberōs suōs esse bonōs nōn cupit?

<sup>1</sup> Utrumque pēnsū = *both tasks*.

<sup>2</sup> See 132.

<sup>3</sup> *More*.



GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

## LESSON XLVIII.

The Demonstratives *iste, idem, ipse.*

303.

*Paradigms.**iste, that, that of yours.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. <i>iste</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>isti</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>ista</i>	
G. <i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	
D. <i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	
AC. <i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i>	
AB. <i>istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	

*idem, same.*

N. <i>idem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>	<i>idem</i>	{ <i>eīdem</i> <i>iīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>
G. <i>ēius'dem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>eōrun'dem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
D. <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	{ <i>eīs'dem</i> <i>iīs'dem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
AC. <i>eun'dem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōs'dem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>
AB. <i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	{ <i>eīs'dem</i> <i>iīs'dem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>

*ipse, self (himself, etc.).*

N. <i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
G. <i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
D. <i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
AC. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
AB. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

a. *Iste* is declined like *ille* (100).b. *İdem* is declined like *is* (119), with *m* changed to *n* before the suffix *dem*.c. Wherein does the declension of *ipse* vary from that of *bonus*?d. Decline together *istud caput, idem diēs, ipsa rēs*.

## 304.

*Model Sentences.*

1. *Istam epistulam lēgi, I read that letter of yours.*
2. *Eōdem diē ad tē epistulam misi, on the same day I sent a letter to you.*
3. *Imperātor ipse exercitum dūxit, the general himself led the army.*
4. *Ipsē exercitum dūxisti, you led the army yourself.*

*e.* *Iste* and *idem* are used as demonstrative adjectives and demonstrative pronouns. Cf. 101, *a.*

*f.* *Iste* is used of that which has some relation to the person addressed, and hence is called the demonstrative of the second person: *iste equus*, or *iste tuus equus*, *that horse of yours*. Cf. 100, *b* and *c.* *Iste* also sometimes denotes contempt. *Idem* is used just as "same" is in English.

*g.* *Ipsē*, *self*, the emphatic appositive pronoun, is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun (expressed or understood) with which it agrees as an adjective. It must be carefully distinguished from *sē*, *self*, which is reflexive, not emphatic:

*homō sē culpāvit nimium, the man blamed himself too much;*  
*homō frātre, tum sē ipsum culpāvit, the man blamed his*  
*brother, then himself.*

## 305.

*Vocabulary.*

*arcus*, -ūs, *m.* *bow*; p. 73.

*Asia*, -ae, *f.* *Asia*.

*barbarus*, -ī, *m.* *a barbarian*.

*Dārēs*, -ī, *m.* *Darius*.

*dimicō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *con-*  
*tend, fight.*

*divitiae*, -ārum, *f.* (pl.) *riches*.

*heri*, *adv.* *yesterday*.

*imperium*, -ī, *n.* *power, rule;*  
*empire.*

*periculum*, -ī, *n.* *danger, peril*.

*prae-dicō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,  
*proclaim, boast.*

*prō-cēdō*, -ere, -cessī, —, *go*  
*forward, advance, proceed.*

*Sōcratēs*, -is, *m.* *Socrates*.

*vultus*, -ūs, *m.* *countenance*.



**306.** 1. Dē istis rēbus ad tē scribere mox poterō.  
 2. Nēmō qui dē sē ipsō praedicat esse sapiēns dicitur.  
 3. Ipsī<sup>1</sup> vestri amici vōs culpāvērunt. 4. Ista vestra  
 pēnsa mihi sunt grātissima. 5. Uterque vestrūm est  
 idem qui<sup>2</sup> semper fuit. 6. Nōmen ipsius<sup>3</sup> poētae,  
 cūius librōs nunc legimus, est clārissimum. 7. Militēs  
 tōtius exercitūs ab ūnō imperātōre ducti sunt ut hostis  
 vincere posset. 8. Sōcratēs ille<sup>4</sup> et in periculō ipsō  
 et in salūte eundem vultum semper habuisse dicitur.  
 9. Semper erat eōdem vultū. 10. Hodiē eadem facis  
 quae herī.

**307.** ALEXANDER ADDRESSES HIS SOLDIERS.

1. There will soon be a battle. 2. You yourselves  
 have long desired to see this day. 3. Now you will  
 be able to vanquish those<sup>5</sup> barbarians, who fight with  
 bows and arrows. 4. They are the same soldiers whom  
 you have often defeated. 5. They are led by king  
 Darius himself, whose ancestors<sup>6</sup> made war on<sup>7</sup> your  
 country. 6. This day you will fight for<sup>8</sup> the rule of all  
 Asia. 7. Victory will be yours,<sup>9</sup> if you have<sup>10</sup> the same  
 brave spirit, the same daring, that<sup>11</sup> you have always  
 had. 8. The riches of the king himself, that barbarian,  
 and of all his cities will be yours. Forward!

<sup>1</sup> *Eveni.*

<sup>2</sup> *İdem . . . qui, same . . . as.*

<sup>3</sup> *Very.*

<sup>4</sup> *100, d.*

<sup>5</sup> *The iste of contempt.*

<sup>6</sup> *Maiōrēs.*

<sup>7</sup> *In with acc.*

<sup>8</sup> *Use dē.*

<sup>9</sup> *To you.*

<sup>10</sup> *Shall have.*

<sup>11</sup> *Quam.*

## LESSON XLIX.

## The Indefinite Pronouns.

308.

*Paradigms.**aliquis, some, any (person or thing).*

## SINGULAR.

N. <i>aliquis</i>	<i>aliqua</i>	<i>aliquid, aliquod</i>
G. <i>alicu'ius</i>	<i>alicu'ius</i>	<i>alicu'ius</i>
D. <i>alicui</i>	<i>alicui</i>	<i>alicui</i>
AC. <i>aliquem</i>	<i>aliquam</i>	<i>aliquid, aliquod</i>
AB. <i>aliquo</i>	<i>aliqua</i>	<i>aliquo</i>

## PLURAL.

N. <i>aliqui</i>	<i>aliquae</i>	<i>aliqua</i>
G. <i>aliquorum</i>	<i>aliquarum</i>	<i>aliquorum</i>
D. <i>ali'quibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>
AC. <i>aliquos</i>	<i>aliquas</i>	<i>aliqua</i>
AB. <i>ali'quibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>

*a.* How do the feminine nominative singular and the neuter nominative plural of *aliquis* and *quis* differ?

*quidam, a, a certain (person, thing).*

## SINGULAR.

N. <i>quidam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quiddam, quoddam</i>
G. <i>cuius'dam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>
D. <i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>
AC. <i>quendam</i>	<i>quandam</i>	<i>quiddam, quoddam</i>
AB. <i>quodam</i>	<i>quadam</i>	<i>quodam</i>

## PLURAL.

N. <i>quidam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
G. <i>quorum'dam</i>	<i>quarundam</i>	<i>quorundam</i>
D. <i>quibus'dam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>
AC. <i>quosdam</i>	<i>quasdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
AB. <i>quibus'dam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>

b. Other important indefinites declined like *quidam* are the following : —

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>quisquam</i>	—	<i>quidquam</i> (no pl.)	<i>any one (at all).</i>
<i>quilibet</i>	<i>quaelibet</i>	<i>quidlibet, quodlibet</i>	} <i>any one (you please).</i>
<i>quīvis</i>	<i>quaevis</i>	<i>quidvis, quodvis</i>	
<i>quisque</i>	<i>quaeque</i>	<i>quidque, quodque</i>	<i>each, every.</i>

c. In the neuter of the indefinites *quid*-forms are used as nouns, *quod*-forms as adjectives.

## 309.

*Vocabulary.*

<i>Aegyptus</i> , -ī, f. <i>Egypt</i> (13, 2).	<i>isthmus</i> , -ī, m. <i>isthmus</i> .
<i>certus</i> , -a, -um, <i>certain, trustworthy</i> .	<i>Nīlus</i> , -ī, m. <i>the Nile</i> .
<i>figūra</i> , -ae, f. <i>shape, form</i> .	<i>nūper</i> , adv. [ <i>novus</i> ], <i>recently</i> .
<i>fōns</i> , <i>fontis</i> , m. <i>fountain, source</i> .	<i>scriptor</i> , -ōris, m. <i>writer</i> .
<i>in-cōgnitus</i> , -a, -um, <i>unknown</i> .	<i>spectō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>look at</i> .
	<i>tantum</i> , adv. [ <i>tantus</i> ], <i>only</i> .
	<i>vērus</i> , -a, -um, <i>true</i> .

## 310.

## DE AFRICA.

1. *Scriptor quidam vetus scripsit, "Africa insulae est similis."* 2. *Cuīvis, quī Africae figuram spectābit, hōc esse vērum vidēbitur, nam isthmus angustissimus est inter Asiam et Africam.* 3. *Ab aliis scriptōribus veteribus Aegyptus pars Asiae esse habetur.*<sup>1</sup> 4. *Antiquis temporibus m̄xima illius terrae pars incōgnita erat, sed nōn hodiē. "Semper aliquid novi*<sup>2</sup> *ex Africā."* 5. *Tum dē Nili fontibus nēmō quidquam certī cōgnōverat; nunc eidem fontēs cuilibet nōtī sunt; nam ā quibusdam viris audācibus repertī*<sup>3</sup> *sunt.* 6. *Nūper quoddam flūmen*

<sup>1</sup> *Is considered.*<sup>2</sup> *See 203.*<sup>3</sup> *Have been discovered.*

Āfricae m̄ximum cōgnitum<sup>1</sup> est. 7. Quis vestrū nōmen hūius flūminis dare potest? — Quis nōmina virōrum illōrum quī dē eō repperērunt?<sup>2</sup>

**311.** 1. There were two consuls each year in the Roman state. 2. That boy has something in his left hand. 3. I learned something new<sup>3</sup> yesterday. What new thing? 4. Certain soldiers of the five hundred tried to flee, so as not to be taken. 5. We do not fear any one at all of those chiefs. 6. A part of each summer we remain in the country.

---

## LESSON L.

### **312. Reading Lesson.**

[See introductory note to LESSON XXI.]

CICERONIS EPISTULA AD TERENTIAM UXOREM.

ANTE CHRISTUM NATUM XLVI.

<sup>4</sup> Si valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Nōs neque dē Caesaris adventū neque dē epistulis, quās Philotīmus habēre dicitur, quidquam certī<sup>5</sup> habēmus. Si quid<sup>6</sup> erit certī, faciam<sup>7</sup> tē statim certiōrem.<sup>7</sup> Fac<sup>8</sup> ut valētūdinem tuam cūrēs. Valē.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Has become known.*

<sup>2</sup> *Have found out.* <sup>2</sup> See 203.

<sup>4</sup> The Romans often began their letters with the abbreviations of these five words:

S. V. B. E. E. V.

<sup>5</sup> See 203.

<sup>6</sup> Regularly used in the sense of *aliquid* after *si*, *nē*, *nīq̄*, *num*.

<sup>7</sup> *Make more certain* = *inform*.

<sup>8</sup> *Be sure* (p. 103, note 1).

<sup>9</sup> *Good-bye.*

## 313.

## DE VITIIS HOMINUM.

Iuppiter<sup>1</sup> nōbīs duās pērās imposuit : alteram, quae nostris vitiis<sup>2</sup> complēta est, post tergum nōbīs dedit<sup>3</sup>; alteram, in quā aliōrum vitia continentur, ante pectus nostrum suspendit. Quārē nōn vidēmus ea vitia quae ipsi peccāmus. Sed sī alii peccant, statim eōs vituperāmus.

## 314.

## A FATHER TO HIS DAUGHTERS.

If you are in good health, it is well. I am in good health. Neither in your<sup>4</sup> letters, nor in the letters of your mother, has there been anything new at all about the wound which your poor brother is said to have received. If anything new happens,<sup>5</sup> be sure<sup>6</sup> to inform me without any<sup>7</sup> delay. Meanwhile, be sure also to look out for your health. Good-bye.<sup>6</sup>

## 315.

## Vocabulary.

ad-ventus, -ūs, m. [adveniō],  
coming, arrival.

con-tineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus  
[teneō] contain, hold.

cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, care  
for, take care.

im-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -itus  
[in], put or place upon.

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, sin,  
commit (a fault).

pectus, -oris, n. breast.

pēra, -ae, f. bag, wallet.

quārē, conj. wherefore.

statim, adv. immediately.

sus-pendō, -ere, -di, -sus  
[sub], hang up, hang.

tergum, -i, n. back.

valētūdō, -inis [valeō], f.  
state of health, health.

vitium, -i, n. fault, vice.

vituperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,  
blame, censure.

<sup>1</sup> See 499.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative with complēta.

<sup>3</sup> Dedit = imposuit.

<sup>4</sup> 247, a.

<sup>5</sup> Shall have happened.

<sup>6</sup> Not singular.

<sup>7</sup> Ūllus is the adjective for any after a negative, sine, etc.

## LESSON LI.

## Accusative and Infinitive.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**316.** Learn the future infinitives of *sum* and the model verbs.

**317.** *Model Sentences.*

## DIRECT STATEMENT.

## INDIRECT STATEMENT.

1. *Tū scribis, you are writing.*

*Dicimus tē scribere, we say that you are writing.*

2. *Epistula scripta est, a letter has been written.*

*Putāmus epistolam scriptam esse, we think that a letter has been written.*

3. *Tū scribēs, you will write.*

*Cōgnōvimus tē scriptūrum esse, we know you will write.*

*a.* A comparison of each sentence of the first column with the corresponding sentence of the second column will show what is meant by "Direct Statement" and "Indirect Statement."

*b.* Compare now each Latin sentence of the second column with the translation. Observe that after the leading verb in the Latin, the accusative and infinitive are employed, and that the accusative is translated by the nominative, and the infinitive by the indicative. Observe also that there is nothing in the Latin corresponding to *that*, which commonly introduces the Indirect Statement in English.

**318. Rule.**—*Indirect statements follow verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving, and are expressed by the infinitive with subject-accusative.*

## 319.

*Tenses of the Infinitive.*

## PRESENT.

dicat }  
dicet } tē scribere,  
dixit }

{ he says that you are writing.  
{ he will say that you are writing.  
{ he said that you were writing.

dicat }  
dicet } epistulam scribī,  
dixit }

{ he says that the letter is being  
written.  
{ he will say that the letter is  
being written.  
{ he said that the letter was being  
written.

## FUTURE.

dicat }  
dicet } tē scriptūrum esse,  
dixit }

{ he says that you will write.  
{ he will say that you will write.  
{ he said that you would write.

dicat }  
dicet } epistulam scriptum  
dixit } iri,<sup>1</sup>

{ he says that the letter will be  
written.  
{ he will say that the letter will  
be written.  
{ he said that the letter would be  
written.

## PERFECT.

dicat }  
dicet } tē scripisse,  
dixit }

{ he says that you wrote (have  
written).  
{ he will say that you wrote  
(have written).  
{ he said that you wrote (had  
written).

dicat }  
dicet } epistulam scriptam  
dixit } esse,

{ he says that the letter was (has  
been) written.  
{ he will say that the letter was  
(has been) written.  
{ he said that the letter was (had  
been) written.

<sup>1</sup> More commonly fore ut epistula scribātur, etc.

a. The present infinitive represents an action as *going on* at the time denoted by the leading verb. The future infinitive represents an action as *yet to take place* after the time denoted by the leading verb. The perfect infinitive represents an action as *completed* at the time denoted by the leading verb.

**320. Rule.** — *The tenses of the infinitive denote present, future, or past time, relatively to the time of the leading verb.*

**321.***Vocabulary.*

ad-sum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus, <i>be present, be here.</i>	pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, <i>drive away, rout, defeat.</i>
Alexander, -dri, m. <i>Alexander.</i>	sēmentis, -is, f. (sēmenti-), <i>(acc. -im or -em), sowing.</i>
arbor, -oris, f. <i>tree.</i>	solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtus, <i>loose, break.</i>
cantō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>sing.</i>	spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spēs], <i>hope.</i>
frigus, -oris, n. <i>cold.</i>	tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus, <i>cover.</i>
iam, adv. <i>already, now, at last.</i>	vēr, vēris, n. <i>spring.</i>
nōn iam, <i>no longer.</i>	
in-cipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [capio], <i>begin.</i>	

**322.** 1. Vēr adest; vēre<sup>1</sup> hiems pellitur et frigus solvitur. 2. Vidēmus vēr adesse et vēre hiemem pelli et frigus solvi. 3. Terra nōn iam nive tēcta<sup>2</sup> est. 4. Vidēmus terram nōn iam nive tēctam esse. 5. Multae avēs in arboribus cantant et aliae mox cantābunt. 6. Nōvimus multās avēs in arboribus cantāre, aliās mox cantātūrās esse. 7. Agricola arāre et sēmentem facere incēpērunt. 8. Vidēmus agricolās arāre et sēmentem facere incēpisse. 9. Agricola spērat divitiās sibi futūrās esse, et nōs eadem nōbis ipsis spērāmus. 10. Este benigni, omnēs dei, agricolis validis, ut contenti sint.

<sup>1</sup> See 84.<sup>2</sup> The participle as an adjective, hence *is covered*.



**323.** 1. The sources of the Nile were unknown in ancient times. 2. It was thought by a certain ancient writer that the sources of the Nile were unknown. 3. The brave Greeks will defeat the barbarians, the army of Darius himself. 4. Alexander said that the Greeks would defeat Darius himself. 5. We think that to no general has greater praise been given than to Alexander. 6. Was not Alexander born<sup>1</sup> three hundred and fifty-six years before the birth of Christ?

---

## LESSON LII.

### Fourth Conjugation. — Ī-Verbs.

**Audiō** (STEM *audi-*), *hear*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *audiō*, *audīre*, *audīvī*, *audītus*.

**324.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, the present and imperfect subjunctive, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of *audiō* (515).

*a.* Compare the forms of *audiō* with those of *regō* and *capiō*.

**325.** 1. *Audiō*, *audiēbam*, *audiam*. 2. *Audit*, *audiēbat*, *audiet*. 3. *Auditur*, *audiēbātur*, *audiētur*. 4. *Audiar*, *audiāris*. 5. *Audī*, *audīre*. 6. *Audimur*, *audiēbāmur*, *audiēmur*. 7. *Audire*, *audiri*. 8. *Auditis*, *audiēbātis*, *audiētis*. 9. *Audiunt*, *audiuntur*. 10. *Ut audiant*, *ut audirent*. 11. *Nē audiat*, *nē audiret*. 12. *Audīte*, *audimīnī*.

*a.* Like *audiō*, inflect the same tenses of *mūniō*, *fortify*, *pūniō*, *punish*, and *veniō*, *come*.

<sup>1</sup> *Nātus est*.

**326.** 1. He hears, he is heard. 2. He was hearing, he was heard. 3. He will fortify, it will be fortified. 4. They fortify, it is fortified. 5. They were fortifying, they will be fortified. 6. To fortify, to come, to punish. 7. To be fortified, to be punished. 8. Come, fortify, punish. 9. We fortify, we come, we punish. 10. You come, you punish, you are punished. 11. That I may come, that you may fortify, that he may be punished. 12. That he might not be punished, that you might not come.

**327.***Vocabulary.*

*āēr, āeris, m. (acc. āera), air.*

*aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertus, open.*

*cantus, -ūs, m. song, singing.*

*custōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, guard, protect, defend.*

*flōs, flōris, m. flower.*

*grāmen, -inis, n. grass.*

*lēnis, -e, mild, gentle.*

*mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, fortify.*

*porta, -ae, f. gate.*

*pūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, punish.*

*re-periō, -īre, repperī, reper-tus, find, discover.*

*sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, perceive, know (by the senses).*

*veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, come.*

*vestiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, clothe.*

**328.** 1. Sermōnem sapientium audire amāmus. 2. Audimus Hannibalem annō ducentēsīmō secundō ante Christum nātum victum esse. 3. Lēgātus sē montem ūnum tōtum diem tenuisse dixit. 4. Quāque hieme quīdam amicus ad mē venit et duōs aut trēs diēs manet. 5. Vēr terram aperit vestitque grāmine flōribusque. 6. Tum quoque<sup>1</sup> sentimus āera esse lēniōrem. 7. Mox

<sup>1</sup> Observe the difference between *quoque*, *also*, and *quōque*, ablative of *quisque*, *each*.

avēs domōs veterēs reperient, et eārum cantūs in arboribus audientur. 8. Vēre cantum audīmus eārum avium quae hieme audiri nōn possunt. 9. Hieme tantum est frigus ut cibus ab eis nōn reperiri possit. 10. Audimus duās legiōnēs in Galliam missum iri.

**329.** 1. I am saying the very<sup>1</sup> same things that you heard from your friend. 2. Did you not say that you had begun sowing? 3. On account of the cold I could not begin. 4. By night a messenger comes to Caesar. 5. He says that a town friendly<sup>2</sup> to the Romans is guarded by day and night. 6. "The enemy," says he, "strong in number<sup>3</sup> of men, is near at hand. 7. The townsmen are fortifying and guarding the town. 8. If you come,<sup>4</sup> they will open their gates to you. 9. They hope you will come soon with a large force. 10. The danger will be greater if there is any<sup>5</sup> delay."

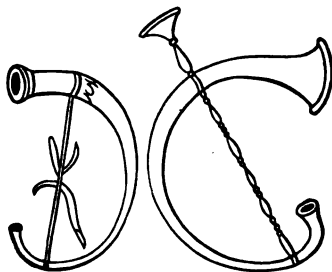
<sup>1</sup> See 306, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> See 168.

<sup>2</sup> *Amicus* as an adjective.

<sup>4</sup> *Shall come.*

<sup>5</sup> *Ullus.*



CORNUA.

## LESSON LIII.

Fourth Conjugation. — *Continued.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER VERBS OF FEARING.

**330.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect and future infinitive, active and passive, of *audiō* (515).

*a.* Observe that the endings *-ī, -istī, -it, etc.*, are the same in all the conjugations.

---

**331.** 1. *Audīvit, audiverat, audiverit.* 2. *Auditus est, auditus erat, auditus erit.* 3. *Audivērunt, audiverant, audiverint.* 4. *Audivistī, audita es.* 5. *Audistis,<sup>1</sup> audita estis.* 6. *Auditum est, auditum erat, auditum erit.* 7. *Audivimus, auditī sumus.* 8. *Audivisse, auditus esse.* 9. *Audī,<sup>2</sup> audieram, audierō.* 10. *Auditus sum, auditus eram, auditus erō.* 11. *Auditūrus esse.*

**332.** 1. He has punished, he has been punished. 2. He had fortified, it had been fortified. 3. You have come, you had come, you will have come. 4. They have fortified, they have punished, they have come. 5. We fortified, we punished, we came. 6. To have fortified, to have punished, to have come. 7. To have been fortified, to have been punished. 8. To be about to open, to be about to find. 9. To be about to be fortified, to be about to be punished.

<sup>1</sup> For *audivistis*. See 337, *b*.

<sup>2</sup> For *audīvi*.

## 333.

## Model Sentences.

1. *Timeō ut veniat,* } *I fear that he is not coming, or*  
 2. *Timeō nē nōn veniat,* } *will not come.*  
 3. *Timeō nē veniat, I fear that he is coming, or will come.*

*a.* Observe that verbs of fearing are followed by *ut* and *nē* with the subjunctive, and that then *ut* and *nē* seem to exchange meanings: *ut* = *that not*; *nē* = *that*.

*b.* Observe that in place of *ut, nē nōn* may be used with the same meaning, as in 2.

*c.* Notice that the present subjunctive may be translated as a future.

## 334.

## Vocabulary.

<i>circum-venīō, -īre, -vēnī,</i>	<i>nihil, indecl., n. nothing.</i>
<i>-ventus, surround.</i>	<i>sciō, scire, scivī, scītus,</i>
<i>folium, -ī, n. leaf.</i>	<i>know, know how.</i>
<i>fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis], en-</i>	<i>sōl, sōlis, m. (no gen. plu.),</i>
<i>durance, fortitude.</i>	<i>sun.</i>
<i>molestus, -a, -um, trouble-</i>	<i>turpis, -e, base, disgraceful.</i>
<i>some, tiresome.</i>	<i>vōx, vōcis, f. voice, word.</i>

**335.** 1. *Timēmus ut bonum cōnsilium capiās.* 2. *Timēmus nē malum cōnsilium capiās.* 3. *Timēbat ut valērem; timēbat nē aeger essem.* 4. *Alius alium in pūgnā iuvābat neque timēbant nē ab hostibus circumvenirentur.* 5. *Lēgātī timuērunt nē frūmentum tōtī exercitui praeberī nōn posset.* 6. *Audivimus castra ab imperātōre mūnita esse.* 7. *Si frigus hiemis solvi incipiet, et si terra sē aperiet,<sup>1</sup> agricolae sēmentem facient.* 8. *Scimus aestātem*

<sup>1</sup> *Sē aperiet* = *opens, i.e. softens.*

arborēs foliis vestitūram (esse).<sup>1</sup> 9. Scimus quoque āera<sup>2</sup> vēre<sup>3</sup> lēniōrem futūrum.<sup>1</sup> 10. Spērāmus avis mox adfutūrās et in arboribus cantātūrās. 11. Timēmus nē noster sermō dē vēre, avibus, grāmine, flōribus sit molestissimus, sed quid aliud facere possumus?

**336.** 1. We know that the Romans were trained in the arts by the Greeks. 2. Flowers are opened by the light of the sun. 3. The lieutenant with a small band guarded the citadel for two days. 4. To know nothing is exceedingly<sup>4</sup> disgraceful. 5. To know many things is very useful. 6. We fear that the camp will not be fortified. 7. Did you not hear the voice of your father? 8. Those words of yours I have heard. 9. The boy feared that his brother would be punished on account of his laziness.

<sup>1</sup> In the compound forms of the infinitive **esse** is often omitted.

<sup>2</sup> See **327**.

<sup>3</sup> See **155**.

<sup>4</sup> See **194, c**.



MILITES ROMANI.

## LESSON LIV.

## Review of the Four Conjugations.

**337.** The conjugations are distinguished by the vowel before the ending *-re* of the present infinitive active. Thus :

I. <i>amāre</i> ,	characteristic vowel	<i>ā</i> .
II. <i>monēre</i> ,	"	" <i>ē</i> .
III. <i>regere</i> ,	"	" <i>e</i> .
IV. <i>audire</i> ,	"	" <i>i</i> .

*a.* Note that verbs in *-iō* of the third conjugation have some forms like the fourth. Which are they?

*b.* In the perfect and cognate tenses, *v* between two vowels is often lost, when contraction may take place : *laudāsse* for *laudāvisse*, *audistis* for *audīvistis*, *audieram* for *audīveram*.

**338.** 1. *Amāmus*, *monēmus*, *regimus*, *audimus*. 2. *Laudant*, *dēlent*, *regunt*, *capiunt*, *veniunt*. 3. *Superābam*, *terrēbam*, *pōnēbam*, *capiēbam*, *audiēbam*. 4. *Portāvisti*, *habuisti*, *posuisti*, *fūgistī*, *mūnistī*. 5. *Parāvērunt*, *tenuērunt*, *dēfendērunt*, *cupiērunt*, *pūniērunt*. 6. *Amābit*, *monēbit*, *mittet*, *iaciet*, *veniet*. 7. *Fugātur*, *terrētur*, *pōnitur*, *capitur*, *vestitur*. 8. *Servāberis*, *tenēberis*, *ducēris*, *iaciēris*, *vestiēris*. 9. *Laudārī*, *praeberī*, *dici*, *iaci*, *vestiri*. 10. *Ēducāta est*, *monita est*, *ēducta est*, *capta est*, *pūnita est*. 11. *Portāverātis*, *riserātis*, *rēxerātis*, *cēperātis*, *audiverātis*. 12. *Amāsse*, *amārit*, *nōsse*, *audisti*.

**339.** 1. Thou lovest, thou advisest, thou rulest, thou takest, thou hearest. 2. I shall praise, I shall remain, I shall defend, I shall take, I shall fortify. 3. Fight,

destroy, defend, throw, guard. 4. To have fought, to have destroyed, to have defended, to have thrown, to have guarded. 5. We are praised, we are moved, we are conquered, we are thrown, we are guarded. 6. It has been carried, he has been frightened, she has been led, it has been thrown, he has been heard. 7. He will be saved, he will be held, he will be sent, he will be captured, he will be clothed.

In the following exercises find sentences illustrating the various uses of the subjunctive and infinitive thus far given :

**340.** 1. *Vēnī ut manērem.* 2. *Tam tristēs sumus ut ridēre nōn possimus.* 3. *Veniēbās nē lugērēmus.* 4. *Dixērunt Mārcum esse sapientem.* 5. *Dux timuit ut militēs venīrent.* 6. *Militēs timent nē hostēs veniant.* 7. *Vōs nōn timētis nē amīcī nōn veniant.* 8. *Venient ut maneant.* 9. *Dīcitur<sup>1</sup> rīsisse.* 10. *Dīcitur<sup>2</sup> eum rīsisse.* 11. *Cornēlia filiōs suōs ēducāvit ut flōrērent.* 12. *Cōnsul Catilinam, patriae hostem, monuit nē in urbe manēret.* 13. *Agricola vēr mox adfutūrum spērat, ut sēmentem faciat.*

**341.** 1. You have come to stay. 2. He says that you will stay. 3. The boy is so lazy that he cannot learn. 4. The master fears that he will not learn. 5. He stays at home that he may not learn. 6. The senate sent a messenger to the army to carry letters to the consul. 7. Cicero said that there was nothing certain about the letters. 8. Why did not Jupiter put the wallet that contains our own faults before our breasts, so that we might see them ?

<sup>1</sup> Here *dīcitur* is personal; *he is said*.

<sup>2</sup> Here *dīcitur* is impersonal; *it is said (that)*.



## LESSON LV.

## Derivation.

**342.** To aid in acquiring a Latin vocabulary, a close observation of related words is very important. Beginning with **270**, the vocabularies have been prepared with a view to help the learner in this direction. The parts of compound words are separated by hyphens (*re-cipiō* [*capiō*]). Related words that have been previously used are put in brackets (*nōbilis* [*nōscō*]). These are not to be considered necessarily as the primitives or originals of the words against which they stand, but as *connected with them in formation from a common root or stem*. English derivatives are indicated by *different type*. In the general vocabulary further attention is given to this subject.

The following groups of words, selected mainly from previous vocabularies, should be carefully studied :

**343.***Models.*

- |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>arma, arms.</i>   | <i>armō, arm.</i>      |
| 2. <i>flōs, flower.</i> | <i>flōreō, bloom.</i>  |
| 3. <i>cūra, care.</i>   | <i>cūrō, care for.</i> |

a. Give the verbs with their meanings that correspond to the following nouns : *dōnum, gift, culpa, blame, bellum, war, fuga, flight, laus, praise.*

b. Give the nouns with their meanings that correspond to the following verbs : *liberō, set free, pugnō, fight, spērō, hope, terreō, frighten, vulnerō, wound.*

**344.***Models.*

- |                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>audāx, bold.</i>        | <i>audācia, boldness.</i>     |
| 2. <i>diligēns, diligent.</i> | <i>diligentia, diligence.</i> |
| 3. <i>amicus, friendly.</i>   | <i>amicitia, friendship.</i>  |

a. Give the abstract nouns with their meanings that correspond to the following : **prūdēns**, *prudent*; **piger**, *lazy*; **sciēns** (P. of **sciō**), *knowing*; **victor**, *victor*.

**345.***Models.*

- |                                    |                                       |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>iuventa</b> , <i>young</i> . | <b>iuventūs</b> , <i>youth</i> .      |
| 2. <b>māgnus</b> , <i>great</i> .  | <b>māgnitūdō</b> , <i>greatness</i> . |
| 3. <b>liber</b> , <i>free</i> .    | <b>libertās</b> , <i>freedom</i> .    |

a. Give the abstract nouns corresponding to **vir**, *man*, **fortis**, *brave*.

b. Form a noun like **māgnitūdō**, meaning *width*, from **lātus**, *wide*; another from **altus**, *high*, and define it.

c. Form a noun like **libertās**, meaning *citizenship*, from **civis**, *citizen*.

**346.***Models.*

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <b>arō</b> , <i>plough</i> , v. | <b>arātrum</b> , <i>plough</i> , n.    |
| 2. <b>ornō</b> , <i>adorn</i> .    | <b>ornāmentum</b> , <i>adornment</i> . |
| 3. <b>rodō</b> , <i>gnaw</i> .     | <b>rostrum</b> , <i>beak</i> .         |

a. What is the force of the endings **-trum** and **-mentum** respectively in the above words? Give the meaning of **monumentum** from **moneō**, *remind*.

**347.***Models.*

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>scribō</b> , <i>write</i> .                 | <b>scriptor</b> , <i>writer</i> .     |
| 2. <b>vincō</b> ( <b>vio-</b> ), <i>conquer</i> . | <b>victor</b> , <i>conqueror</i> .    |
| 3. <b>imperō</b> , <i>command</i> .               | <b>imperātor</b> , <i>commander</i> . |

a. Give the meaning of **ātor** from **dō**, *give*; of **doctor** from **doceō**, *teach*.

**348.***Models.*

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>Āfrica</b> , <i>Africa</i> . | <b>Āfricānus</b> , <i>of Africa, African</i> .            |
| 2. <b>Rōma</b> , <i>Rome</i> .     | <b>Rōmānus</b> , <i>of Rome, Roman</i> .                  |
| 3. <b>aureum</b> , <i>gold</i> .   | <b>aureus</b> , <i>of gold, golden</i> .                  |
| 4. <b>faciō</b> , <i>do</i> .      | <b>facilis</b> ( <i>that may be done</i> ), <i>easy</i> . |

a. Observe that the ending *-ānus* denotes *of* or *belonging to*, *-eus*, *made of*, and that *-ilis* denotes *capability*. Give the meaning of *oppidānus*, adj., from *oppidum*, *town*; of *nōbilis*, from *nōscō*, *know*. Form an adjective meaning *wooden* from *lignum*, *wood*.

## 349.

*Models.*

1. *pedes*, *foot-soldier*.

*peditātus*, *body of foot-soldiers, infantry*.

2. *eques*, *horseman*.

*equitātus*, *body of horsemen, cavalry*.

a. What is the meaning of *comitātus* from *comes*, *comrade*? Compare *senex* with *senātus*, and explain the meaning of the latter.

## 350. Note the force of the prefixes in the following :

*ad-ventus* (*ad-veniō*, *come to*), *approach*.

*ē-dūcō*, *lead out*.

*ad-sum*, *be near*.

*ex-pōnō*, *put or set out, expose*.

*circum-dūcō*, *lead around*.

*circum-veniō*, *come around, surround*.

*im-pōnō* [*in*], *put upon, impose*.

*com-moveō*, *move completely, disturb, alarm*.

*in-struō*, *build in, instruct*.

*com-pleō*, *fill completely, fill up*.

*prō-cēdō*, *go before, go forward, advance, proceed*.

*con-tineō* [*com, teneō*], *hold together, contain*.

*prō-pōnō*, *put before, propose*.

*difficilis* (for *dis-facilis*, *apart from easy*), *difficult*.

*re-clipō*, *take back, receive*.

*dis-cēdō*, *go apart, depart*.

*re-dūcō*, *lead back*.

*re-portō*, *carry back*.

NOTE. — Continue in all succeeding vocabularies the study of derivation in this way.

## LESSON LVI.

## Present and Perfect Participle.

**351.** Learn the present and perfect participles of the model verbs.

*a.* Observe that there is no present passive or perfect active participle.

**352.** Participles are declined like adjectives, and, like them, agree with nouns or pronouns in gender, number, and case. The present participle is declined like *prūdēns* (163) with ablative singular ending in *-e*, unless used adjectively; the perfect participle like *bonus*.

**353.***Model Sentences.*

1. Fortissimē dīmicāns 

{	cadit, he falls	}	} fighting most bravely.
{	cadet, he will fall	}	
{	cecidit, he fell	}	
2. Tē in urbe manentem vidī, I saw you while you were staying (you staying) in the city.
3. Urbs diū oppugnāta nōn capta est, the city, though long besieged (having been besieged), was not taken.
4. Caesar eā rē commōtus in Galliam properāvit, because Caesar was moved (having been moved) by this circumstance, he hastened into Gaul.
5. Dux victus sē recipiet, if the general is defeated (the general defeated), he will retreat.
6. Dōna missa recēpit, he received the gifts which had been sent (the gifts sent).
7. Caesar principem captum Rōmam misit, Caesar took a chieftain and sent him (sent a taken chieftain) to Rome.
8. Gallia est dīvisa, Gaul is divided.

a. Observe that the present participle represents an action as *going on* at the time denoted by the main verb, as in 1 and 2.

b. The perfect participle represents an action as *completed* at the time denoted by the main verb, as in 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7.

c. Observe that what the Latin expresses by a participle is often best expressed in English (1) by a clause beginning with *while, though, because, if*, etc.; (2) by a relative clause; (3) by a verb coördinate with one following.

d. Observe that a perfect participle used with *sum* may lose its idea of time and become virtually an adjective, as in 8.

**354.***Vocabulary.*

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mō-	liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [liber],
tus, <i>move, rouse, disturb.</i>	<i>set free, liberate.</i>
contrā, prep. w. acc., <i>against.</i>	medicus, -ī, m. <i>physician.</i>
Fabricius, -ī, m. <i>Fabricius.</i>	Pyrrhus, -ī, m. <i>Pyrrhus.</i>
graviter [gravis], adv. <i>heavily,</i>	re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, ductus,
<i>severely.</i>	<i>lead back.</i>
historia, -ae, f. <i>history.</i>	venenum, -ī, n. <i>poison.</i>
inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,	vicinus, -a, -um, <i>neighboring.</i>
[faciō], <i>kill.</i>	vinctō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus,
ira, -ae, f. <i>anger.</i>	<i>bind.</i>

**355.** 1. Fabricius cōsul factus contrā Pyrrhum, rēgem quendam, missus est. 2. Accidit ut cōsul ipse et Pyrrhus castrā vicina habērent. 3. Fabricius timēns nē rēx impetum faceret castra mūnivit. 4. Dē<sup>1</sup> nocte medicus Pyrrhī ad Fabricium vēnit. 5. "Ego," inquit, "sī mihi praemium dederis, dominum meum venenō interficiam." 6. "Tū, pessime,"<sup>2</sup> inquit Fabricius, "ad tuum dominum statim vinctus mittēris." 7. Tum medicum

<sup>1</sup> *In.*<sup>2</sup> *Miscreant.* See 207.

vinctum ad Pyrrhum rēgem redūci iussit. 8. Sed Pyrrhus irā commōtus<sup>1</sup> medicum nōn interfēcit. 9. Nōne eum graviter pūnivit? 10. Historia nōn nārrat medicum ā Pyrrhō pūnitum esse.

**356.** 1. The Gauls will attack the Romans while they are fortifying their camp. 2.<sup>2</sup> They led their forces out of the camp and drew them up. 3. In the plain many animals were found which had been killed. 4. Though moved by anger, we shall not fight. 5. Fabricius heard the physician, but ordered him to be bound. 6. If the physician is set free,<sup>3</sup> he will be glad. 7. The physician was very glad, because he was set free.

<sup>1</sup> See 353, 3.

<sup>2</sup> See 353, 7.

<sup>3</sup> See 353, 5.



CICERO.

## LESSON LVII.

## Deponent Verbs.

## THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENTS.

**357.** Review the passive voice of the moods and tenses already studied of the model verbs.

**358.** Deponent verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning. There are deponents of each of the regular conjugations, distinguished, like verbs in the active voice, by the present infinitive. The endings of the infinitive are as follows :

First conjugation . . -āri	Third conjugation . . -i
Second conjugation . -ēri	Fourth conjugation . -iri

*a.* For the method of giving the principal parts of deponent verbs, see the next vocabulary.

**359.** Deponents are conjugated like the passive of other verbs, with two exceptions : (1) they substitute the future infinitive active for the passive, — *mirātūrus esse* in place of *mirātum iri* ; (2) they have the participles of both voices :

<i>mirāns, admiring.</i>	<i>mirātus, having admired.</i>
<i>mirātūrus, about to admire.</i>	<i>mirandus, to be admired.</i>

*a.* It has been said (**351, a**) that there is no perfect active participle in Latin ; but the perfect participle of deponent verbs is usually active in meaning.

## 360.

*Model Sentences.*

1. *Ūtor meā pecūniā, I use my own money.*
2. *Catīlīna nostrā patientiā abūtītur, Catiline abuses our patience.*
3. *Dux profectus cum equitātū urbe potitus est, the commander, having set out with cavalry, got possession of the city.*
4. *Lūce sōlis fruīmur, we enjoy the light of the sun.*

a. A peculiarity of Latin syntax is illustrated in the above sentences. Certain verbs, which, from their meanings we should expect to be transitive, govern the ablative.

**361. Rule.**—*Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds, govern the ablative.*

## 362.

*Vocabulary.*

ab-ūtor, -ūtī, -ūsus sum, <i>abuse.</i>	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow.</i>
fruor, frui, fructus sum, <i>enjoy.</i>	ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, <i>use,</i> <i>employ.</i>
fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, <i>perform.</i>	SEMI-DEPONENTS.
miror, -ārī, -ātus sum, <i>admire,</i> <i>wonder, wonder at.</i>	audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, <i>dare.</i>
potior, -irī, -ītus sum, <i>get</i> <i>possession of, get, gain.</i>	fidō, -ere, fīsus sum [fīdus], <i>trust.</i>
pro-floīscor, -ī, -fectus sum, <i>set out, march, go.</i>	gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, <i>rejoice, be glad.</i>
	soleō, -ēre, solītus sum, <i>be</i> <i>wont, be accustomed.</i>

a. The last four verbs are called *semi-deponents*, because they have only passive forms (with active meanings) in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.



**363.** 1. Abūsus est tuā patientiā. 2. Medicus venēnō nōn ūsus est. 3. Castris hostium potiti sumus. 4. Quis sōle et āere nōn fruitur? 5. Tuam vōcem sequēmur. 6. Profectus est in Itāliam. 7. Ausus est in Itāliam proficisci.

**364.** 1. The children wonder at the flowers. 2. They were wont to perform tasks. 3. We all rejoiced in that victory.<sup>1</sup> 4. Having been set free, he rejoiced. 5. They have dared nothing. 6. The general trusted in the valor of his soldiers.

**365.** 1. Quivis<sup>2</sup> sermōne sapientium fruitur. 2. Frui-mur lūce quae ā Deō nōbis datur. 3. Pueri, bene et fidēliter fūnti estis vestrō pēnsō. 4. Nostri secūti hostis interfēcērunt māgnū numerum. 5. Aliquis ausus est meis libris ūti. 6. Tibi fisus tuum cōnsilium secūtus sum. 7. Imperātor victōriā militum gāvisus est. 8. Militēs itinera tribus diēbus longiōra facere soliti sunt. 9. Timēbam nē puer istis libris nōn cum cūrā ūterētur. 10. Lēniōre āere frui soliti erāmus. 11. Putāvimus hostis nostris castris potitūrōs esse.

**366.** 1. The soldiers dared to follow, trusting in their leader. 2. We see that you have followed bad advice, and that you will be punished.<sup>3</sup> 3. Our men will get possession of the mountain and the plain. 4. In the camp were found three hundred hostages, whom the victors set free. 5. The Romans wondered at the great stature<sup>4</sup> of the Germans. 6. The army set out<sup>5</sup> for<sup>6</sup> the territories of the Belgae, and made a march of ten days.

<sup>1</sup> See 132.

<sup>2</sup> See 308, *b*.

<sup>3</sup> Pūnitum iri.

<sup>4</sup> *Size of body.*

<sup>5</sup> Express by a participle.

<sup>6</sup> Use in.

## 367.

*Colloquium.*

## PATER ET FILIOLUS.

*P.* Ades, mī filiōle, et mihi ostende libellum istum.

little book

*F.* Eccum, cāre pater, sī libellum Latinum vidēre cupis.  
here it is

*P.* Quod pēnsūm tibi hodiē imperāvit praeceptor?

impose

teacher

*F.* Pēnsūm dē verbis dēpōnentibus quae ad coniugātiōnēs omnis pertinent.  
deponent

belong

*P.* Quam ob rem sic appellantur ista verba?

wherefore

so

*F.* Quia fōrmam activam et significātiōnem passivam

form

meaning

plērumque dēposuērunt. Sic nōs praeceptor docuit.

generally

lay aside

has taught

*P.* Quod autem pēnsūm in crāstinum diem imperāvit praeceptor?  
but for to-morrow has imposed

*F.* Ad haec addidit praeceptor alia multa. At tū, mī

has added

but

pater, Latinae linguae iam puer studēbās?

already

*P.* Certē, filiōle, idque vehementer.

right hard

*F.* Num ego, si diligenter studuerō, ēruditus ut tū erō?  
learn learned as

*P.* Vix tam ēruditus. At iam tibi eundum est dormitum.  
now must be going

to bed

## LESSON LVIII.

Irregular Verbs *volō, nōlō, mālō*.

## DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

PRINCIPAL	{	<i>volō, velle, voluī, be willing, wish, will.</i>
		<i>nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [nē, volō], be unwilling, will not.</i>
PARTS:	{	<i>mālō, mälle, mälui [magis, volō], be more willing, prefer, would (should) rather.</i>

**368.** Learn the conjugation of *volō, nōlō, mālō*, omitting the perfect subjunctive (519).

**369.** 1. Vult venire; dicit sē velle venire. 2. Nōlunt sequi; dixerunt sē nōlle sequi. 3. Vis discere; scimus tē velle discere. 4. Voluimus scire. 5. Nōluisti audire. 6. Accidit ut vellet custōdire. 7. Dicitur<sup>1</sup> hōc dōnum māluisse. 8. Putantur voluisse. 9. Volēns aut nōlēns illud pēnsūm faciet. 10. Māvult reduci. 11. Nōn vultis instrui. 12. Nōli<sup>2</sup> terrēri. 13. Nōlite<sup>2</sup> circumveniri.

**370.** 1. Do not (*sing.*) fear. 2. Do not (*pl.*) wonder. 3. Do not punish. 4. You wish to be guarded. 5. You (*sing.*) are unwilling to be guarded. 6. He prefers to be set free. 7. He is unwilling to be bound. 8. It happens that he is unwilling to come. 9. We want to enjoy the light. 10. We prefer to perform the task.

<sup>1</sup> *He is said.*<sup>2</sup> *Do not.*

371.

*Model Sentences.*

1. Iste liber mihi placet m̄ximē, *that book of yours pleases me very much.*

2. Aliquī suis amicis nocent, *some people injure their own friends.*

3. Lēgibus pārere dēbēmus, *we ought to obey the laws.*

4. Frātrī persuādet ut hōc faciat, *he persuades his brother to do this.*

a. Observe that the verbs placeō, noceō, pārēō, and persuādeō are intransitive and govern the dative, while the English equivalents are transitive. The same is true of a number of other Latin verbs.

**372. Rule.** — *Most verbs meaning to favor, please, believe, trust, help, and their opposites, also to persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, and spare, and the like, govern the dative.*

373.

*Vocabulary.*

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus,  
*believe.*

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus,  
*favor.*

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus,  
*do harm to, injure.*

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsua,  
*spare.*

per-suādeō, -ēre, -sī, -suāsus,  
*persuade.*

placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus,  
*be pleasing to, please.*

cor-rigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus  
[com, regō], *correct.*

prō-gredior, -gredi, -gressus  
sum [gradior], *go forward,  
advance, progress.*

prōvincia, -ae, f. *province.*  
quod, conj. *because.*

**374.** 1. Cūr mihi persuādere vultis ut in hortum veniam? 2. Tē in hortum venire volumus ut fontēs

arborēsque videās. 3. Puer ūsus magistri libris nihil discēbat. 4. Sua<sup>1</sup> cuique placent. 5. Isti fābulae crēdere nōn possum. 6. Aliōrum vitia vituperāre mālumus quam nostra corrigere. 7. Militēs urbe potiti neque mulieribus neque liberis pepercērunt. 8. Nōli amicōrum patientiā abūti. 9. Et sibi et rei pūblicae nocēbit, si longius<sup>2</sup> prōgrediētur. 10. Militēs gāvisi sunt quod urbe cum omni praedā potiti erant.

**375.** 1. The whole province favored Pompey alone.<sup>3</sup>  
 2. We cannot follow the enemy without great peril.  
 3. That night was without a moon, so that we could not see.  
 4. Why are you unwilling to perform your tasks?  
 5. Why do you wish to injure me, your best friend?  
 6. The boy, though often warned, was not wont to correct his faults.  
 7. We wish to go forward to the end of the journey.  
 8. Any one you please would rather be loved than feared.

<sup>1</sup> *His own (things).*    <sup>2</sup> See 194, c.    <sup>3</sup> See 291.



TESTUDO.

# LESSON LIX.

## 376. Reading Lesson.

### ARS MEMORIAE.

Themistoclēs fuit vir ingenī māgnī. Ōlim ēruditus homō ad eum vēnit artemque memoriae eum docēre voluit. "Haec,<sup>1</sup> inquit, "ars facere potest ut omnia<sup>2</sup> memoriā<sup>3</sup> teneās." Themistoclēs autem, "Magis," inquit, "mihi tū placēbis, si mē oblivisci multa<sup>2</sup> docueris."

## 377.

### CERVA ET VITIS.

Ōlim cerva, quae celerrimē fugiēbat ut vēnātōrum ē manibus sē ēriperet, sub vitem sē condidit. Intereā vēnātōrēs sequentēs, longius prōgrediuntur. Cerva autem nōn iam timēns vēnātōrēs incipiēbat folia vitis carpere. Folia agitantur, quod vident vēnātōrēs et statim reveniunt. Mox sentiunt ibi bēstiam aliquam sub foliis latēre et sagittis cervam vulnerant. Brevi tempore misēra bēstia vulneribus<sup>4</sup> moritur, sed moriēns dicit, "Iūstās dō poenās, nam huic viti, quae mē tegēbat, nocēre nōn dēbui.<sup>5</sup>

**378.** 1. Once upon a time a deer, fleeing swiftly, escaped from the hunters. 2. Hiding under a vine, she nibbled the leaves. 3. But the hunters, who had gone on too far, soon came back. 4. They saw the leaves shake,<sup>6</sup> and thought something was hiding there. 5. With their arrows they wounded the poor creature. 6. "My punishment is just," says she, while dying, "for by nibbling I hurt the vine which protected<sup>7</sup> me."

<sup>1</sup> With *ars*.

<sup>5</sup> *I ought not to have injured.*

<sup>2</sup> How are *omnia* and *multa* used? <sup>3</sup> See 84. <sup>4</sup> See 132.

<sup>6</sup> Passive infinitive.

<sup>7</sup> Express by participle of *tegō*.

et Ennium domi esse. Paucis post diebus, cum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius et eum quaereret, exclamat Nasica se domi non esse. Tum Ennius, "Quid? ego non cognosco," inquit, "vocem tuam?" Hic Nasica: "Homines impudens. Ego, cum te quaererem, ancillae<sup>1</sup> tuae dicenti te domi non esse credidi; tu mihi ipsi non credis?"

**386.** 1. When Nasica came to Ennius, the latter<sup>2</sup> did not wish to see him. 2. Therefore, Ennius wished the maid to say that he was not at home, when Nasica should ask<sup>3</sup> for him.<sup>4</sup> 3. He did not fear that Nasica would not believe the maid. 4. Did the maid perform her duty in<sup>5</sup> obeying her master? 5. When Nasica had asked for his friend, the poet, he went away.<sup>6</sup> 6. He went away wondering.

<sup>1</sup> Depends on *credidi* (372).  
and has *dicenti* in agreement  
with it.

<sup>3</sup> Plup. subjunctive.

<sup>4</sup> *Se*, not *eum*. <sup>5</sup> Omit.

<sup>6</sup> *abiit*.

<sup>2</sup> See 100, c.



CALCEI.

# LESSON LXI.

## Ablative Absolute.

### 387.

### Model Sentences.

1. **Ventō fa-** { *the wind favoring,*  
**vente, nāvis in por-** { *when the wind favored,* } *the ship came*  
**tum vēnit,** { *with a favoring wind,* } *into port.*

2. **Cōsul, pāce** { *peace having been made,*  
**factā, Rōmam vē-** { *when (or after) peace*  
**nit,** { *had been made,* } *the consul came*  
 { *because peace had been*  
 { *made,* } *to Rome.*  
 { *having made peace,* }

3. **Tē duce hos-** { *you (being) leader,*  
**tis vincēmus,** { *since you are our leader,* } *we shall defeat*  
 { *if you are our leader,* } *the enemy.*  
 { *under your leadership,* }  
 { *with you for a leader,* }

4. **Augustus,** { *Cicero (being) consul,*  
**Cicerōne cōsule,** { *when C. was consul,* } *Augustus was*  
**nātus est,** { *in the consulship of C.,* } *born.*

a. Observe that in 1 and 2 a noun and a participle are put in the ablative to express the time, cause, or some other circumstance of the action of the main verb. In 3 and 4 the participle is wanting, as the verb **sum** has no present participle. In 3 a noun and a pronoun are used; in 4, two nouns. An adjective and a noun may be used in the same way.

b. Observe that the noun or pronoun in the ablative is never the same as the subject or object of the main verb. The words in the ablative are cut off grammatically from the rest of the sentence, hence this ablative is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.



**388. Rule.** — *The ablative absolute is used to express the time, cause, condition, or some other circumstance of the action of the main verb.*

*c.* Observe the various renderings of the ablative absolute. The literal translation is given first in each case, but this ought seldom or never to be done in rendering Latin into English, except to show that the construction is understood.

*d.* In the second sentence notice the difference between the Latin and English idioms. We may say, *the consul, having made peace, came to Rome*; but the Latin has no perfect participle corresponding to *having made*, therefore, the perfect *passive* participle must be used in the ablative with *pāce*. The same idea might be expressed by a clause with *cum*.

*e.* From the nature of deponent verbs (passive form with active meaning), it will be seen that the English perfect active participle (*having made*, etc.) can be directly expressed in Latin, only when there is a deponent verb of the right meaning : *Caesar having set out, Caesar profectus*.

**389.***Vocabulary.*

<i>ā-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus</i>	<i>ex-spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,</i>
<i>[ad], recognize.</i>	<i>await, wait for, expect.</i>
<i>ante, prep. w. acc., before.</i>	<i>Germānus, -ī, m. a German,</i>
<i>Catō, -ōnis, m. Cato.</i>	<i>glōria, -ae, f. glory, fame,</i>
<i>co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum</i>	<i>renown.</i>
<i>[com], exhort, urge, en-</i>	<i>Marius, -ī, m. Marius.</i>
<i>courage.</i>	<i>oc-cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus</i>
<i>cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-</i>	<i>[ob, caedō, cut], slay, kill.</i>
<i>tus [faciō], accomplish,</i>	<i>signum, -ī, n. sign, signal,</i>
<i>finish.</i>	<i>standard.</i>

**390.** 1. Hannibal, montibus superātis,<sup>1</sup> in Italiam vēnit. 2. Hannibal, visō frātris occisī capite, "Āgnōscō,"

<sup>1</sup> *Having passed over.*

inquit, "fortūnam Carthāginis." 3. Equitēs, equis incitātis, impetum fēcērunt. 4. Caesar militēs paucis vōcibus cohortātus, signum proeli dedit. 5. Labiēnus, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat. 6. Labiēnus, cum montem occupāvisset, nostrōs exspectābat. 7. Catōne mortuō, nūlla iam<sup>1</sup> fuit rēs pūblica. 8. Hōc oppidum, paucis dēfendentibus,<sup>2</sup> Caesar expūgnāre nōn potuit. 9. Belgae māgnā in bellō glōriā<sup>3</sup> potiti putābant sē fēliciter dimicātūrōs. 10. Cōnsiliis eōrum cōgnitis Caesar castra mōvit, et māgnō<sup>4</sup> itinere factō eōs fugāvit.

**391.** 1. We shall be victors under the leadership of Caesar. 2. Caesar was wont to encourage his men before a battle in a few words. 3. After hostages had been given, peace was made with the Gauls. 4. Since the war was finished, Caesar returned into Hither Gaul. 5. In the consulship of Marius the Germans were defeated in a great battle. 6. When Marius<sup>5</sup> had been made consul, he defeated the Germans in a great battle. 7. The brave soldier, having performed<sup>6</sup> his duty, did not fear blame.

<sup>1</sup> Nūlla iam = no longer any.

<sup>2</sup> Translate *though*, etc.

<sup>3</sup> See 361.

<sup>4</sup> Forced.

<sup>5</sup> Latin order: *Marius, when he*, etc.

<sup>6</sup> Why not in the ablative?



PHARETRA CUM SAGITTIS.

## LESSON LXII.

## 392. Reading Lesson.

## GALLIA PACATA.

Omni Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius belli fāma ad barbarōs perlāta est ut ab Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrōs pollicēbantur, nam timēbant nē Caesar suam terram vāstāret. Quōs lēgātōs Caesar, quod<sup>1</sup> in Ītaliā prope-rābat, initā proximā aestāte<sup>2</sup> ad sē reverti iussit. Ipse, legiōnibus in hiberna ductis, in Ītaliā profectus est. His rēbus gestis ex litteris<sup>3</sup> Caesaris supplicātiō diēs quīndecim dēcrēta est, quod<sup>4</sup> ante id tempus accidit nūlli.

**393.** 1. So great was Caesar's last victory that after the battle had been fought<sup>5</sup> all the Gauls gave hostages. 2. After Further Gaul was subdued, Caesar set out for Hither Gaul, and the army returned to winter quarters. 3. When summer had begun,<sup>6</sup> the deputies returned to Caesar. 4. "Have you," said he, "done those things which I ordered?" 5. They replied that they had obeyed all his orders. 6. So great was the joy at Rome on account of Caesar's victories that a thanksgiving was decreed.

<sup>1</sup> Not the relative.

<sup>2</sup> *The next summer having begun* = *at the beginning of the next summer*; marks the time of reverti.

<sup>3</sup> *On account of the despatches.*

<sup>4</sup> The relative is neuter, because it refers to a clause.

<sup>5</sup> Use a form of faciō.

<sup>6</sup> Express in two ways.

## 394.

## Vocabulary.

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus,	ob, prep. w. acc., on account of.
decide, determine, decree.	pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pāx],
hiberna, -ōrum, n. (pl.)	make quiet, subdue.
[hiems], winter quarters	per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,
(castra understood).	spread abroad (521).
imperātum, -ī, n. [imperō,	polliceor, -ēri, -itus sum,
command], order, com-	promise.
mand.	re-vertor, -ī, revertī, reversus
in-colō, -ere, -coluī, —	(deponent in pres., impf. and
[incola], dwell; inhabit.	fut.), turn back, return.
in-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go in,	supplicātiō, -ōnis, f. thanks-
begin (520).	giving.

## LESSON LXIII.

## Compounds of Sum.

## DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS. — DATIVE OF SERVICE.

395. Possum has been already treated in LESSON XLVII. The other compounds of sum are inflected like sum, except prōsum. Prōsum is compounded of prōd (old form of prō, for) and sum. The d of prōd is retained before e. See 517, 518

## 396.

## Model Sentences.

1. Ipse dux suis militibus aderat, the general himself helped his soldiers.
2. Quis equitātūī praeftuit? who was in command of the cavalry?
3. Caesar decimae legiōnis peditēs equis imposuit, Caesar mounted the foot-soldiers of the tenth legion on horses.

*a.* Observe in the model sentences illustrations of a common use of the dative. Many verbs compounded with certain prepositions are intransitive in Latin, and govern the dative. The corresponding English verbs are often transitive.

**397. Rule.** — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super, govern the dative.*

*a.* All the compounds of **sum**, except **absūm** and **possum**, govern the dative.

*b.* The dative governed by these verbs does not depend upon the preposition in the compound, but is the indirect object of the compound verb.

### 398.

#### *Model Sentences.*

1. **Mīltēs ibi erant praesidiō**, *the soldiers were there as a defence (for a defence).*

2. **Cuī bonō est?** *whose advantage is it? (to whom is it for an advantage?).*

3. **Hunc librum magister mihi praemiō dedit**, *this book the master gave me as a reward (for a reward).*

*a.* Observe that the datives **praesidiō**, **bonō** (used as a noun), and **praemiō** indicate the *end* or *purpose*, that for which something *serves*. Hence this dative is called the DATIVE OF SERVICE.

**399. Rule.** — *The dative is used with sum and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves.*

*a.* This dative may be accompanied by another dative, as in 2 (**cuī**), and 3 (**mihi**), of the person or thing affected, the ordinary indirect object (28).

## 400.

## Vocabulary.

**Athēniēnsia**, -ia, m. (**Athēniēnsi**-) [**Athēnae**], an Athenian.

**auxilium**, -i, n. [**augeō**], *help, aid*; plu. *auxiliaries*.

**in-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, **inlātus** (ill-), *bring upon, cause*;

**bellum inferre**, *make war upon*, with dat. (521).

**mōs**, -ōris, m. *custom, manner*.

**per**, prep. w. acc., *through*.

**praesidium**, -i, n. *protection, defence*.

**schola**, -ae, f. *school*.

## COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

**ab-sum**, -esse, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, *be away, be absent*, with ā or ab and abl.

**dē-sum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *be from, be wanting, lack, fail*.

**in-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *be in, be among*.

**inter-sum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *be among, be present*.

**ob-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *be against, injure, hinder*.

**prae-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *be before, be at the head of, command*.

**prō-sum**, **prōdesse**, -fui, -futūrus, *be for, be useful to, benefit*.

**super-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *be over, be left over, survive*.

**401.** 1. Pater timet nē quid<sup>1</sup> malī filiō accidat. 2. Barbari populō Rōmānō bellum inferēbant. 3. Nōn scholae<sup>2</sup> sed vitae discimus. 4. Iste liber, quem tū mihi proficiscenti dedisti, per tōtum iter fuit mihi voluptāti. 5. Quis praefuit equitātui quem Aeduī Caesari auxiliō miserant? 6. Labiēnus, hōc locō occupātō, māgnū hostibus terrōrem intulit. 7. Pauci Graecōrum Athēniēnsibus māgnō in periculō vērunt auxiliō.

## 402.

## DE AMICITIA.

In vērā amicitia māgnū inest praesidium. Amicus vērū adest amicō neque deerit in periculō. Amicō prō-

<sup>1</sup> See 312, note 6.

<sup>2</sup> For school.

desse dulce est, amicō deesse turpe. Amīcus fidus nōn aberit ab amicō in malā fōrtūnā. Mōrēs malī amicitiae obsunt. Inter hominēs malōs vēra amicitia nōn interest. Cicerō cōsul, cum rei pūblicae praeesset, amicis multum prōfuit. Multae epistulae Cicerōnis et eius amicōrum supersunt. Prōdeste amicis. Amicis este in periculō praesidiō.

**403.** 1. In Hannibal there was great foresight and bravery. 2. He was long absent from his own country, making war upon the Romans. 3. He commanded armies in Spain and Italy. 4. He was present at many battles, and was a terror<sup>1</sup> to the Romans. 5. He benefited his country in many ways.<sup>2</sup> 6. But his enemies in his own land injured him. 7. Scipio defeated him in battle in Africa. 8. He survived this battle many years. 9.<sup>3</sup> His name will never lack renown.

<sup>1</sup> *For a terror.*

<sup>2</sup> *Things. See 168.*

<sup>3</sup> Turn the sentence round:

*renown will never be wanting.*



**CURRUS.**

## LESSON LXIV.

The Irregular Verb *eō*, *go*.PRINCIPAL PARTS: *eō*, *īre*, *ivī* (ii), *itūrus*.

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE.—ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

**404.** Learn the conjugation of *eō*, except the perfect subjunctive, the gerund, and supine. (520.)

*a.* The root is *i*; observe where it is changed to *e* in the present indicative and subjunctive, and in the present participle.

**405.** The following prepositions, which take the ablative, have been used in preceding exercises :

<i>ā</i> ( <i>ab</i> ), <i>away, from; by.</i>	<i>ē</i> ( <i>ex</i> ), <i>out of, from.</i>
<i>cum</i> , <i>with.</i>	<i>prō</i> , <i>before, for.</i>
<i>dē</i> , <i>from, concerning.</i>	<i>sine</i> , <i>without.</i>

*a.* These are the common prepositions that take the ablative. Most other prepositions take the accusative; but *in* and *sub* are sometimes followed by the ablative, sometimes by the accusative.

*b.* *In* after verbs expressing *motion* has the meanings *into, to, towards, for, against*, and takes the accusative.

*c.* *In* after verbs expressing *rest* has the meanings *in, on, at*, and takes the ablative.

*d.* *Sub*, *under, up to*, after verbs expressing *motion*, takes the accusative; after verbs expressing *rest*, takes the ablative.



## 406.

*Models.*

- |    |   |  |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in oppidō, in the town.} \\ \text{in Itālīā, in Italy.} \end{array} \right.$  | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Athēnis, at or in Athens.} \\ \text{Arpinī, at or in Arpinum.} \\ \text{Carthāginī, at or in Carthage.} \\ \text{Rōmae, at or in Rome.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| 2. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ad flūmen, to the river.} \\ \text{in urbem, into the town.} \\ \text{in Itāliam, to or into} \\ \quad \text{Italy.} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Athēnās, to Athens.} \\ \text{Rōmam, to Rome.} \end{array} \right.$  |
| 3. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ex agrīs, from the fields.} \\ \text{ex Itālīā, from Italy.} \end{array} \right.$   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Athēnis, from Athens.} \\ \text{Rōmā, from Rome.} \end{array} \right.$   |

*a.* All the above ways of expressing place have been illustrated in preceding lessons, and are familiar to the learner, except the last (*Athēnis*, *Rōmā*). Observe that in the first column a preposition is used in every expression of place, while in the second column (names of towns only) no preposition is used.

*b.* Again, observe in the first column how (1) place *where* is expressed, (2) place *whither*, (3) place *whence*, and compare, group by group, with the second column.

## 407. Rule for names of towns:

1. Place *where* is expressed by the locative.
2. Place *whither* is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.
3. Place *whence* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

*a.* *Domus*, *home*, and *rūs*, *the country*, have the construction of names of towns. So also names of small islands.

## 408.

## Paradigm.

domī, at home.

domum, (to) home.

domō, from home.

rūrī, in the country.

rūs, to, into the country.

rūre, from the country.

## 409.

## Vocabulary.

Alpēs, -ium, f. (Alpi-), the

Alps.

arceō, -ēre, -cui, —, keep off.

avārus, -a, -um, greedy, rapacious, avaricious.

careō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, lack, be in want of.

dē-fēnsor, -ōris, m. defender.

ex-eō, -ire, -ii, -itus, go out.

in-eō, -ire, -ii, -itus, go in, enter on.

mēnsis, -ia, m. (mēnsi-),

month.

nāscor, -i, nātus sum, be born.

red-eō, -ire, -ii, -itus [re-], go back, return.

rēgnum, -i, n. kingdom, throne.

spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, deprive, rob, despoil.

trāns-eō, -ire, -ii, -itus, go over, cross.

vacuus, -a, -um, destitute of.

410. 1. Voluērunt ire Corinthum. 2. Nōlunt exire Athēnis. 3. Māvult redire Carthāginem. 4. In urbem ibunt. 5. Eunt Corinthō. 6. It ex urbe. 7. Iērunt domum. 8. Dixērunt sē domum itūrōs. 9. Redeunt rūs. 10. Dicit mē rūs itūrum. 11. Timet ut eant domum.

411. 1. We shall go to Rome. 2. They will return from Gaul. 3. He crossed. 4. He says he crossed. 5. They enter. 6. He entered. 7. We are unwilling to enter. 8. Don't return to the city. 9. Remain at Carthage. 10. You were returning from the country. 11. They fear that he will return to the country.



**412.***Model Sentences.*

1. *Hōc mē liberā periculō, free me from this danger.*
2. *Hic homō cibō caret, this man is in want of food.*
3. *Germani Rōmānōs ā finibus suis arcēbant, the Germans kept the Romans off from their lands.*

a. Observe the use of the ablative to denote that from which there is freedom, removal, or separation, or that which is lacking. The ablative so used answers the question *from what? of what?* and is called the ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. The ablative of place *whence*, with or without a preposition, is an ablative of separation.

**413. Rule.** — *Words signifying privation, removal, or separation are followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition.*

- 414.** 1. *Lēgātī Rōmā missī Carthāginem iērunt.*  
 2. *Hunc ille deus ā suis ārīs arcēbit.* 3. *Cum Miltiadēs insulam quandam nōn posset expūgnāre, rediit Athēnās.* 4. *Alexander, patre mortuō, rēgnum iniit.*  
 5. *Istā cūrā liberātus gaudēbō omnibus cum civibus.*  
 6. *Alpēs ante Hannibalem cum exercitū trānsiit nēmō.*  
 7. *Urbs dēfēnsōribus vacua fuit.* 8. *Avāri militēs ārās spoliāvērunt dōnis.* 9. *Helvētīi ē suis finibus exīre voluērunt.* 10. *Duōbus itineribus domō exīre poterant.*

- 415.** 1. *We removed from the city into the country.*  
 2. *When we had remained two months in the country we returned home.* 3. *The goddess will keep the Romans from her temple.* 4. *My boy, that horse lacks grain and water.* 5. *Cicero was born at Arpinum, in Italy.*

6. From Arpinum he removed to Rome, in which city he was educated. 7. Caesar says that he will go with the tenth legion alone. 8. My friend lacked money.

## 416.

*Colloquium.*

TITYRUS ET MELIBOEUS.

*T.* Aliquis iānuam pulsat. <sup>door</sup> <sup>knock</sup> Ī, puer, aperi iānuam.

[*Meliboeus tristī vultū passibus tardis introit.*]  
<sup>steps</sup> <sup>slow</sup> <sup>enter</sup>

Salvē, amice, diū mē nōn adisti. <sup>how do you do</sup> Cūr iste tuus vultus <sup>have visited</sup> tristis?

*M.* Ēheu! mī Tityre, abeō ē meā patriā.  
<sup>go away</sup>

*T.* Cūr abis? Quō abibis? Nōli relinquere haec arva <sup>fields</sup> dulcia.  
<sup>pleasant.</sup>

*M.* Quid tibi vis? Meōs agrōs militibus impiis dōnāvit <sup>what would you have me do</sup> <sup>wicked</sup> <sup>has given</sup> Octāviānus. Māgna pars gregum interiit. <sup>flocks</sup> <sup>have perished.</sup> Ipse perii. <sup>am undone</sup>

*T.* Minimē, amice; adi ad Octāviānum; ille est benignus, neque vult tē perire. <sup>to be ruined</sup> Tū, agrōs recipiēs.

*M.* Parvae spēs mihi sunt redeundī; <sup>of returning</sup> tamen ibō, ut tū monēs; Octāviānō ad pedēs mē prōiciam. <sup>will throw</sup>

*T.* Et redibis in agrōs tuōs; redibit pāx aurea. Valē, mī Meliboe, es bonō animō. <sup>be of good courage</sup>

*M.* Et tū valē, bone Tityre.

## LESSON LXV.

## Sequence of Tenses. — Indirect Questions.

**417.** Learn the perfect subjunctive of the model and irregular verbs, except *ferō* and *fiō*.

**418.** *Model Sentences.*

1. *Audiō ubi sit — ubi fuerit, I hear where he is — where he has been, or was.*

2. *Audiam ubi sit — ubi fuerit, I shall hear where he is — where he has been, or was.*

3. *Audiverō ubi sit — ubi fuerit, I shall have heard where he is — where he has been, or was.*

4. *Audiēbam ubi esset — ubi fuisset, I was hearing where he was — where he had been.*

5. *Audiui ubi esset — ubi fuisset, I heard where he was — where he had been.*

6. *Audiveram ubi esset — ubi fuisset, I had heard where he was — where he had been.*

a. The tenses of the indicative mood are grouped in two classes. (1) Those of the first group above, the present, future, and future perfect, are called *primary tenses*. (2) Those of the second group, the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect, are called *secondary tenses*. Observe now the tenses of the subjunctive: in the first group the present and perfect; in the second group the imperfect and pluperfect.

**419. Rule.** — *A primary tense in the main clause is followed by the present or perfect subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a secondary tense by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.*

a. The principle of the sequence of tenses has been already partially illustrated in preceding lessons.

# 420. *Model Sentences.*

## DIRECT QUESTIONS.

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>Quis es?</b> <i>who are you?</i>                  | <b>Sciō quis sis,</b> <i>I know who you are.</i>                              |
| 2. <b>Ubi erāmus?</b> <i>where were we?</i>             | <b>Sciēbam ubi essēmus,</b> <i>I knew where we were.</i>                      |
| 3. <b>Cūr profectus est?</b> <i>why did he set out?</i> | <b>Quaesiērunt cūr profectus esset,</b> <i>they asked why he had set out.</i> |
| 4. <b>Quem vidisti?</b> <i>whom have you seen?</i>      | <b>Sciō quem videris,</b> <i>I know whom you have seen.</i>                   |

a. Compare each of the sentences in the left-hand column with the corresponding one on the right. Observe that each dependent clause in the right-hand column begins with an interrogative word, and contains the substance of a question, though not a question in form. Such dependent clauses are called **INDIRECT QUESTIONS**. Observe the mood and how it is translated.

**421. Rule.** — *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

a. The commonest interrogative words introducing indirect questions are **quis**, *who?* **cūr**, *why?* **num**, *whether?* **ubi**, *where?* **quō**, *whither?* **unde**, *whence?* **quot**, *how many?*

b. **Num** in a direct question expects the answer *no*, as **nōnne** expects the answer *yes*. It must commonly be left untranslated: **num manibus ambulās?** *do you walk on your hands?* or, *you don't walk on your hands, do you?* In an indirect question **num** means *whether*, without definite expectation.

## 422. Vocabulary.

<b>cachinnō</b> , -āre, —, —, <i>laugh out loud.</i>	<b>inter-rogō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>ask, inquire, question.</i>
<b>dolor</b> , -ōris, m. <i>pain, grief.</i>	<b>num</b> , adv., <i>whether.</i> 421, b.
<b>inferī</b> , -ōrum, m. (pl. of <b>inferus</b> ), <i>inhabitants of the lower world.</i>	<b>quot</b> , indecl. <i>how many?</i>
	<b>stultus</b> , -a, -um, <i>foolish.</i>
	<b>tot</b> , indecl. <i>so many.</i>
<b>unde</b> , adv. <i>whence, where from.</i>	

**interrogō**, *ask a question, inquire*, and nearly limited to that sense; followed by the accusative of the person.

**quaerō**, *ask a question, ask for; also, seek to gain, seek to know, search into*; followed by the ablative of the person with **ā** (ab), **dē**, **ē** (ex).

423. 1. Unde veniebant tot milites? 2. Amicus ā mē quaesivit unde venirent tot milites. 3. Ille puer parentibus nōn voluptāti,<sup>1</sup> sed semper erit dolōri. 4. Dic mihi num Alexander ā proeliis semper abierit victor. 5. Flūmen ab urbe abest octō milia passuum. 6. Quot civitatēs sunt in armis? 7. Caesar quaesivit quot civitatēs essent in armis. 8. Magister interrogāvit quis esset inferōrum deus. 9. Hic<sup>2</sup> quidam puer stultissimus cachinnābat. 10. Labiēnus milites cohortātus prōgressus est ut vidēret quō in locō barbari flūmen trānsirent. 11. Equitātus Caesari auxiliō missus, bellō cōfectō, domum revertit. 12. Num templa spoliāsse prōfuit principibus avāris qui exercitui praefuerunt?

424. 1. Tell me what you have in your right hand. 2. Nasica asked a man whether he had been accustomed to walk on his hands. 3. Do you know why he thus questioned him? 4. Because his hands were like horn.

<sup>1</sup> See 399.<sup>2</sup> Hercupon.

5. We know why he is laughing aloud, why he has been wanting. 6. Do you not wonder why we have been praised? 7. They wondered whether he had been admonished. 8. Caesar asks the captives how many of the enemy there are.

## LESSON LXVI.

### The Irregular Verbs *ferō* and *fīō*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: { *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry, endure.*  
*fīō, fieri, factus sum, be made, become.*

**425.** Learn the conjugation of *ferō* and *fīō*, omitting the gerund and supine (521, 520).

*a.* Observe in the compounds of *ferō*, as they occur, the change that many prepositions undergo: *ab + ferō* becomes *auferō*; *ex + ferō*, becomes *effērō*, etc.

*b.* *Fīō* is the passive of *faciō*. The *i* is long, except in *fit*, and when followed by *er*.

### 426. Vocabulary.

<i>ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,</i>	<i>cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, conlātūs</i>
<i>lead off, abduct.</i>	<i>(coll-), [com] bring together,</i>
<i>ad-ferō (aff-), -ferre, attulī</i>	<i>collect.</i>
<i>(adt), adlātus (all-), bear</i>	<i>ef-ferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus</i>
<i>to, bring.</i>	<i>[ex], bear out, carry forth.</i>
<i>apud, prep. w. acc., with,</i>	<i>ferōx, -ōcis, fierce, savage.</i>
<i>among.</i>	<i>labor, -ōris, m. labor, toil.</i>
<i>au-ferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablā-</i>	<i>mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, change.</i>
<i>tus [ab(s)], bear off, carry</i>	<i>patienter, adv. patiently.</i>
<i>away.</i>	<i>Plūtō, -ōnis, m. Pluto, god of</i>
<i>cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō], a fall-</i>	<i>the lower world.</i>
<i>ing, chance, misfortune,</i>	<i>Prōserpina, -ae, f. Proserpine.</i>
<i>loss.</i>	<i>daughter of Ceres.</i>



**427.** 1. Fert, ferunt. 2. Fit, fiunt. 3. Ferre, fieri. 4. Auferet, auferētur. 5. Contulerant, conlāti erant. 6. Abstuli, abstulērunt. 7. Fimus, fiet. 8. Tulisse, factus esse. 9. Efferunt, ēlāti sunt. 10. Dicunt sē auxilium adlātūrōs esse. 11. Hae puellae fiunt diligentiōrēs illis pueris. 12. Eīs labor fiet voluptāti.

**428.** 1. They become consuls. 2. They are bearing arms. 3. He will carry away money. 4. He says he has carried away money. 5. We have brought together corn. 6. Bring shields for defense. 7. Take care<sup>1</sup> to become good. 8. He took care to become good.

**429.** 1. Ferte patienter labōrēs. 2. Ferte patienter quae mūtārī nōn possunt. 3. Nōlite cupere id quod fieri nōn potest. 4. Nēmō nāscitur sapiēns, nēmō cāsū fit bonus. 5. Cum imperātor auxilium militibus dēfessīs attulit, omnēs gāvisi sunt. 6. Auxiliō ab imperātore militibus dēfessīs adlātō, omnēs gaudēbant. 7. Frūmentō in ūnum locum conlātō ūsus est Caesar. 8. Apud veterēs Rōmānōs ex agricolis fiēbant cōsulēs. 9. "Benignum rēgem," inquit deus, "nōn tulistis, nunc ferōcem ferte." 10. Interrogāvit quot ex civibus facti essent militēs et num multi proeliō interessent et superessent.

**430.** 1. We shall learn to bear our good fortune well. 2. They bore with patience that which they could not change. 3. The inhabitants carried their all<sup>2</sup> with them out of the town. 4. The soldiers carried away all the booty from the captured town. 5. Who will<sup>3</sup> cross yonder river with me? 6. He asks who will cross yonder

<sup>1</sup> Fac ut. See 312, note 8.

<sup>2</sup> Omnia sua.

<sup>3</sup> Is willing.

river with him? 7. Tell me why Pluto led off Proserpine.  
 8. He led her off that she might become his wife. 9. I  
 know not where<sup>1</sup> so many birds come from.<sup>1</sup> 10. Keep  
 them off from my vines, so that they may not do harm.

## 431.

*Colloquium.*

SOCRATES ET RHADAMANTHUS.

*R.* Tū, nisi fallor, es Sōcratēs, ille Athēniēnsis.  
unless I am mistaken

*S.* Rēctē dicis. Ego sum Sōcratēs, filius, ut ferunt,  
as say  
 Sōphroniscī.

*R.* Cūr dicis *ut ferunt*? Nōnne rē vērā es filius illius?  
in truth

*S.* Ipse quidem nesciō, Ō Rhadamanthe, cūius sim  
indeed not know am  
 filius.

*R.* Num mē lūdis, Sōcratēs? Cavētō. Nōnne tē  
mock beware  
 sapientem dixit ōrāculum?  
oracle

*S.* Ita est; sed quā rē nōn intellegō, nisi quia mē ipse  
yes understand  
 inscium perspicīō.  
ignorant see plainly

*R.* Quō modo aetātem dēgisti?  
how pass

*S.* Māgnā ex parte loquēbar māximēque dē virtūte  
for the most part I used to talk especially  
 quaerēbam.  
inquired.

*R.* Mihi dē virtūte explicātō, Sōcratēs; per breve  
 tempus tibi aurēs praebebō.

*S.* Ēheu! Rhadamanthe, istius rei sum inscius, nam  
alas  
 mihi explicāre poterat nēmō.  
was able no one

<sup>1</sup> *Where . . . from = unde.*

R. Minimē sapiēns, Sōcratēs, tū mihi vidēris. At  
 quid hōc locō tibi est in animō facere? seem but

S. Ante omnia, si vidēbitur, cum Homērō velim et  
seem good I should like  
 Ulixe et aliis clārissimis Graeciae principibus loquī.  
to talk.

R. Apage igitur ad istās mānēs.  
be off then shades

## LESSON LXVII.

### The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses.

#### CUM CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE.

#### 432. *Model Sentences.*

1. Galli lēgātōs misērunt quī pācem peterent, *the Gauls sent deputies to sue for (who should sue for) peace.*

2. Quis est tam ineptus quī hōc crēdat? *who is so silly as to believe (who believes) this?* •

3. Nihil est quod tē dēlectāre possit, *there is nothing that can delight you.*

4. Ō quanta vis vērītātis, quae sē dētendat! *O how great the power of truth since it (which) defends itself!*

a. Observe in 1 and 2 that the relative clause has precisely the same meaning as if *ut* were used in place of *quī*. In 1 the clause is one of *purpose*, in 2, of *result*.

b. Observe in 3 that the relative clause *characterizes* the antecedent. In such cases the antecedent is usually *indefinite* or *general*.

c. Observe in 4 that the relative clause denotes *cause* or *reason*, *quae* being equivalent to *cum ea*.

**433. Rule.** — *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses of purpose, result, characteristic, and cause.*

**434.** *Model Sentences.*

1. Cum amici adsint, gaudēmus, *since our friends are here, we rejoice.*

2. Cum fortiter pūgnarent, tamen nōn vicērunt, *though they fought bravely, still they did not conquer.*

a. Notice these two uses of cum. In 1 it denotes *cause* or *reason* (*as, since*), in 2, *concession* (*though, although*).

**435. Rule.** — *The subjunctive is used with cum causal or concessive.*

**436.** *Vocabulary.*

ac-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad, causa], *blame, accuse.*

ad-eō, adv. *to that degree, so.*

arduus, -a, -um, *steep; difficult, arduous.*

cōn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, gain, reach.*

cum, conj. *when, while; as, since; though, although.*

currus, -ūs, m. *chariot, wagon.*

ex-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [causa], *excuse.*

gustō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *taste.*

vehō, -ere, vexit, vectus, *carry, draw. Pass. ride.*

i-gnōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in, not (g)nō(scō)], *know not, be ignorant.*

mors, mortis, f. (morti-) [morior], *death.*

per-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *allow, permit.*

petō, -ere, -īvi (-iī), -ītus, *seek, ask, sue for.*

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [causa], *decline, refuse.*

sus-tineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentus [sub, teneō], *hold up, sustain, withstand.*

- 437.** 1. Mārcus erat prūdēns, quī vinum nōn gustāret.  
2. Cum ignōrem quis sit ille homō, eī nōn permittam ut

mēcum in eōdem currū vehātur. 3. Magister puerum graviter accūsāvit quī pēnsō nōn fungerētur. 4. Quae cum ita sint,<sup>1</sup> supplicātiō dēcernētur. 5. Neque repertus est quisquam eōrum quī<sup>2</sup> mori prō principe recūsāret. 6. Nōn is<sup>3</sup> sum quī<sup>2</sup> mortis periculō terrear. 7. Caesar, aciē instrūctā, equitātum misit quī hostium impetum sustinēret. 8. Nihil est nōbīs adeō arduum quod nōn virtūte cōsequi possimus. 9. Cum ea ita sint, tamen<sup>4</sup> vōbiscum pācem faciam. 10. Lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis<sup>5</sup> cōsiliō<sup>6</sup> excūsārent. 11. Ennius erat impudēns quī sē nōn esse domī diceret.

Several of the following sentences may be translated in two ways.

**438.** 1. No one is so wise that he knows all things. 2. Who can be found who does not enjoy the light of the sun? 3. Since I cannot persuade you<sup>7</sup> to go,<sup>8</sup> I will go myself. 4. The soldier was vehemently accused because he would not fight. 5. A thanksgiving was decreed for Caesar because he had waged war successfully in Gaul. 6. Although this is so, still we do not fear that you will taste the wine. 7. You are not the person<sup>9</sup> to abuse the patience of your friends. 8. There were some<sup>10</sup> who thought that Caesar was in Italy.

<sup>1</sup> *Quae cum ita sint, since this (these things) is so.*

<sup>2</sup> The antecedent implies some word like *such, such as to.*

<sup>3</sup> *The person.*

<sup>4</sup> **Tamen** indicates the meaning of *cum*.

<sup>5</sup> *On a former occasion.*

<sup>6</sup> *Conduct.*

<sup>7</sup> See **372**.

<sup>8</sup> **Ut** with subjunctive.

<sup>9</sup> Cf. **437**, 6.

<sup>10</sup> Omit.

## LESSON LXVIII.

## The Subjunctive in Wishes and Appeals.

**439.** Learn the future imperative of the model and irregular verbs.

**440.** *Model Sentences.*

## WISHES.

1. (Utinam) pater mox adait,	{ may father be here (come) soon! I hope father may be here (come) soon! oh, that father may be here (come) soon!
2. Utinam pater nunc adesset,	{ would that father were here now! I wish father were here now! oh, that father were here now!
3. Utinam pater heri adfuisset,	{ would that father had been here yesterday! I wish father had been here yesterday! oh, that father had been here yesterday!

**441. Rule.** — *Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive with or without utinam, oh that!*

*a.* Utinam is often omitted with the present, rarely with other tenses. The negative in wishes is *nō*, not *nōn*.

*b.* Observe the tenses in the model sentences. In which one does the tense indicate that the wish may be realized?

**442. Rule.** — 1. *Wishes referring to the future, immediate or more remote, are expressed by the present subjunctive.*

2. *Wishes referring to the present are expressed by the imperfect subjunctive.*

3. *Wishes referring to the past are expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive.*

c. The subjunctive in wishes is called the OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE, from *optō*, *wish*.

**443.** In appeals and commands both imperative and subjunctive forms are used, as illustrated in the following paradigm :

**444.**

## APPEALS AND COMMANDS.

*Paradigm.*

POSITIVE.	NEGATIVE.
<i>moneam</i> , <i>let me advise.</i>	<i>nē moneam</i> , <i>let me not advise.</i>
<i>monē</i> , <i>moneās</i> , } <i>advise.</i>	<i>nōlī monēre</i> , <i>nē monueris</i> , } <i>do not advise.</i>
<i>moneat</i> , <i>monuerit</i> , } <i>let him advise, or</i> <i>he shall advise.</i>	<i>nē moneat</i> , <i>nē monuerit</i> , } <i>let him not, or</i> <i>he shall not,</i> <i>advise.</i>
<i>moneāmus</i> , <i>let us advise.</i>	<i>nē moneāmus</i> , { <i>let us not ad-</i> <i>vise.</i>
<i>monēte</i> , <i>advise.</i>	<i>nōlīte monēre</i> , <i>do not advise.</i>
<i>moneant</i> , <i>monuerint</i> , { <i>let them advise,</i> <i>or they shall</i> <i>advise.</i>	<i>nē moneant</i> , <i>nē monuerint</i> , { <i>let them not,</i> <i>or they shall</i> <i>not, advise.</i>

a. In the subjunctive of appeals and commands two points should be noticed : (1) the negative is *nē*, as in wishes ;

(2) the perfect subjunctive does not differ in meaning from the present.

b. The common form of negative appeal or command in the second person is *nōlī* (*nōlīte*) with the infinitive.

445.

*Vocabulary.*

<i>ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, walk,</i>	<i>prae-clārus, -a, -um, very</i>
<i>take a walk.</i>	<i>splendid, glorious.</i>
<i>beātus, -a, -um, happy.</i>	<i>sic, adv. so, thus.</i>
<i>colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, care</i>	<i>stō, stāre, steti, status, stand.</i>
<i>for, till, cultivate; honor.</i>	<i>sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go under,</i>
<i>in-columis, -e, unharmed,</i>	<i>go up to.</i>
<i>safe.</i>	<i>tangō, -ere, tetigi, tāctus,</i>
<i>numquam, adv. never.</i>	<i>touch.</i>
<i>per-fruor, -ī, -fructus sum,</i>	<i>testūdō, -inis, f. covering to</i>
<i>enjoy fully, enjoy.</i>	<i>protect besiegers, testudo.</i>
<i>tranquillus, -a, -um, quiet, peaceful, tranquil.</i>	

446. 1. Valeant, valeant civēs mei; sint incolumēs, sint beāti! 2. Stet haec urbs praeclāra, mihique patria cārissima! 3. Tranquillā rē publicā mei civēs perfruantur! 4. Utinam Rōmānī virōrum fortium cōpiam habērent! 5. Repertī sunt duo equitēs Rōmānī quī tē, Catilina, istā cūrā liberārent. 6. Utinam Catilina omnīs sēcum suōs ex urbe ēdūxisset! 7. Militēs, testūdine factā, urbis mūrū subierunt. 8. Colitōte parentēs, lēgibus pārētōte, amātōte amicōs. 9. Nē miles mortis periculum timeat. 10. Cāsus tristis Prōserpinae erat māgnō dolōrī mātři, quae hōc dixit: “Eheu, miserrima Prōserpina, utinam numquam ē domō exiissēs! Iam per sex mēnsis cūiusque annī nōn eris apud mē. Sic Iuppiter dēcrēvit. Tum redeās ē regnō tristi quō tē Plūtō ferōx rēx ille abstulit.”



**447.** 1. Let us send a messenger to Caesar to warn him not to set out. 2. Touch not wine ; let us not touch wine ; they shall not touch wine. 3. Let us go forth out of the city and carry our all<sup>1</sup> with us. 4. The boy wrote often to his father what he had done. 5. Would that my brother were living, and that he were at the head of the army ! 6. Oh, take a walk with me in the fields to-day ! 7. Would that I had taken a walk with you in the fields yesterday !



## LESSON LXIX.

### Conditional Sentences.

**448.** Sentences consisting of two clauses—a condition introduced by *sī*, *if*, or *nisi*, *if not*, *unless*, and a conclusion—are called *Conditional Sentences*.

### **449.** *Model Sentences.*

#### I. PRESENT AND PAST TIME.

##### A. NOTHING IMPLIED.

1. *Sī hōc facit, bene est, if he is doing this, it is well.*
2. *Sī hōc faciēbat, bene erat, if he was doing this, it was well.*
3. *Sī hōc fēcit, bene fuit, if he did this, it was well.*

a. By “nothing implied” is meant that there is nothing in the form of the condition to indicate whether what is supposed is true or not.

<sup>1</sup> See 430, note 2.

**450. Rule.** — *Conditional sentences referring to present or past time and implying nothing as to fact have the indicative in both clauses.*

B. CONTRARY IMPLIED.

4. *Sī hōc faceret, bene esset, if he were doing this, it would be well.*

5. *Sī hōc fēcisset, bene fuisset, if he had done this, it would have been well.*

b. In the first sentence the time denoted is the present. Evidently the time would be the same, if *nunc, now*, were inserted.

c. By "contrary implied" is meant that the form of the condition indicates that what is supposed is not true.

**451. Rule.** — *Conditional sentences referring to present or past time and contrary to fact have the subjunctive in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time.*

II. FUTURE TIME.

C. MORE VIVID (PROBABLE).

1. *Sī hōc faciet, bene erit, if he does (= shall do) this, it will be well.*

2. *Sī hōc fēcerit, bene erit, if he does (= shall have done) this, it will be well.*

D. LESS VIVID (POSSIBLE).

3. *Sī hōc faciat, bene sit, if he should do this, it would be well.*

a. Observe that in 1 and 2 the future and the future perfect are translated by the present. The form of 2, that is, the

future perfect, may be used when the supposed future act must be finished before the conclusion can follow: *sī vicerit, victoriæ corōnam recipiet*, *if he conquers (shall have conquered), he will receive the crown of victory.* Note the form of translation of the less vivid condition.

**452. Rule.** — *Conditional sentences referring to future time, if more vivid, take the future or future perfect indicative; if less vivid, take the present subjunctive in both clauses.*

## 453.

## Vocabulary.

ac-cip̄iō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [ad, capiō], receive, accept.	mirābilla, -e [miror], wonder- ful, strange.
calceus, -i, m. shoe (p. 152).	ni-si, conj. if not, unless.
Cincinnātus, -i, m. Cincinnatus.	prō-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, put forward, propose,
classis, -is, f. (classi-), fleet.	offer, proclaim.
creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūs, choose, appoint, create.	prōpositum, -i, n. [prōpōnō], proposal, offer.
dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dicō], dictator.	talentum, -i, n. talent, a sum of money (§1132).
dis-pertīō, -īre, -īvi (-iī), -ītus [partiō, divide], divide, share. [again.	tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, bear, endure, tolerate.
iterum, adv. a second time,	vestimentum, -i, n. [vestiō], clothing; vesture.
Milō, -ōnis, m. Milo.	

**454.** 1. Dux iubet, miles paret; si nōn paret, poenam dat. 2. Si salūti patriæ prōfueris, tibi ipsi prōderis. 3. Utinam frāter meus viveret et classi iterum praesesset! 4. Cum eō diē Milō in senātū fuisset, domum vēnit, vestimenta et calceōs mūtāvit. 5. Nōn profectus essem, nisi Caesar iussisset. 6. Ā Rōmānis, si urbs māgnō in peri-

culō erat, dictātōrēs creābantur. 7. Cincinnātus ab arātrō vocātus est quī esset dictātor. 8. Cum hostis fugāvisset Rōmamque periculō liberāset,<sup>1</sup> domum revertit.

455.

ALEXANDER ET PARMENIO.

Dārēus, Persārum rēx, decem milia talentōrum Alexandrō dare voluit, sī Asiam sēcum dispertire volēbat. Alexander autem ei respondit, "Nisi orbis terrārum duōs solēs tolerāre potest, duōs rēgēs Asia nōn tolerābit." Parmeniō, quī ūnus ex amicis Alexandrī erat, Dārēi prōpositō auditō, "Ego," inquit, "sī Alexander essem, hōc prōpositum acciperem." Cui Alexander: "Et ego, sī Parmeniō essem, acciperem."

456. 1. If Alexander should conquer Asia, would it endure two kings? 2. If he conquers Asia, will it endure two kings? 3. If the world does not endure<sup>2</sup> two suns, neither doth Asia endure two kings. 4. It is said that Darius wanted to share Asia with Alexander. 5. "If," said the former<sup>3</sup> to the latter, "you are willing to share Asia with me, I will give you ten thousand talents." 6. "By no means,"<sup>4</sup> replied Alexander; "if you had offered me<sup>5</sup> twenty thousand talents, I would not have accepted." 7. If the story is true, is it not passing strange<sup>6</sup>? 8. Would Asia have long endured two masters, if the offer of Darius had been accepted?

<sup>1</sup> See 337, *b*.

<sup>2</sup> See 100, *c*.

<sup>3</sup> Not accusative.

<sup>2</sup> See 449.

<sup>4</sup> *Minimē*.

<sup>6</sup> *Māximē mirābilis*.



## LESSON LXX.

## Reading Lesson.

## PROSERPINA.

*"Proserpin gathering flowers,  
Herself a fairer flower, by gloomy Dis  
Was gather'd, which cost Ceres all that pain  
To seek her through the world."*

**457.** Prōserpina, Cereris filia, aliquandō in Siciliā ad urbem Hennam in agris flōrēs carpēbat, sorta nectēbat lūdēbatque cum comitibus. Subitō terrā concussā Plūtō, inferōrum deus, cūius currum equi ātrī vehēbant ē terrā ēmersit. Deus Prōserpinam abdūxit, ut uxor sua et inferōrum rēgina esset; clāmōrem puellae compressit. Māter cum ignōrāret, ubi filia esset, tōtum orbem terrārum frūstrā peragrāvit.

**458.** Tandem Cerēs ā Sōle, qui omnia cōspicit, audiuit quis filiam abdūxisset. Itaque statim iter ad Iovem flexit et precibus animō ēius persuāsit, ut filia ā Plūtōne remitterētur. Prōserpinae permissum est, ut per partem anni apud mātrem, per partem alteram apud inferōs esset.

**459.** 1. Who of you can tell by whom Proserpine was carried off? 2. She was carried away by Pluto, god of the Infernals. 3. The god bore her off, as she was plucking flowers in the plain of Henna. 4. Her mother did not know whither her daughter had gone. 5. So she wandered through the whole world to find her. 6. When she had heard that her daughter was queen of the Infernals, she turned her course at once to Jupiter.

7. He would have permitted her to return, if she had not tasted food. 8. Poor Proserpine, remain forever among the Infernals !

460.

Vocabulary.

āter, -tra, -trum, <i>black.</i>	licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum
atque [ad, in addition], and	est, impers., <i>it is permitted,</i>
also, and.	(one) may.
com-primō, -ere, -pressi, -pressus [premō], <i>press together ; check, suppress.</i>	ludō, -ere, lūsi, lūsus, <i>play.</i>
con-cutiō, -ere, -cussi, -cussus [com, quatiō], <i>shake violently.</i>	nectō, -ere, nexui and nexi, <i>nexus, bind, weave.</i>
con-spiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectus [com, speciō, look], <i>look at attentively ; observe, see, behold.</i>	per-agrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ager], <i>wander through, pass over.</i>
ē-mergō, -ere, -si, -sus, <i>arise, come forth ; emerge.</i>	[prex], <i>precis, f. (used mostly in plu.), prayer, entreaty.</i>
flectō, -ere, flexi, flexus, <i>bend, turn.</i>	re-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, <i>send back.</i>
	serta, -ōrum, n. [sero, plait], <i>garlands, wreaths of flowers.</i>
	tandem, adv. [tam], <i>(just so far), at length, finally.</i>



VEXILLUM.

## LESSON LXXI.

## Periphrastic Conjugations.

## DATIVE OF AGENT.

**461.** Learn the future active participle and the gerundive of the model and irregular verbs.

**462.** The First or Active Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb **sum** :

IND. PRES. **Amātūrus sum**, *I am about to (going to, intending to) love.*

IND. IMP. **Amātūrus eram**, *I was about to (going to, intending to), love.*

**463.** *Model Sentences.*

1. **Quisquam dubitat quid virtūte perfectūrus sit**, *does any one doubt what he will accomplish by his valor?*

2. **Sciēbam quid factūrus essēs**, *I knew what you were going to do.*

a. From the above sentences it appears that the first periphrastic conjugation supplies a future for the subjunctive.

**464.** The Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by combining the gerundive (future passive participle) with the verb **sum** :

IND. PRES. **Amandus sum**, *I am to be (ought to be, deserve to be, must be) loved.*

IND. IMP. **Amandus eram**, *I was to be (deserved to be, ought to have been) loved.*

## 465.

*Model Sentences.*

1. *Dēlanda est Carthāgō, Carthage must be destroyed.*
2. *Caesari omnia erant agenda, everything had to be done by Caesar.*
3. *Mihi scribendum est, I must write (the duty of writing is to me).*
4. *Omnibus moriendum est, all must die (the necessity of dying is to all).*

a. Observe that in the second periphrastic conjugation *necessity, duty, or obligation* is implied in the gerundive.

b. Notice the impersonal use of the verbs in 3 and 4. By *impersonal* is meant *having no personal subject*.

c. Observe in 2, 3, and 4 that the *person* (Caesari, mihi, omnibus) is expressed by the dative. This dative is called the DATIVE OF AGENT.

**466. Rule.** — *The gerundive with sum takes the dative denoting the person who has a thing to do.*

## 467.

*Vocabulary.*

agō, -ere, ēgi, āctus, <i>drive, lead; do, act.</i>	moenia, -ium, n. pl. [mūniō], <i>walls (of a city).</i>
cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, <i>think, be of the opinion.</i>	opus, -eris, n. <i>work, labor.</i>
dē-sistō, -ere, -stiti, -stitus, <i>(stand off), cease, desist.</i>	pertinācia, -ae, f. <i>perseverance, obstinacy, pertinacity.</i>
iam-iam, adv. <i>already.</i>	re-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>call back, recall; revoke.</i>

vēxillum, -i, n. *signal-flag*, p. 183.

**468.** 1. Dux castra mōtūrus est. 2. Scribenda est mihi epistula. 3. Scribenda erat tibi epistula. 4. Cum Scipiō, graviter vulnerātus, in hostium manūs iamiam



ventūrus<sup>1</sup> esset, filius eum periculō liberāvit. 5. Māgnam in spem veniēbat fore<sup>2</sup> ut pertināciā dēsisteret hostis. 6. Hōc cēseō et Carthāginem esse dēlendā. 7. Ita nōbis vivendum est ut ad mortem parāti simus. 8. Caesari omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda : vēxillum prōpōnendum,<sup>3</sup> signum tubā dandum,<sup>3</sup> ab opere revocandi<sup>4</sup> militēs, aciēs instruenda,<sup>3</sup> militēs cohortandi.<sup>4</sup>

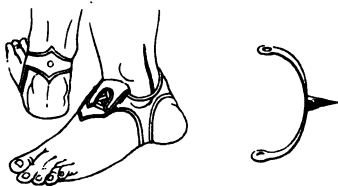
**469.** 1. Do you know what he is going to do? 2. We ought to cultivate virtue. 3. Since you are intending to go away, we must follow you. 4. If we wish to conquer, we must undergo all dangers patiently. 5. Let us form a testudo and go up to the walls of the city. 6. If Proserpine had not been carried off, her mother would not have wandered over all the earth. 7. Oh that Proserpine had not been carried off by Pluto to be his wife ! 8. Oh that Jupiter had not permitted his brother to come out of the earth !

<sup>1</sup> *Iamiam ventūrus, just about to come.*

<sup>2</sup> For futūrum esse ; *that it would be, i.e., result.*

<sup>3</sup> Supply erat.

<sup>4</sup> Supply erant.



CALCAR.

## LESSON LXXII.

## Gerund and Gerundive. — Supine.

**470.** Learn the gerunds and supines of the model and irregular verbs.

**471.** The gerund is a verbal noun corresponding to the English verbal noun in *-ing*. It is declined like the singular of *dōnum*, the nominative and the accusative without a preposition being supplied by the infinitive.

**472.** *Model Sentences.*

1. N. **Vidēre est crēdere**, *seeing is believing.*
2. G. **Caesar hortandī finem facit**, *Caesar makes an end of exhorting.*
3. D. **Aqua ūtilis est bibendō**, *water is useful for drinking.*
4. AC. { **Hic locus ad pūgnandum idōneus est**, *this place is suitable for fighting.*  
**Dicunt vidēre esse crēdere**, *they say that seeing is believing.*
5. AB. **Mēns discendō alitur**, *the mind is strengthened by learning.*

**473.** The use of the gerundive as a passive participle with *sum* has been illustrated in the preceding lesson. But it may also be used as a verbal adjective.

## 474.

*Model Sentences.*

1. G. **Cōnsilia ineunt** { **urbem dēlendi**,  
**urbis dēlendae**, } *they are forming plans for (of) destroying the city (of the city to be destroyed).*

2. D. **Operam dat agris colendiā**, *he devotes himself to tilling the fields (to the fields to be tilled).*

3. Ac. **Vēnerunt ad pācem petendam**, *they came to seek peace (for peace to be sought).*

4. Ab. **Occupātus sum in litteris scribendiā**, *I am engaged in writing letters (in letters to be written).*

*a.* Notice that in the first sentence the gerund **dēlendi** limits **cōnsilia** in accordance with 36; but as a *verbal* noun it governs the same case that any other form of the verb **dēleō** would take, namely the accusative. What case would **ūtendi**, from **ūtor**, govern? What **pārendi**, from **pāreō**?

*b.* Study the equivalent construction **urbis dēlendae**. Here **urbis** depends on **cōnsilia** and the gerundive, like any other adjective, agrees with its noun.

*c.* Notice that the accusative of the gerund or gerundive with **ad** denotes a purpose. This construction is much used. In what other ways may a purpose be expressed?

## 475.

*Model Sentences.*

1. **Lēgātī Rōmam veniunt pācem petitum**, *ambassadors come to Rome to sue for peace.*

2. **Id perfacile est factū**, *that is very easy to do, or to be done.*

*a.* Observe in the first example that the supine **petitum** has the same meaning as **ut petant**, **quī petant**, or **ad petendam**; that is, it expresses purpose. This use is common after verbs of motion.

**476. Rule.** — *The supine in um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

*b.* In the second example the supine in ū answers the question *in what respect?* *Perfacile factū, easy in respect to the doing.* This use is common after adjectives.

*c.* The supine in ū is really an *ablative of specification.* See 168.

#### 477. Vocabulary.

*at*, conj. *but*.

*causa*, -ae, f. *cause, reason*;  
abl., *for the sake* (following  
a genitive).

*con-veniō*, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus  
[com], *come together, as-*  
*semble.* [even.

*etiam*, conj. [et, iam], *also*,  
*im-perītus*, -a, -um [in], *un-*  
*skilled*; w. gen.

*in-ermis*, -e [arma], *unarmed*.

*male* [malus], adv. *badly, ill*.

*male-ficus*, -ī, m. [faciō], *evil-*  
*doer*.

*praeter*, prep. w. acc., *besides*.

*propter*, prep. w. acc., *on ac-*  
*count of*.

*solum*, adv. [sōlus], *only*.

*sūmō*, -ere, -psī, -ptus, *take*.

*tālum*, -ī, n. *weapon*.

*tubicen*, -inis, m. [tuba, canō,  
*sing*], *trumpeter*.

**478.** 1. Multi convēnērunt studiō<sup>1</sup> videndae novae urbis. 2. Lēgātōs ad Caesarem pācis petendae causā<sup>2</sup> Galli mittunt. 3. Galli ad Caesarem vērērunt pācem petitum. 4. Sī lēgātī veniant quī pācem petant, Caesar patienter eōs audiat. 5. Inter<sup>3</sup> pūgnandum trigintā nāvēs captae sunt. 6. Quod optimum est factū faciam. 7. Cincinnātus, quī esset<sup>4</sup> vir bellī<sup>5</sup> peritissimus, dictātor dē exercitū liberandō creātus est. 8. Tubicen, cum ipse nōn pūgnāret, tamen aliōs ad pūgnam incitābat.

<sup>1</sup> See 132.

<sup>2</sup> Notice this way of expressing purpose.

<sup>3</sup> During.

<sup>4</sup> See 433.

<sup>5</sup> In war.

9. Hostēs putāvērunt tubicinem, quī aliōs ad pūgnam incitāret,<sup>1</sup> pūniendum esse. 10. Utinam tubicen nē captus esset !

## 479.

## TUBICEN.

Tubicen ab hostibus captus est. “Cūr mē,” inquit, “interficitis? nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeō praeter hanc tubam.” At hostēs, “Propter hōc ipsum,” inquiunt, “tē interficiēmus quod, ipse pūgnandi imperitus,<sup>2</sup> aliōs ad pūgnam incitāre solēs.” Nōn solum malefici sunt pūniendī, sed etiam ei quī aliōs ad male faciendum incitent.

480. 1. The trumpeter asked the enemy's commander why he was going to put him to death. 2. “During the fight,”<sup>3</sup> said he, “I did not use any<sup>4</sup> weapon. 3. I could not have<sup>5</sup> killed any one<sup>6</sup> with this trumpet. 4. Do not put me to death. 5. I am not the man<sup>7</sup> who deserves to be punished. 6. If I had been fighting, I would not say a word.”<sup>8</sup> 7. But the general said, “That trumpet of yours is a weapon which incites<sup>9</sup> the soldiers to fight. You must die.” 8. Then the trumpeter, about to die,<sup>10</sup> said, “O that I had not incited others to evil doing.”

<sup>1</sup> See 433.<sup>6</sup> A form of *quisquam*.<sup>2</sup> *Though unskilled*.<sup>7</sup> Cf. 437, 6.<sup>3</sup> Cf. 478, 5.<sup>8</sup> *Would say nothing*.<sup>4</sup> See p. 124, note 7.<sup>9</sup> Subjunctive of characteristic (433).<sup>5</sup> *Could not have* = *was not able to*.<sup>10</sup> *moritūrus*.



ROMANUS IN TOGA PRAETEXTA.



## READING LESSONS.

### Fables.

#### 481.

#### MULIER ET GALLINA.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallinam, quae ei<sup>1</sup> cottidiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit illam<sup>2</sup> auri massam intus cēlāre, et gallinam occidit. Sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod<sup>3</sup> in aliis gallinis reperiri solet. Itaque dum māiōribus dīvitīs inhiat,<sup>4</sup> etiam minōrēs<sup>5</sup> perdidit.

#### 482.

#### VULPES ET UVA.

Vulpēs ūvam in vite cōspicāta<sup>1</sup> ad illam subsiluit omnium virium suārum contentiōne, si<sup>2</sup> eam forte attingere posset. Tandem dēfatigāta inānī labōre discēdēns, "At nunc etiam," inquit, "acerbae<sup>3</sup> sunt, nec eās in viā repertās<sup>4</sup> tollerem."

481. <sup>1</sup> *For her.*

<sup>2</sup> *Illam* = *illam gallinam*, and is subject accusative of *cēlāre*.

<sup>3</sup> *Quod* = *id quod*.

<sup>4</sup> See page 87, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> Supply the Latin noun in the proper form.

482. <sup>1</sup> Perfect participle agreeing with *vulpēs*. Translate by the present participle.

<sup>2</sup> *To see if.*

<sup>3</sup> The plural, as if *ūvae* had been used.

<sup>4</sup> *Eās repertās*, *them found* = *if I had found them*. See 353, c.



## 483.

## RUSTICUS ET CANIS FIDELIS.

Rūsticus in agrōs exiit ad opus suum. Filiolum, qui in cūnis iacēbat, reliquit canī<sup>1</sup> fidēli atque validō custōdiendum. Adrēpsit anguis immānis, quī puerulum extinctūrus erat. Sed custōs fidēlis corripit eum dentibus  
 5 acūtis, et, dum eum necāre studet,<sup>2</sup> cūnās simul ēvertit super extinctum anguem. Paulō post ex arvō rediit agricola; cum cūnās ēversās cruentumque canis rictum vidēret, irā accenditur.<sup>3</sup> Temerē igitur custōdem filioli interfēcit ligōne, quem manibus tenēbat. Sed ubi cūnās  
 10 restituit,<sup>4</sup> super anguem occisum<sup>5</sup> repperit puerum vivum et incolumem. Paenitentia facinoris<sup>6</sup> sēra<sup>7</sup> fuit.

## 484.

## PUER MENDAX.

Puer in prātō ovēs pāscēbat,<sup>1</sup> atque per iocum clāmitābat, ut sibi auxilium ferrētur, quasi lupus gregem esset adortus. Agricolae undique succurrēbant, neque<sup>2</sup> lupum inveniēbant. Ita ter quaterque sē ēlūsōs<sup>3</sup> ā puerō vidē  
 5 runt. Deinde<sup>4</sup> cum ipse<sup>5</sup> lupus aggredērētur, et puer

**483.** <sup>1</sup> Dative of agent, **466.**  
 Translate *left for his . . . dog to guard*. What literally?

<sup>2</sup> See page 87, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> Present for perfect, called *historical present*.

<sup>4</sup> Translate as if it were *restituerat*; after *ubi*, *ut*, and *post*.

**484.** <sup>1</sup> The imperfect denoting customary action; render, *used to tend*.

<sup>2</sup> *But . . . not*.

*quam*, meaning *when*, the perfect indicative is commonly used, but it is best rendered by the pluperfect.

<sup>5</sup> See **353**, *c* (2).

<sup>6</sup> *For the deed*. Why not dative? **36**.

<sup>7</sup> *Too late*.

<sup>8</sup> See page 133, note 1.

<sup>4</sup> Pronounced *de-in'-de*.

<sup>5</sup> *Really*.

rē vērā<sup>6</sup> implōrāret auxilium, nēmō gregi<sup>7</sup> subvēnit, et ovēs lupi praeda<sup>8</sup> sunt factae. Mendāci homini nōn crēdimus, etiam cum vērā<sup>9</sup> dicit.

**485.**

SENEX ET MORS.

Senex quidam ligna in silvā ceciderat, et, fasce in umerōs sublātō,<sup>1</sup> domum redire coepit. Cum fatigātus esset<sup>2</sup> et onere et itinere, dēposuit ligna, et, senectūtis<sup>3</sup> et inopiae<sup>8</sup> miserias sēcum reputāns, clārā vōce invocāvit mortem, ut sē omnibus malis<sup>4</sup> liberāret. Mox adest<sup>5</sup> mors et interrogat quid vellet. Tum senex perterritus : “Prō ! hunc lignōrum fascem quaesō umeris<sup>6</sup> meis impōnās.”<sup>7</sup>

**486.**

VULPES ET LEO.

Vulpēs numquam leōnem viderat. Cum huic<sup>1</sup> forte occurrisset, ita exterrita est, ut paene morerētur<sup>2</sup> formidine. Eundem cōspicāta est iterum. Tum extimuit illa quidem, sed nēquāquam ut antea. Cum tertiō<sup>3</sup> leōni obviam facta esset, adeō nōn perterrita fuit,<sup>4</sup> ut auderet<sup>2</sup> accēdere propius et conloquī cum eō.

<sup>6</sup> Rē vērā = *in earnest*.

<sup>7</sup> Why dative? See 397.

**485.** <sup>1</sup> From tollō.

<sup>2</sup> See 382.

<sup>3</sup> Notice the order; the genitives coming first are made emphatic. <sup>4</sup> See 413.

**486.** <sup>1</sup> For the dative see 397.

<sup>2</sup> Is this a subjunctive of purpose or of result?

<sup>8</sup> Predicate nominative.

<sup>9</sup> True (things) = *the truth*.

<sup>5</sup> See 483, note 3.

<sup>6</sup> Umeris . . . impōnās; cf. nōbīs . . . imposuit in 313.

<sup>7</sup> Quaesō . . . impōnās = quaesō ut impōnās.

<sup>3</sup> The third time.

<sup>4</sup> Adeō . . . fuit, *to such a degree was not frightened* = *was so far from being frightened*.

## Stories from Roman History.

## 487.

## HORATII ET CURIATII.

Tullō Hostiliō rēgnante bellum inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs exortum est.<sup>1</sup> Ducibus Hostiliō et Fufetiō placuit, paucōrum certāmine fāta<sup>2</sup> utriusque populi dēcerni. Erant apud Rōmānōs trigeminī frātrēs Horātiī,  
 5 trēs apud Albānōs Cūriatīī. Cum eis agunt rēgēs, ut prō suā quisque<sup>3</sup> patriā dimicent ferrō. Foedus ictum est eā lēge, ut, unde victōria,<sup>4</sup> ibi imperium esset.

Ictō foedere trigeminī arma capiunt, et in medium inter duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Cōnsēderant utrimque duo  
 10 exercitūs. Datur signum, infestisque armis terni iuvenēs, māgnōrum exercituum animōs gerentēs,<sup>5</sup> concurrunt. Ut<sup>6</sup> primō concursū increpuēre<sup>7</sup> arma, micantēsque fulsere<sup>7</sup> gladii, horror ingēns spectantēs perstringit. Cōnsertis deinde manibus, statim duo Rōmānī alius super alium<sup>8</sup>  
 15 expirantēs cecidērunt;<sup>9</sup> trēs Albānī vulnerāti.<sup>10</sup> Ad cāsum Rōmānōrum conclāmāvit gaudiō exercitus Albānus. Rōmānōs iam spēs tōta dēserēbat. Ūnum

487. <sup>1</sup> Exortum est = incēpit.

<sup>2</sup> Subject-accusative of dēcerni; that the destinies . . . should be decided.

<sup>3</sup> Notice the order, suā quisque, which is constant in these words.

<sup>4</sup> Unde victōria . . . esset, on whichever side the victory should be, there should be the power.

<sup>5</sup> Gerentēs = habentēs; but gerentēs is a nobler expression.

<sup>6</sup> Ut followed by the indicative means *when* or *as*.

<sup>7</sup> Notice the form of the perfect.

They first hurled their spears, which rang against the shields; then they drew their swords and rushed into close combat.

<sup>8</sup> See 292, a. Alter super alterum would be better. Why?

<sup>9</sup> From cadō.

<sup>10</sup> Supply sunt.

Horātium trēs Cūriātii circumsteterant. Forte is integer<sup>11</sup> fuit, sed quia tribus impār erat, ut distraheret hostēs, fugam capessivit, singulōs<sup>12</sup> per intervālla secū- 20 tūrōs esse ratus.<sup>13</sup> Iam aliquantum spatii<sup>14</sup> ex eō locō, ubi pūgnātum est,<sup>15</sup> aufūgerat, cum respiciēns videt ūnum ē Cūriātiis haud procul ab sēsē abesse. In eum māgnō impetū redit, et dum Albānus exercitus inclāmat Cūriātiis, ut opem ferant frātri, iam Horātius eum occiderat. 25 Alterum<sup>16</sup> deinde, priusquam tertius posset cōsequi, interfēcit.

Iam singuli supererant, sed nec spē nec viribus parēs. Alter erat intāctus ferrō et geminātā victōriā ferōx;<sup>17</sup> alter fessum<sup>18</sup> vulnere, fessum cursū trahēbat corpus. 30 Nec illud proelium fuit. Rōmānus exsultāns male sustinentem<sup>19</sup> arma Cūriātium cōfīcit, iacentem<sup>20</sup> spoliāt. Rōmāni ovantēs ac grātulantēs Horātium accipiunt et domum dēdūcunt.

**488.**

CINCINNATUS. 458 B.C.

T. Quinctius Cincinnātus omnium cōsēnsū dictātor<sup>1</sup> est dictus. Ille, spēs ūnica imperi Rōmāni, trāns Tiberim

<sup>11</sup> Integer = incolumis.

<sup>12</sup> Subject-accusative of *secūtūrōs esse*; *thinking that they would follow one by one.*

<sup>13</sup> Ratus = putāns. Perfect participles must sometimes be rendered as if they were present participles.

<sup>14</sup> See 203.

<sup>16</sup> See page 109, note 4.

<sup>16</sup> *The second.* <sup>17</sup> *Emboldened.*

<sup>18</sup> Agrees with *corpus*.

<sup>19</sup> Take the words in this order: Cūriātium male sustinentem arma cōfīcit. On sustinentem see 353, c (2).

<sup>20</sup> Supply *et* to precede, and render, *as he lay dead.*

**488.** <sup>1</sup> A magistrate appointed in times of extraordinary danger to hold office six months, and in-

vested with supreme power. On this occasion the Aequi, enemies of the Romans, had surrounded

tunc quattuor iūgerū<sup>2</sup> colēbat agrum. Ad quem missi  
lēgātī nūdum<sup>3</sup> eum arantem, offendērunt. Salūte<sup>4</sup> datā  
5 redditāque Quinctius togam<sup>5</sup> properē ē tuguriō prōferre  
uxōrem Raciliam iussit, ut senātūs mandāta togātus  
audiret.

Postquam, abstersō pulvere āc sūdōre, togā indūtus<sup>6</sup>  
prōcessit<sup>7</sup> Quinctius, dictātōrem eum lēgātī grātulantēs  
10 cōnsalūtant; quantus terror in exercitū sit,<sup>8</sup> expōnunt.  
Quinctius igitur Rōmam vēnit et antecēdentibus lictōri-  
bus domum dēductus est. Posterō diē ab urbe profectus,  
exercitū Rōmānō liberātō, victōs hostis sub iugum<sup>9</sup> misit.  
Urbem triumphāns ingressus est. Ducti ante currum  
15 hostium ducēs, militāria signa<sup>10</sup> praelāta; secūtus est  
exercitus praedā onustus; epulae instrūctae sunt ante  
omnium domōs. Quinctius sextō decimō diē dictātūrā,  
quam in<sup>11</sup> sex mēnsis accēperat, sē abdicāvit et ad  
bovēs<sup>12</sup> rediit triumphālis agricola.

## 489.

GAIUS DUILIUS. 260 B.C.

C. Duilius Poenōs nāvāli proeliō primus<sup>1</sup> dēvicit. Qui  
cum<sup>2</sup> vidēret nāvēs Rōmānās ā Pūnicis vëlōcitātē superārī,

the whole Roman army com-  
manded by the consul.

<sup>2</sup> Contracted genitive plural,  
depending on *agrum*.

<sup>3</sup> That is, without his toga.  
See illustration, page 34.

<sup>4</sup> *Salūte datā redditāque*,  
freely rendered, *after exchanging*  
*greetings*. What literally?

<sup>5</sup> See illustration, page 191.

<sup>6</sup> *Indūtus* = *vestitus*.

489. <sup>1</sup> *Was the first to.*

<sup>7</sup> See 483, note 4.

<sup>8</sup> *Quantus . . . sit*, an indirect  
question depending on *expōnunt*.

<sup>9</sup> A yoke of spears formed by  
two upright spears with another  
laid upon them transversely.  
Sending under the yoke was  
symbolical of defeat and humil-  
iation.

<sup>10</sup> See illustrations, page 105.

<sup>11</sup> *For.* <sup>12</sup> From *bōs*.

<sup>2</sup> *Qui cum*, *when he.*

manūs ferreās, quās corvōs vocāvēre,<sup>3</sup> māchinam ad comprehendendās hostium nāvis tenendāsque ūtilem excōgitāvit. Ea māchina Rōmānis māgnō ūsui fuit; nam iniectis illis corvis hostilem nāvem apprehendēbant,<sup>4</sup> deinde superiectō pōnte in eam insiliēbant et gladiō vèlut in pūgnā terrestri dimicābant; unde Rōmānis, quī rōbore praestābant, facilis victōria fuit. Inter pūgnandum trigintā hostium nāvēs captae sunt, mersae tredecim. Duilius victor Rōmam reversus, primus<sup>5</sup> nāvālem triumphum ēgit. Nulla victōria Rōmānis grātor fuit, quod invicti terrā iam etiam marī plūrimum possent.<sup>6</sup> Itaque Duiliō concessum est,<sup>7</sup> ut per omnem vitam praelūcente fūnālī et praecinente tibicine ā cēnā rediret.

**490.** MARCUS PORCIUS CATO, PUER. 85 B.C.

M. Porcius Catō iam puer<sup>1</sup> invictum animi rōbur ostendit. Cum<sup>2</sup> in domō Drūsī avunculi suī educārētur, Latini dē civitatē impetrandā<sup>3</sup> Rōmam vērunt. Popēdius, Latinōrum princeps, quī Drūsī hospes erat, Catōnem puerum rogāvit, ut Latinōs apud avunculum adiuvāret. Catō vultū cōstanti negāvit<sup>4</sup> id sē factūrum. Iterum deinde āc saepius<sup>5</sup> interpellātus in prōpositō perstitit. Tunc

<sup>3</sup> Note this form of the perfect and compare *increpuere*, 487.

<sup>4</sup> Iniectis . . . apprehendēbant. *By throwing these grappling-hooks upon a hostile ship they would catch hold of it.*

<sup>5</sup> See note 1.

<sup>6</sup> *They could very much = could accomplish a great deal.*

<sup>7</sup> See p. 109, note 4. *Duilius was allowed.*

**490.** <sup>1</sup> *Already a boy = even in boyhood.* <sup>2</sup> *While.*

<sup>3</sup> *Respecting citizenship to be obtained = to obtain citizenship.*

<sup>4</sup> *Denied himself to be going to do it = refused to do it.*

<sup>5</sup> *Again and again.*

Popēdius puerum in excelsam<sup>6</sup> aedium partem levātum tenuit,<sup>7</sup> et sē<sup>8</sup> abiectūrum inde minātus est, nisi precibus  
 10 obtemperāret; neque hōc metū<sup>9</sup> ā sententiā eum potuit dimovēre. Tunc Popēdius exclāmāsse fertur: “Grātu-  
 lēmur nōbīs, Latīnī, hunc esse tam parvum; sī enim senātor esset,<sup>10</sup> nē spērāre quidem iūs civitātis licēret.”<sup>10</sup>

## 491.

GAIUS MARIUS. 88 B.C.

Marius<sup>1</sup> hostis persequentis fugiēns aliquamdiū in palūde dēlituit. Sed paulō post repertus extrāctusque, ut erat<sup>2</sup> nūdō corpore caenōque oblitus, iniectō in collum lōrō Minturnās raptus<sup>3</sup> et in custōdiam cōiectus est.  
 5 Missus est ad eum occidendum servus pūblicus, nātiōne<sup>4</sup> Cimber, quem Marius vultūs auctōritāte dēterrui. Cum enim hominem ad sē strictō gladiō venientem vidisset, “Tūne,<sup>5</sup> homō,” inquit, “C. Marium audēbis occidere?” Quō auditō attonitus ille ac tremēns abiectō ferrō fūgit,

<sup>6</sup> Excelsam = altam.<sup>7</sup> Puerum . . . levātum tenuit, held the raised up boy = raised up and held the boy. See 353, c (3).<sup>8</sup> The subject-accusative of abiectūrum (esse). Eum, referring to puerum, must be supplied as the object of abiec-tūrum. *He threatened himself to be going to throw him (eum) down from there = he threatened to throw him down from there.*<sup>9</sup> By this fear means by fear of this.<sup>10</sup> What time is denoted, and what is implied? See 451.

491. <sup>1</sup> Marius had been driven from Rome by his powerful rival, Sulla, and was fleeing for life.

<sup>2</sup> Just as he was.

<sup>3</sup> The following et shows that est must be supplied.

<sup>4</sup> See 168.<sup>5</sup> The -ne is the interrogative particle.

Marium<sup>6</sup> sē nōn posse occidere clāmitāns. Marius de- 10  
inde ab iis, qui prius eum occidere voluerant, ē carcere  
ēmissus est.

492.

GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR. 44 B.C.

Atque cum Caesar eō diē in senātum vēnisset, adsiden-  
tem<sup>1</sup> coniūrāti speciē offici circumstetērunt ilicōque ūnus,  
quasi aliquid rogātūrus, propius accessit, renuentique<sup>2</sup>  
ab<sup>3</sup> utrōque umerō togam apprehendit. Deinde clāman-  
tem,<sup>4</sup> “Ista<sup>5</sup> quidem vis est,” Casca, ūnus ē coniūrātis, 5  
adversum vulnerat paulum infrā iugulum. Caesar Cascae  
bracchium adreptum<sup>6</sup> graphiō trāiēcit cōnātusque prō-  
silire aliō vulnere tardātus est. Cum Mārcum Brūtum,  
quem filii locō habēbat, in sē inruentem vidisset, dixisse  
fertur: “Tū quoque, mī fili!” Dein ut<sup>7</sup> animadvertit, 10  
undique sē<sup>8</sup> strictis pūgiōnibus peti,<sup>8</sup> togā caput ob-  
volvit<sup>9</sup> et ita tribus et viginti plāgis cōnfossus est.

<sup>6</sup> *Marium . . . clāmitāns.*  
Translate in this order: clāmi-  
tāns sē nōn posse occidere Ma-

*rium. Marius is put first for em-  
phasis. The most emphatic word  
in a sentence is put first. See 33.*

492. <sup>1</sup> That is, eum (C) adsiden-  
tem, following circumstetērunt.

<sup>4</sup> Agrees with Caesarem under-  
stood, object of vulnerat.

<sup>2</sup> *Renuenti = recusanti. Sup-  
ply ēi. One, to him (viz. Caesar)  
refusing, seizes the toga = on  
Caesar's refusal, one seizes his  
toga.*

<sup>5</sup> *This (that you are doing).  
See 304, f.*

<sup>6</sup> See 353, c (3).

<sup>7</sup> See 487, note 6.

<sup>8</sup> Not from here, but on.

<sup>8</sup> *Himself to be attacked = that  
he was being attacked.*

<sup>9</sup> “ . . . then burst his mighty heart ;  
And, in his mantle muffling up his face,  
Even at the base of Pompey's statua,  
Which all the while ran blood, great Caesar fell.”



**493.** CAESAR OCTAVIANUS AUGUSTUS. 63 B.C. to 14 A.D.

Formā<sup>1</sup> fuit Augustus eximiā et per omnēs aetātis gradūs venustissimā. Erat tamen omnis lēnōcini neglegēns et in capite cōmendō<sup>2</sup> tam incūriōsus, ut eō ipsō tempore, quō<sup>3</sup> illud tōnsōribus committeret, aut legeret aliquid aut  
5 etiam scriberet.

Paucis annis antequam morerētur, gravissimam in Germāniā<sup>4</sup> accēpit clādem, tribus legiōnibus cum duce Vārō lēgātisque et auxiliis omnibus caesis. Hāc nūntiātā excubiās per urbem<sup>5</sup> indixit, nē quis tumultus exsisteret, et  
10 māgnōs lūdōs Iovi optimō māximō vōvit, si rēs pūblica in meliōrem statum vertisset. Adeō dēnique cōsternātum<sup>6</sup> ferunt,<sup>7</sup> ut, per continuōs mēnsis barbā capillōque submissō, caput interdum foribus inlideret, vōciferāns, “Quīntili Vāre, legiōnēs redde!” diemque clādis quo-  
15 tannis maestum habuerit ac lūgubrem.

Tandem adflictā valētūdine in Campāniam concessit, ubi, remissō ad ōtium animō, nūllō hilaritātis genere abstinuit. Suprēmō vitae diē petitō speculō capillum sibi cōmī iussit et amicōs circumstantēs percontātus,  
20 ecquid<sup>8</sup> eis vidērētur mimum vitae commodē trānsēgis-

**493.** <sup>1</sup> What other case might have been used? See **140**.

<sup>2</sup> For the construction compare **474**, 4.

<sup>3</sup> Supply *tempore* and translate *when*.

<sup>4</sup> Marks the place of *clādem*. Augustus was not himself in Germany.

<sup>5</sup> *Urbs* often used alone of *Rome*.

<sup>6</sup> The Latin fully expressed would be, *eum cōsternātum esse*, accusative with infinitive depending on *ferunt*.

<sup>7</sup> *Ferunt* = *dicunt*. Cf. *fertur* = *dicitur*, **492**, line 10.

<sup>8</sup> *Whether he had played the comedy of life fairly well.*

adiēcit solitam clausulam,<sup>9</sup> “Ēdite strepitum vōsque omnēs cum gaudiō applaudite.” Obiit Nōlae sextum et septuāgēsimum annum agēns.

<sup>9</sup> In the Roman theatres it was usual for an actor, at the close of a comedy, to invite the applause of the audience.





# TABLES

OF

## DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.

### NOUNS.

#### 494. First Declension. — A-Stems.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	tuba, <i>a trumpet.</i>	tubae, <i>trumpets</i>
G.	tubae, <i>of a trumpet.</i>	tubārum, <i>of trumpets.</i>
D.	tubae, <i>to or for a trumpet.</i>	tubiā, <i>to or for trumpets.</i>
Ac.	tubam, <i>a trumpet.</i>	tubās, <i>trumpets.</i>
AB.	tubā, <i>with a trumpet.</i>	tubiā, <i>with trumpets.</i>

#### 495. Second Declension. — O-Stems.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	hortus	horti	dōnum	dōna
G.	horti	hortōrum	dōnī	dōnōrum
D.	hortō	hortis	dōnō	dōnīs
Ac.	hortum	hortōs	dōnum	dōna
AB.	hortō	hortis	dōnō	dōnīs

*α.* The vocative singular of nouns in -us of the second declension has a special form in -e: *horte.*

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	puer	puerī	ager	agri	vir	virī
G.	puerī	puerōrum	agri	agrōrum	virī	virōrum
D.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agriīs	virō	virīs
Ac.	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs	virum	virōs
AB.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agriīs	virō	virīs

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	filius	fili	cōnsilium	cōnsilia
G.	fili, -iī	filiōrum	cōnsili, -iī	cōnsiliōrum
D.	filiō	filiīs	cōnsiliō	cōnsiliīs
Ac.	filium	filiōs	cōnsilium	cōnsilia
AB.	filiō	filiīs	cōnsiliō	cōnsiliīs

a. The vocative singular of *filius* is *fili*.

## 496.

## Third Declension.

## Mute Stems.

SINGULAR.			
N.	prīnceps	rēx	miles
G.	prīncipis	rēgis	militis
D.	prīncipī	rēgī	militī
Ac.	prīncipem	rēgem	militem
AB.	prīncipe	rēge	milite

PLURAL.			
N.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	militēs
G.	prīncipum	rēgum	militum
D.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	militibus
Ac.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	militēs
AB.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	militibus

## SINGULAR.

N. pēs	lapis	virtūs
G. pedis	lapidis	virtūtis
D. pedi	lapidī	virtutī
Ac. pedem	lapidem	virtutem
Ab. pede	lapide	virtute

## PLURAL.

N. pedēs	lapidēs	virtutēs
G. pedum	lapidum	virtutum
D. pedibus	lapidibus	virtutibus
Ac. pedēs	lapidēs	virtutēs
Ab. pedibus	lapidibus	virtutibus

## Liquid Stems.

## SINGULAR.

N. cōsul	patr	vīctor	homō
G. cōsulis	patris	vīctoris	hominis
D. cōsuli	patri	vīctorī	hominī
Ac. cōsulem	patrem	vīctorem	hominem
Ab. cōsule	patre	vīctore	homine

## PLURAL.

N. cōsulēs	patrēs	vīctōrēs	hominēs
G. cōsulum	patrum	vīctorum	hominum
D. cōsulibus	patribus	vīctoribus	hominibus
Ac. cōsulēs	patrēs	vīctōrēs	hominēs
Ab. cōsulibus	patribus	vīctoribus	hominibus

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

N. vulnus	vulnera	corpus	corpora
G. vulneris	vulnerum	corporis	corporum
D. vulnerī	vulneribus	corporī	corporibus
Ac. vulnus	vulnera	corpus	corpora
Ab. vulnere	vulneribus	corpore	corporibus

## Stems in i.

## SINGULAR.

N. ignis	hostis	nūbēs	mare
G. ignis	hostis	nūbis	maris
D. ignī	hostī	nūbī	marī
Ac. ignem	hostem	nūbem	mare
Ab. ignī, -e	hoste	nūbe	marī

## PLURAL.

N. ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs	maria
G. ignium	hostium	nūbium	—
D. ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus	maribus
Ac. ignis, -ēs	hostis, -ēs	nūbis, -ēs	maria
Ab. ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus	maribus

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

N. animal	animālia	calcar	calcāria
G. animālis	animālium	calcāris	calcārium
D. animālī	animālībus	calcārī	calcārībus
Ac. animal	animālia	calcar	calcāria
Ab. animālī	animālībus	calcārī	calcārībus

## SINGULAR.

N. cliēns	urbs	arx	nox
G. clientis	urbis	arcis	noctis
D. clientī	urbī	arcī	noctī
Ac. clientem	urbem	arcem	noctem
Ab. cliente	urbe	arce	nocte

## PLURAL.

N. clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	noctēs
G. clientium	urbium	arcium	noctium
D. clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	noctibus
Ac. clientis, -ēs	urbis, -ēs	arcis, -ēs	noctis, -ēs
Ab. clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	noctibus

## 497. Fourth Declension. — U-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. gradus	gradūs	cornū	cornua
G. gradūs	graduum	cornūs	cornuum
D. gradui, -ū	gradibus	cornū,	cornibus
AC. gradum	gradūs	cornū	cornua
AB. gradū	gradibus	cornū	cornibus

## 498. Fifth Declension. — E-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G. diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
D. diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
AC. diem	diēs	rem	rēs
AB. diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

## 499. Special Paradigms.

SINGULAR.			
N. deus	domus	senex	vīs
G. dei	domūs, -i (loc.)	senis	vīs <sup>1</sup>
D. deō	domui, -ō	seni	vī <sup>1</sup>
AC. deum	domum	senem	vīm
AB. deō	domō, -ū	sene	vī
PLURAL.			
N. dei, dii, di	domūs	senēs	vīrēs
G. deōrum, deūm	domuum, -ōrum	senum	vīrium
D. deīs, diīs, diīs	domibus	senibus	vīribus
AC. deōs	domōs, -ūs	senēs	vīrēs
AB. deīs, diīs, diīs	domibus	senibus	vīribus

<sup>1</sup> The genitive and dative singular are rare.



## SINGULAR.

N. iter	Iuppiter	bōs	nix
G. itineris	lovīs	bovis	nivīs
D. itinerī	Iovī	bovī	nivī
Ac. iter	Iovem	bovem	nivem
AB. itinere	Iove	bove	nive

## PLURAL.

N. itinera	—	bovēs	nivēs
G. itinerum	—	bovum, boum	nivium
D. itineribus	—	bōbus, būbus	nivibus
Ac. itinera	—	bovēs	nivēs
AB. itineribus	—	bōbus, būbus	nivibus

## ADJECTIVES.

## 500. First and Second Declensions.

## SINGULAR.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. bonus	bona	bonum
G. bonī	bonae	bonī
D. bonō	bonae	bonō
Ac. bonum	bonam	bonum
AB. bonō <i>bonē</i>	bonā <i>bonī</i>	bonō <i>bonum</i>

## PLURAL.

N. bonī	bonae	bona
G. bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D. bonis	bonis	bonis
Ac. bonos	bonās	bona
AB. bonis <i>bonī</i>	bonis <i>bonae</i>	bonis <i>bona</i>

SINGULAR.		
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. liber	libera	liberum
G. liberī	liberae	liberī
D. liberō	liberae	liberō
Ac. liberum	liberam	liberum
Ab. liberō	liberā	liberō
PLURAL.		
N. liberī	liberae	libera
G. liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
D. liberis	liberis	liberis
Ac. liberōs	liberās	libera
Ab. liberis	liberis	liberis
SINGULAR.		
N. aeger	aegra	aegrum
G. aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
D. aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
Ac. aegrum	aegram	aegrum
Ab. aegrō	aegrā	aegrō
PLURAL.		
N. aegrī	aegrae	aegra
G. aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
D. aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Ac. aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
Ab. aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

## 501.

## Third Declension.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
G. audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
D. audāci	audāci	audācibus	audācibus
Ac. audācem	audāx	audācis, -ēs	audācia
Ab. audāci, -e	audāci, -e	audācibus	audācibus

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>		<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>		
N.	prūdēns	prūdēns		prudentēs	prudentia		
G.	prudentis	prudentis		prudentium	prudentium		
D.	prudentī	prudentī		prudentibus	prudentibus		
Ac.	prudentem	prūdēns		prudentis, -ēs	prudentia		
Ab.	prudentī, -e	prudentī, -e		prudentibus	prudentibus		
N.	brevis	breve		brevēs	brevia		
G.	brevis	brevis		brevium	brevium		
D.	brevī	brevī		brevibus	brevibus		
Ac.	brevem	breve		brevīs, -ēs	brevia		
Ab.	brevī	brevī		brevibus	brevibus		

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrum	ācrum	ācrum
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

## 502. Irregular Adjectives.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
N.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia	
G.	aliūs	aliūs	aliūs	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum	
D.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs	
Ac.	aliūm	aliām	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia	
Ab.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs	

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
G.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
D.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Ac.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Ab.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

## 503. Declension of Comparatives.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
G. altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
D. altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Ac. altiōrem	altius	altiōrīs, -ēs	altiōra
Ab. altiōre, -ī	altiōre, -ī	altiōribus	altiōribus
N. —	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G. —	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D. —	—	plūribus	plūribus
Ac. —	plūs	plūris, -ēs	plūra
Ab. —	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

## 504. Irregular Comparison.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i> .	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i> .	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i> .	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i> .	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, <i>outward</i> .	exterior, <i>outer</i> , exterior.	extrēmus } <i>outermost</i> , extimus } <i>last</i> .
inferus, <i>below</i> .	inferior, <i>lower</i> .	īfimus } <i>lowest</i> . īmus }
posterus, <i>following</i> .	posterior, <i>later</i> .	postrēmus } <i>last</i> . postumus }
superus, <i>above</i> .	superior, <i>higher</i> .	suprēmus } <i>highest</i> . summus }
[cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i> .]	citerior, <i>hither</i> .	citimus, <i>hithermost</i> .
[in, intrā, <i>in, within</i> .]	interior, <i>inner</i> .	intimus, <i>inmost</i> .
[prae, prō, <i>before</i> .]	prior, <i>former</i> .	prīmus, <i>first</i> .
[prope, <i>near</i> .]	propior, <i>nearer</i> .	proximus, <i>next</i> .
[ūltrā, <i>beyond</i> .]	ūterior, <i>further</i> .	ūltimus, <i>furthest</i> .
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i> .	mellor, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i> .	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i> .	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i> .	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multī, -ae, -a, <i>many</i> .		
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i> .	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
senex, senis, <i>old</i> .	senior	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i> .	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris, <i>old</i> .	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

## 505.

## Numerals.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1. ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus ( <i>or</i> alter)
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quartus
5. quīque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quartus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim, <i>or</i> sexdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvigintī	duodēvīcēsīmus
19. ūndēvigintī	ūndēvīcēsīmus
20. vīgintī	vīcēsīmus
21. { vīgintī ūnus, <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī	{ vīcēsīmus prīmus, <i>or</i> ūnus et vīcēsīmus
22. { vīgintī duo, <i>or</i> duo et vīgintī	{ vīcēsīmus secundus, <i>or</i> alter et vīcēsīmus
28. duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsīmus
29. ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsīmus
30. trīgintā	trīcēsīmus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus

CARDINALS.		ORDINALS.	
80.	octōgintā		octōgēsīmus
90.	nōnāgintā		nōnāgēsīmus
100.	centum		centēsīmus
101.	{centum ūnus, <i>or</i> centum et ūnus		{centēsīmus prīmus, <i>or</i> centēsīmus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a		ducentēsīmus
300.	trecentī		trecentēsīmus
400.	quadrīgentī		quadrīgentēsīmus
500.	quīngentī		quīngentēsīmus
600.	sēscentī, <i>or</i> sexcentī		sēscentēsīmus
700.	septīgentī		septīgentēsīmus
800.	octīgentī		octīgentēsīmus
900.	nōngentī		nōngentēsīmus
1,000.	mīlle		mīllēsīmus
2,000.	duo mīlia		bis mīllēsīmus
100,000.	centum mīlia		centiēs mīllēsīmus

---

## PRONOUNS.

**506.****Personal.**

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
G.	meī	nostrūm, -trī	tui	vestrūm, -trī	sui	sui
D.	mihi	nōbis	tibi	vōbis	sibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē, sē, sēsē	
Ab.	mē	nōbis	tē	vōbis	sē. sēsē, sē, sēsē	

## 507. Demonstrative.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. <i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hi</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
G. <i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
AC. <i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
AB. <i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
N. <i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
G. <i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
D. <i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
AC. <i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
AB. <i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
N. <i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, ii</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
G. <i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
D. <i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
AC. <i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
AB. <i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
N. <i>iste</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>isti</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>ista</i>
G. <i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>
D. <i>isti</i>	<i>isti</i>	<i>isti</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>
AC. <i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i>
AB. <i>istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>



SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. idem	e'adem	idem	{ eīdem īidem	eaedem	e'adem
G. eīus'dem	eīusdem	eīusdem		eōrun'dem	eārundem eōrundem
D. eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ eīs'dem īīs'dem	eīsdem īīsdem	eīsdem īīsdem
AC. eun'dem	eandem	idem	eōs'dem	eāsdem	e'adem
AB. eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eīsdem īīsdem	eīsdem īīsdem	eīsdem īīsdem
N. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G. ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
AC. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
AB. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

## 508.

## Relative.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G. cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
AC. quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
AB. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 509.

## Interrogative.

N. quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G. cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
AC. quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
AB. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

510.

Indefinite.

SINGULAR.

N. <i>aliquis</i>	<i>aliqua</i>	<i>aliquid, aliquod</i>
G. <i>alicuius</i>	<i>alicuius</i>	<i>alicuius</i>
D. <i>alicui</i>	<i>alicui</i>	<i>alicui</i>
AC. <i>aliquem</i>	<i>aliquam</i>	<i>aliquid, aliquod</i>
AB. <i>aliquo</i>	<i>aliqua</i>	<i>aliquo</i>

PLURAL.

N. <i>aliqui</i>	<i>aliquae</i>	<i>aliqua</i>
G. <i>aliquorum</i>	<i>aliquarum</i>	<i>aliquorum</i>
D. <i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>
AC. <i>aliquos</i>	<i>aliquas</i>	<i>aliqua</i>
AB. <i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>

SINGULAR.

N. <i>quidam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quiddam, quoddam</i>
G. <i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>
D. <i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>
AC. <i>quendam</i>	<i>quandam</i>	<i>quiddam, quoddam</i>
AB. <i>quodam</i>	<i>quādam</i>	<i>quōdam</i>

PLURAL.

N. <i>quidam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
G. <i>quorumdam</i>	<i>quarundam</i>	<i>quorundam</i>
D. <i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>
AC. <i>quosdam</i>	<i>quāsdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
AB. <i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>

## REGULAR VERBS.

511. First Conjugation. — *Ā*-Verbs.*amō, love.*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.*

## INDICATIVE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT.

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.**I am loved, etc.*

<i>amō</i>	<i>amāmus</i>	<i>amor</i>	<i>amāmur</i>
<i>amās</i>	<i>amātis</i>	<i>amāris, or -re</i>	<i>amāmini</i>
<i>amat</i>	<i>amant</i>	<i>amātur</i>	<i>amantur</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

<i>amābam</i>	<i>amābamus</i>	<i>amābar</i>	<i>amābamur</i>
<i>amābās</i>	<i>amābātis</i>	<i>amābāris, or -re</i>	<i>amābāmini</i>
<i>amābat</i>	<i>amābant</i>	<i>amābātur</i>	<i>amābantur</i>

## FUTURE.

*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

<i>amābō</i>	<i>amābitus</i>	<i>amābor</i>	<i>amābitur</i>
<i>amābis</i>	<i>amābitis</i>	<i>amāberis, or -re</i>	<i>amābitini</i>
<i>amābit</i>	<i>amābunt</i>	<i>amābitur</i>	<i>amābuntur</i>

## PERFECT.

*I have loved, I loved, etc.**I have been (was) loved, etc.*

<i>amāvī</i>	<i>amāvimus</i>	<i>amātus</i>	<i>sum</i>	<i>amāti</i>	<i>sumus</i>
<i>amāvistī</i>	<i>amāvistis</i>		<i>es</i>		<i>estis</i>
<i>amāvērunt</i>	<i>amāvērunt, or -re</i>		<i>est</i>		<i>sunt</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus	{	eram	amāti	{	erāmus
amāverās	amāverātis			erās			erātis
amāverat	amāverant			erat			erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāveriō	amāverimus	amātus	{	erō	amāti	{	erimus
amāveris	amāveritis			eris			eritis
amāverit	amāverint			erit			erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, or -re	amēmini
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

## IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, or -re	amārēmini
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

## PERFECT.

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus	{	sim	amāti	{	simus
amāveris	amāveritis			sis			sitis
amāverit	amāverint			sit			sint

## PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus	{	essem	amāti	{	essēmus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis			essēs			essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent			esset			essent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

amā, love thou.

amāre, be thou loved.

amāte, love ye.

amāmini, be ye loved.

## FUTURE.

amātō, thou shalt love.

amātor, thou shalt be loved.

amātō, he shall love.

amātor, he shall be loved.

amātōte, you shall love.

amantō, they shall love.

amantor, they shall be loved.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. amāre, to love.

amāri, to be loved.

PERF. amāvisse, to have loved.

amātus esse, to have been loved.

FUT. amātūrus esse, to be about to love.

amātum iri, to be about to be loved.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. amāns, -antis, loving.

PRES. ———

FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, about to love.

GER.<sup>1</sup> amandus, -a, -um, to be loved.

PERF. ———

PERF. amātus, -a, um, loved,

Supine amātum, having been loved.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. ———

———

G. amandī, of loving.

———

D. amandō, for loving.

———

AC. amandum, loving.

AC. amātum, to love.

AB. amandō, by loving.

AB. amātū, to love, to be loved.

<sup>1</sup> Gerundive, sometimes less correctly called *future passive participle*.

512. Second Conjugation. — *Ē-Verbs.*. *moneō, advise.*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.*

ACTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		PASSIVE.	
		PRESENT.			
<i>I advise, etc.</i>		<i>I am advised, etc.</i>			
<i>moneō</i>	<i>monēmus</i>	<i>moneor</i>		<i>monēmur</i>	
<i>monēs</i>	<i>monētis</i>	<i>monēris, or -re</i>		<i>monēmini</i>	
<i>monet</i>	<i>monent</i>	<i>monētur</i>		<i>monentur</i>	
		IMPERFECT.			
<i>I was advising, etc.</i>		<i>I was advised, etc.</i>			
<i>monēbam</i>	<i>monēbāmus</i>	<i>monēbar</i>		<i>monēbāmur</i>	
<i>monēbās</i>	<i>monēbātis</i>	<i>monēbāris, or -re</i>		<i>monēbāmini</i>	
<i>monēbat</i>	<i>monēbant</i>	<i>monēbātur</i>		<i>monēbantur</i>	
		FUTURE.			
<i>I shall advise, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be advised, etc.</i>			
<i>monēbō</i>	<i>monēbimus</i>	<i>monēbor</i>		<i>monēbimur</i>	
<i>monēbis</i>	<i>monēbitis</i>	<i>monēberis, or -re</i>		<i>monēbimini</i>	
<i>monēbit</i>	<i>monēbunt</i>	<i>monēbitur</i>		<i>monēbuntur</i>	

		PERFECT.			
<i>I have advised, I advised, etc.</i>		<i>I have been (was) advised, etc.</i>			
<i>monuī</i>	<i>monuimus</i>	<i>monitus</i>	<i>sum</i>	<i>moniti</i>	<i>sumus</i>
<i>monuisti</i>	<i>monuistis</i>		<i>es</i>		<i>estis</i>
<i>monuit</i>	<i>monuerunt, or -re</i>		<i>est</i>		<i>sunt</i>

		PLUPERFECT.			
<i>I had advised, etc.</i>		<i>I had been advised, etc.</i>			
<i>monueram</i>	<i>monuerāmus</i>	<i>monitus</i>	<i>eram</i>	<i>moniti</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
<i>monuerās</i>	<i>monuerātis</i>		<i>erās</i>		<i>erātis</i>
<i>monuerat</i>	<i>monuerant</i>		<i>erat</i>		<i>erant</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have advised, etc. I shall have been advised, etc.*

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus	{ erō eris erit	moniti	{ erimus eritis erunt
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris, or -re	moneāmini
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

## IMPERFECT.

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, or -re	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

## PERFECT.

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus	{ sīm sis sit	moniti	{ sīmus sītis sint
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

## PLUPERFECT.

monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus	{ essem essēs esset	moniti	{ essēmus essētis essent
monuissēs	monuissētis				
monuisset	monuissent				

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

monē, advise thou.	monēre, be thou advised.
monēte, advise ye.	monēmini, be ye advised.

## FUTURE.

monētō, thou shalt advise.	monētor, thou shalt be adv'd.
monētō, he shall advise.	monētor, he shall be advised.
monētōte, you shall advise.	
monento, they shall advise.	monentor, they shall be adv'd.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. monēre, <i>to advise.</i>	monēri, <i>to be advised.</i>
PERF. monuisse, <i>to have advised.</i>	monitus esse, <i>to have been advised.</i>
FUT. monitūrus esse, <i>to be about to advise.</i>	monitum iri, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. monēns, -entis, <i>advising.</i>	PRES. _____
FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to advise.</i>	GER. monendus, -a, -um, <i>to be advised.</i>
PERF. _____	PERF. monitus, -a, um, <i>advised, having been advised.</i>

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. _____	
G. monendī, <i>of advising.</i>	
D. monendō, <i>for advising.</i>	
AC. monendum, <i>advising.</i>	AC. monitum, <i>to advise.</i>
AB. monendō, <i>by advising.</i>	AB. monitū, <i>to advise, to be advised.</i>

## 513. Third Conjugation. — E-Verbs.

regō, *rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus.

## INDICATIVE.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I rule, etc.**I am ruled, etc.*

regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris, or -re	regimini
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur



## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling, etc.*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

*I was ruled, etc.*

regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris, or -re	regēbāmini
regēbātur	regēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall rule, etc.*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

*I shall be ruled, etc.*

regar	regēmur
regēris, or -re	regēmini
regētur	regentur

## PERFECT.

*I have ruled, etc.*

rēxi	rēximus
rēxisti	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxerunt, or -re

*I have been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	{ sum	rēcti	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled, etc.*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

*I had been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	{ eram	rēcti	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have ruled, etc.*

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

*I shall have been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	{ erō	rēcti	{ erimus
	{ eris		{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

regam	regāmus
regās	regātis
regat	regant

regar	regāmur
regāris, or -re	regāmini
regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT.

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris, or -re	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT.

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus {	sim	rēcti {	simus
rēxeris	rēxeritis		sis		sitis
rēxerit	rēxerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

rēxissem	rēxisseōmus	rēctus {	essem	rēcti {	esseōmus
rēxisseōs	rēxisseōtis		essēs		essētis
rēxisset	rēxisset		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

rege, rule thou.	regere, be thou ruled.
regite, rule ye.	regimini, be ye ruled.

FUTURE.

regitō, thou shalt rule.	regitor, thou shalt be ruled.
regitō, he shall rule.	regitor, he shall be ruled.
regitōte, ye shall rule.	_____
reguntō, they shall rule.	reguntor, they shall be ruled.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. regere, to rule.	regī, to be ruled.
PERF. rēxisse, to have ruled.	rēctus esse, to have been ruled.
FUT. rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule.	rēctum iri, to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. regēs, -entis, ruling.	PRES. _____
FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule.	GER. regendus, -a, -um, to be ruled.
PERF. _____	PERF. rēctus, -a, -um, ruled, having been ruled.

GERUND.	SUPINE.
N. _____	_____
G. <i>regendi, of ruling.</i>	_____
D. <i>regendō, for ruling.</i>	_____
AC. <i>regendum, ruling.</i>	AC. <i>rēctum, to rule.</i>
AB. <i>regendō, by ruling.</i>	AB. <i>rēctū, to rule, to be ruled.</i>

### 514. Third Conjugation. — Verbs in -iō.

*capiō, take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *capiō, capere, cēpi, captus.*

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>I take, etc.</i>		<i>I am taken.</i>	
<i>capiō</i>	<i>capimus</i>	<i>capior</i>	<i>capimur</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>caperis, or -re</i>	<i>capimini</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>I was taking, etc.</i>		<i>I was taken, etc.</i>	
<i>capiebam</i>	<i>capiebamus</i>	<i>capiebar</i>	<i>capiebamur</i>
<i>capiebas</i>	<i>capiebatis</i>	<i>capiebaris, or -re</i>	<i>capiebamini</i>
<i>capiebat</i>	<i>capiebant</i>	<i>capiebatur</i>	<i>capiebantur</i>

#### FUTURE.

<i>I shall take, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be taken, etc.</i>	
<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiemus</i>	<i>capiar</i>	<i>capiamur</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>capietis</i>	<i>capieris, or -re</i>	<i>capiemini</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capient</i>	<i>capietur</i>	<i>capientur</i>

#### PERFECT.

*cēpi, cēpisti, cēpit, etc.*      *captus sum, es, est, etc.*

#### PLUPERFECT.

*cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.*      *captus eram, erās, erat, etc.*

#### FUTURE PERFECT.

*cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.*      *captus erō, eris, erit, etc.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

capiam, capiāa, capiat, etc.      capiar, -lāris, *or* -re, -lātur, etc.

## IMPERFECT.

caperem, caperēa, caperet, etc. caperer, -erēris, *or* -re, -erētur

## PERFECT.

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus sim, sis, sit, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēpisse, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc. captus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cape, *take thou.*      capere, *be thou taken.*

capite, *take ye.*      capimini, *be ye taken.*

FUT. capito, *thou shalt take,*      capitor, *thou shalt be taken,*  
etc.      etc.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, *to take.*      capi, *to be taken.*

PERF. cēpisse, *to have taken.*      captus esse, *to have been taken.*

FUT. captūrus esse, *to be about to take.*      captum iri, *to be about to be taken.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. capiēs, -lentis, *taking.*      PRES. ———

FUT. captūrus, *about to take.*      GER. capiendus, *to be taken.*

PERF. ———      PERF. captus, *having been taken.*

## GERUND.

G. capiendī, *of taking,*  
etc.

## SUPINE.

AC. captum, *to take.*

AB. captū, *to take, to be taken.*

515. Fourth Conjugation. — *Ī*-Verbs.audiō, *hear*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.

## INDICATIVE.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiō      audimus  
audis      auditis  
audit      audiunt

audior      audimur  
audiris, or -re      audimini  
audītur      audiuntur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam      audiēbāmus  
audiēbās      audiēbātis  
audiēbat      audiēbant

audiēbar      audiēbāmur  
audiēbāris, or -re      audiēbāmini  
audiēbātur      audiēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam      audiēmus  
audiēs      audiētis  
audiet      audient

audiar      audiēmur  
audiēris, or -re      audiēmini  
audiētur      audientur

## PERFECT.

*I have heard, etc.**I have been heard, etc.*

audīvī      audivimus  
audīvisti      audivistis  
audīvit      audiverunt, or -re

audītus { sum  
          es      auditi { sumus  
          est            estis  
                      sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audiveram	audiverāmus	auditus	{	eram	auditi	{	erāmus
audiverās	audiverātis			erās			erātis
audiverat	audiverant			erat			erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audiverō	audiverimus	auditus	{	erō	auditi	{	erimus
audiveris	audiveritis			eris			eritis
audiverit	audiverint			erit			erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audias	audiātis	audiāris, or -re	audiāmini
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

## IMPERFECT.

audirem	audirēmus	audirer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris, or -re	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

## PERFECT.

audiverim	audiverimus	auditus	{	sim	auditi	{	simus
audiveris	audiveritis			sis			sitis
audiverit	audiverint			sit			sint

## PLUPERFECT.

audivissem	audivissēmus	auditus	{	essem	auditi	{	essēmus
audivissēs	audivissētis			essēs			essētis
audivisset	audivissent			esset			essent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

audi, *hear thou.*audire, *be thou heard.*audite, *hear ye.*audimini, *be ye heard.*

## FUTURE.

auditō, *thou shalt hear.*auditor, *thou shalt be heard.*auditō, *he shall hear.*auditor, *he shall be heard.*auditōte, *ye shall hear.*audiuntō, *they shall hear.*audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. audire, *to hear.*audiri, *to be heard.*PERF. audivisse, *to have heard.*auditus esse, *to have been heard.*FUT. auditūrus esse, *to be about to hear.*audītum iri, *to be about to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*

PRES. \_\_\_\_\_

FUT. auditūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*GER. audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*

PERF. \_\_\_\_\_

PERF. auditus, -a, -um, *heard, having been heard.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

G. audiendī, *of hearing.*

\_\_\_\_\_

D. audiendō, *for hearing.*

\_\_\_\_\_

AC. audiendum, *hearing.*AC. audītum, *to hear.*AB. audiendō, *by hearing.*AB. audītū, *to hear, to be heard.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

516.

Sum (STEMS es, fu), *be*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *sum, esse, fui, futurus.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

*Singular.*  
*sum, I am.*  
*es, thou art.*  
*est, he (she, it) is.*

*Plural.*  
*sumus, we are.*  
*estis, you are.*  
*sunt, they are.*

IMPERFECT.

*eram, I was.*  
*erās, thou wast.*  
*erat, he was.*

*erāmus, we were.*  
*erātis, you were.*  
*erant, they were.*

FUTURE.

*erō, I shall be.*  
*eris, thou wilt be.*  
*erit, he will be.*

*erimus, we shall be.*  
*eritis, you will be.*  
*erunt, they will be.*

PERFECT.

*fui, I have been, was.*  
*fuiſti, thou hast been, wast.*  
*fuit, he has been, was.*

*fuiſmus, we have been, were.*  
*fuiſtis, you have been, were.*  
*fuerunt, or*  
*fuerē, they have been, were.*

PLUPERFECT.

*fueram, I had been.*  
*fuerās, thou hadst been.*  
*fuerat, he had been.*

*fuerāmus, we had been.*  
*fuerātis, you had been.*  
*fuerant, they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

*fuerō, I shall have been.*  
*fueris, thou wilt have been.*  
*fuerit, he will have been.*

*fuerimus, we shall have been.*  
*fueritis, you will have been.*  
*fuerint, they will have been.*



## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
sim	simus	essem	essēmus
sis	sitis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent
PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
fuerim	fuerimus	fuissem	fuissemus
fueris	fueritis	fuisse	fuissetis
fuerit	fuerint	fuisset	fuisissent

## IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
es, be thou.	Leste, be ye.
FUTURE.	
estō, thou shalt be.	estōte, ye shall be.
estō, he shall be.	suntō, they shall be.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. esse, to be.	
PERF. fuisse, to have been.	
FUT. futūrus esse, to be futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.	
about to be.	

## 517. possum, posse, potui, —, be able, can.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
PRES.	possum	possumus	possim	possimus
	potes	potestis	possis	possitis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMP.	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possemus
FUT.	poterō	poterimus		
PERF.	potui	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PLUP.	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissemus
F. P.	potuerō	potuerimus		

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. posse	PERF. potuisse
-------------	----------------

**518.** *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, benefit.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
PRES.	<i>prōsum</i>	<i>prōsumus</i>	<i>prōsim</i>	<i>prosimus</i>
	<i>prōdes</i>	<i>prōdestis</i>	<i>prōsis</i>	<i>prōsitia</i>
	<i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsunt</i>	<i>prōsit</i>	<i>prōsint</i>
IMP.	<i>prōderam</i>	<i>prōderāmus</i>	<i>prōdessem</i>	<i>prōdessēmus</i>
FUT.	<i>prōderō</i>	<i>prōderimus</i>		
PERF.	<i>prōfui</i>	<i>prōfuimus</i>	<i>prōfuerim</i>	<i>prōfuerimus</i>
PLUP.	<i>prōfueram</i>	<i>prōfuerāmus</i>	<i>prōfuisset</i>	<i>prōfuissēmus</i>
F. P.	<i>prōfuerō</i>	<i>prōfuerimus</i>		

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. *prōdes, prōdeste*      FUT. *prōdestō, prōdestōte*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *prōdesse*      PERF. *prōfuisset*  
FUT. *prōfutūrus esse*

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. *prōfutūrus, -a, -um*

**519.** *volō, velle, volui, —, be willing, will, wish.*  
*nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, be unwilling, will not.*  
*mālō, mālle, mālui, —, be more willing, prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	<i>volō</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>mālō</i>
	<i>vis</i>	<i>nōn vis</i>	<i>māvis</i>
	<i>vult</i>	<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>māvult</i>
	<i>volumus</i>	<i>nōlumus</i>	<i>mālumus</i>
	<i>vultis</i>	<i>nōn vultis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>
	<i>volunt</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>	<i>mālunt</i>
IMP.	<i>volēbam</i>	<i>nōlēbam</i>	<i>mālēbam</i>
FUT.	<i>volam, volēs, etc.</i>	<i>nōlam, nōlēs, etc.</i>	<i>mālam, mālēs, etc.</i>
PERF.	<i>volui</i>	<i>nōlui</i>	<i>mālui</i>
PLUP.	<i>volueram</i>	<i>nōlueram</i>	<i>mālueram</i>
F. P.	<i>voluerō</i>	<i>nōluerō</i>	<i>māluerō</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRES. <b>velim</b>	<b>nōlim</b>	<b>mālim</b>
<b>velis</b>	<b>nōlis</b>	<b>mālis</b>
<b>velit</b>	<b>nōlit</b>	<b>mālit</b>
<b>velimus</b>	<b>nōlimus</b>	<b>mālimus</b>
<b>velitis</b>	<b>nōlitis</b>	<b>mālitis</b>
<b>velint</b>	<b>nōlint</b>	<b>mālint</b>
IMP. <b>vellem</b>	<b>nōllem</b>	<b>māllem</b>
PERF. <b>voluerim</b>	<b>nōluerim</b>	<b>māluerim</b>
PLUP. <b>voluisssem</b>	<b>nōluisssem</b>	<b>māluisssem</b>

IMPERATIVE.		
PRES. _____	<b>nōli</b>	_____
	<b>nōlite</b>	
FUT. _____	<b>nōlitō, etc.</b>	_____

INFINITIVE.		
PRES. <b>velle</b>	<b>nōlle</b>	<b>mālle</b>
PERF. <b>voluisse</b>	<b>nōluisse</b>	<b>māluisse</b>

PARTICIPLE.		
PRES. <b>volēns</b>	<b>nōlēns</b>	_____

**520. eō, ire, ivi (iī), itūrus, go.**

**fiō, fieri, factus sum** (supplies passive to **faciō, make**),  
*be made, become.*

INDICATIVE.			
PRES. <b>eō</b>	<b>imus</b>	<b>fiō</b>	<b>simus</b>
<b>is</b>	<b>itis</b>	<b>is</b>	<b>itis</b>
<b>it</b>	<b>eunt</b>	<b>it</b>	<b>fiunt</b>

INDICATIVE.		
IMP. <b>ibam</b>		<b>fiēbam</b>
FUT. <b>ibō</b>		<b>fiam</b>
PERF. <b>ii</b>		<b>factus sum</b>
PLUP. <b>ieram</b>		<b>factus eram</b>
F. P. <b>ierō</b>		<b>factus erō</b>

		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	<b>eam</b>		<b>fiam</b>
IMPER.	<b>irem</b>		<b>fierem</b>
PERF.	<b>ierim</b>		<b>factus sim</b>
PLUP.	<b>iissem</b>		<b>factus essem</b>

		IMPERATIVE.	
PRES. <b>i</b>	<b>ite</b>	<b>fi</b>	<b>fite</b>
FUT. <b>itō</b>	<b>itōte</b>	—	—
	<b>itō</b>	—	—
		<b>euntō</b>	

		INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	<b>ire</b>		<b>feri</b>
PERF.	<b>isse</b>		<b>factus esse</b>
FUT.	<b>itūrus esse</b>		<b>factum iri,</b>

		PARTICIPLES.	
PRES.	<b>iēns, Gen. euntis</b>	PRES.	—
FUT.	<b>itūrus, -a, -um</b>	GER.	<b>faciendus</b>
PERF.	—	PERF.	<b>factus</b>

	GERUND.	SUPINE.	
N.	—	—	—
G.	<b>eundi</b>	—	
D.	<b>eundō</b>	—	
AC.	<b>eundum</b>	AC. <b>itum</b>	
AB.	<b>eundō</b>	AB. <b>itū</b>	

**521.** *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus: bear, carry, endure.*

INDICATIVE.				
	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRES.	<b>ferō</b>	<b>ferimus</b>	<b>feror</b>	<b>ferimur</b>
	<b>fers</b>	<b>fertis</b>	<b>ferria, or -re</b>	<b>ferimini</b>
	<b>fert</b>	<b>ferunt</b>	<b>fertur</b>	<b>feruntur</b>
IMP.	<b>ferēbam</b>		<b>ferēbar</b>	
FUT.	<b>feram</b>		<b>ferar</b>	
PERF.	<b>tulī</b>		<b>lātus sum</b>	
PLUP.	<b>tuleram</b>		<b>lātus eram</b>	
F. P.	<b>tulerō</b>		<b>lātus erō</b>	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	<b>feram</b>	<b>ferar</b>
IMP.	<b>ferrem</b>	<b>ferrer</b>
PERF.	<b>tulerim</b>	<b>lātus sim</b>
PLUP.	<b>tulissem</b>	<b>lātus essem</b>

## IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRES.	fer         ferte	[ferre]	ferimini
FUT.	fertō         fertōte	fertor	
	fertō         feruntō	fertor	feruntor

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<b>ferre</b>	<b>ferri</b>
PERF.	<b>tulisse</b>	<b>lātus esse</b>
FUT.	<b>lāturus esse</b>	<b>lātum iri</b>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	<b>ferēns</b>	PRES. _____
FUT.	<b>lāturus</b>	GER. <b>ferendus</b>
PERF.	_____	PERF. <b>lātus</b>

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N.	_____	_____
G.	<b>ferendi</b>	_____
D.	<b>ferendō</b>	_____
AC.	<b>ferendum</b>	AC. <b>lātum</b>
AB.	<b>ferendō</b>	AB. <b>lātū</b>

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

---

N. B. — These rules are here numbered consecutively for the convenience of teachers and pupils. The number following a rule is its section number.

---

1. *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.* 22.
2. *A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.* 65.
3. *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.* 37.
4. *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.* 45.
5. *A noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same person or thing, is put in the genitive.* 36.
6. *The partitive genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.* 203.
7. *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.* 53.
8. *A predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.* 298.
9. *The indirect object is put in the dative.* 28.

10. *The dative is used with est, sunt, etc., forms of the verb sum (516), to denote possession, the thing possessed being the subject. 29.*

11. *Most verbs meaning to favor, please, believe, trust, help, and their opposites, also to persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, and spare, and the like, govern the dative. 372.*

12. *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super, govern the dative. 397.*

13. *The dative is used with sum and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves. 399.*

14. *The gerundive with sum takes the dative denoting the person who has a thing to do. 466.*

15. *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. 23.*

16. *Names of towns used to express place whither are put in the accusative without a preposition. 269.*

17. *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative. 260.*

18. *The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with a or ab. 76.*

19. *The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. 84.*

**20.** *The manner of an action is denoted by the ablative, usually with cum; but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.* 93.

**21.** *The ablative is used to express cause.* 132.

**22.** *The ablative or the genitive of a noun may be used with an adjective to describe a person or thing.* 140.

**23.** *Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative.* 155.

**24.** *The ablative is used with verbs, adjectives, and nouns, to denote in what respect a thing is true.* 168.

**25.** *The comparative is followed by the ablative when quam (than) is omitted.* 194.

**26.** *Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative.* 210.

**27.** *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.* 241.

**28.** *Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds, govern the ablative.* 361.

**29.** *The ablative absolute is used to express the time, cause, condition, or some other circumstance of the action of the main verb.* 388.

**30.** *Words signifying privation, removal, or separation are followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition.* 413.



**31.** NAMES OF TOWNS: (1) *Place where is expressed by the locative.* 407. See 180.

(2) *Place whither is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.* 407. See 269.

(3) *Place whence is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.* 407.

**32.** *A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.* 113.

**33.** *The subjunctive is used with ut and nō to express purpose.* 254.

**34.** *The subjunctive is used with ut and ut nōn to express result.* 278.

**35.** *In a cum-clause expressing time, the verb is commonly in the subjunctive if the tense is the imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, in the indicative.* 382.

**36.** *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.* 421.

**37.** *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses of purpose, result, characteristic, and cause.* 433.

**38.** *The subjunctive is used with cum causal or concessive.* 435.

**39.** *Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive with or without utinam, (oh that!)* 441.

**40.** *Wishes referring to the future, immediate or more remote, are expressed by the present subjunctive.* 442.

**41.** *Wishes referring to the present are expressed by the imperfect subjunctive.* 442.

**42.** *Wishes referring to the past are expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive. 442.*

**43.** *Conditional sentences referring to present or past time and implying nothing as to fact have the indicative in both clauses. 450.*

**44.** *Conditional sentences referring to present or past time and contrary to fact have the subjunctive in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time. 451.*

**45.** *Conditional sentences referring to future time, if more vivid, take the future or future perfect indicative; if less vivid, take the present subjunctive in both clauses. 452.*

**46.** *A primary tense in the main clause is followed by the present or perfect subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a secondary tense by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. 419.*

**47.** *The tenses of the infinitive denote present, future, or past time, relatively to the time of the leading verb. 320.*

**48.** *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. 299.*

**49.** *Indirect statements follow verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving, and are expressed by the infinitive with subject-accusative. 318.*

**50.** *The supine in um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose. 476.*



# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

*This Vocabulary includes all the words of the Reading Lessons.*

In this vocabulary words inclosed in brackets are, in most cases, those which are given in Latin lexicons and special vocabularies as the primitives of those against which they are set. But, except in compounds, and words obviously formed directly from others, it would be more correct to regard the bracketed words as *connected with the others in formation from a common root or stem*. It is on this ground that such instances will be found as *cūra* referred to *cūrō*, and *cūrō* to *cūra*. Neither is, strictly speaking, derived from the other, but both are formed from the stem *cūra*.

Words printed in *Gothic Italic* type are at once derivatives and definitions. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in SMALL CAPITALS.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupils should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

<b>ā</b> or <b>ab</b> , prep. w. abl., <i>from, by</i> .	<b>ab-sum</b> , -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, <i>be away, be absent, be distant</i> ;
<b>ab-dicō</b> , -āre, āvī, -ātus, <i>reject</i> ;	with ā or ab and abl. (516.)
with <b>sē</b> , <i>resign, abdicate</i> .	<b>ab-ūtor</b> , -ī, -ūsus sum, <i>misuse</i> ;
<b>ab-dūcō</b> , -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, <i>lead away, take off</i> ; <i>abduct</i> .	with abl. (361.)
<b>ab-eō</b> , -ire, -iī, -itūrus, <i>go from, go off, go away</i> . (520.)	<b>ac</b> , conj., see <i>atque</i> .
<b>ab-iciō</b> , -ere, -iēcī, iectus [iaciō], <i>throw off, throw down</i> .	<b>ac-cēdō</b> , -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus [ad], <i>go or come near, approach</i> .
<b>abs-tergeō</b> , -ēre, -tersī, -tersus, <i>wipe off</i> .	<b>ac-cendō</b> , -ere, -dī, -sus, <i>kindle, inflame</i> .
<b>abs-tineō</b> , -ēre, -uī, -tentus [teneō], <i>keep back</i> ; <i>refrain from, abstain</i> .	<b>ac-cidō</b> , -ere, -cidī, — [ad, cadō], <i>fall upon, fall out, happen</i> .
	ACCIDENT.

ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad, capiō], (*take to*), *receive, accept*.

ac-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad, causa], *accuse*.

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj. *sharp, keen; active, eager*. (163.) ACRID.

acerbus, -a, -um [ācer], *bitter, sour*.

aciēs, -ēī, f. [ācer], *edge; line of battle*.

ācritē, adv. [ācer], *sharply, eagerly*.

acūtus, -a, -um [acuō, *sharpen*], *sharp*.

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards, near*.

ad-eō, adv. *to this; so, so very*. Cf. ita, sic, and tam.

ad-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go to, approach, visit*. (520.)

ad-ferō (aff-), -ferre, attulī (adt-), adlātus (all-), *bear to, bring*. (521.)

ad-fligō (aff-), -ere, -flixi, flictus, *dash at; weaken, afflict*.

ad-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw to; add to*.

ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvi, -iūtus, *aid, help*.

ad-ligō (all-), -āre, -āvi, ātus, *bind, tie*.

ad-orior, -iri, -ortus sum (*rise up against*), *attack*.

ad-rēpō (arr-), -ere, -sī, —, *creep towards, steal up*.

ad-ripiō (arr-), -ere, -uī, -reptus [rapiō], *seize, snatch*.

ad-sidō, -ere, -ēdī, —, *sit down*.

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī (aff-), -futūrus, *be present, be here; w. dat.* (516.)

adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f.

[adolēscō, *grow*], *youth, young person*. ADOLESCENCE. Cf. iuvenis.

adventus, -ūs, m. [adveniō, *approach*], *approach, arrival*. ADVENT.

adversus, -a, -um [p. of ad-vertō], *turned towards, opposite, in front*.

aedificium, -ī, n. [aedificō], *building*. EDIFICE.

aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aedēs, *house, faciō*], *build*. EDIFY.

aedis (ēs-), -is, f. *building; plur. house*.

Aeduī, -ōrum, m. *the Aeduians, a Gallic tribe*.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. *sick, weak, feeble*. (500.)

Aegyptus, -ī, f. *Egypt*.

āēr, āeris, m. (acc. āera), *air*.

aestās, -ātis, f. *summer*.

aetās, -ātis, f. *life, age*.

Āfrica, -ae, f. *Africa*.

Āfricānus, -ī, m. [Āfrica], *Africanus, surname of Scipio*.

ager, agrī, m. *field, territory*. (57.)

ag-gredior (adg-), -ī, -gressus sum [ad, gradior, *step*], *approach, attack*.

agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [frequentative of agō], *shake, disturb, chase, drive*. AGITATE.

agnōscō, -ere, -gnōvi, -gnitus [ad, (g)nōscō, *know*], *recognize*. Cf. cōgnōscō.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead; act, do; celebrate; pass (life)*.

agricola, -ae, m. [ager, colō], *farmer*.

Albānus, -a, -um, adj. *Alban; as*

noun, *inhabitant of Alba, a town in Latium.*

albus, -a, -um, adj. *white.*

Alexander, -dri, m. *Alexander, king of Macedon.*

aliquam-diū, adv. *for a time.*

ali-quandō, adv. [alius], *at some time; formerly, once.* Cf. olim.

ali-quantum, -i, n. [alius], *some, a considerable amount.*

aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron. *some one, some, any.* (308.)

alius, -a, -ud, adj. *another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another.* (292.)

alō, -ere, -uī, -tus, or -itus, *nourish, strengthen.*

Alpēs, -ium, f. *the Alps.*

alter, -era, -erum, adj. *the other (of two); alter . . . alter, the one, . . . the other.* (291, 292, a.)

altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus], *height.*

altus, -a, -um, adj. *high, deep.*

ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *walk, take a walk.*

amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus], *friendship.*

amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō], *friendly; noun, friend.*

amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *love, like, be fond of.* (511.)

amplius, adv. comp. *more, longer.*

ancilla, -ae, f. *maid-servant, maid.*

anguis, -is, m. *serpent, snake.*

angustus, -a, -um, adj. *narrow.*

anim-advertō, -ere, -tī, -sus [animus], *turn the mind to, notice.*

animal, -ālis, n. [anima, *breath*], *living being, animal.* (148.)

animus, -ī, m. *mind, soul, spirit.*

annus, -ī, m. *year.* ANNUAL.

ante, prep. w. acc., *before.*

anteā, adv. [ante], *before.*

ante-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, —, *go before.*

ante-quam, adv. *sooner than, before.*

antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante], *old, ancient.* ANTIQUITY. Cf. vetus. (175, 207.)

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, *open.*

ap-pellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad], *address, call, name.* APPEAL.

ap-plaudō, -ere, -sī, -sus [ad], *applaud.*

ap-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus [ad], *seize, take hold of.*

apud, prep. w. acc., *with, by, near, among.*

aqua, -ae, f. *water.* AQUATIC.

āra, -ae, f. *altar.* Page 8.

arātrum, -ī, n. [arō], *plough.* Page 34.

arbor, -oris, f. *tree.*

arceō, ēre, -uī, —, *keep off.*

arcus, -ūs, m. *bow.* (231.) ARC. Page 73.

arduus, -a, -um, adj. *steep; difficult, arduous.*

arma, -ōrum, n. [armō], *arms, weapons.*

armō, -āre, -āvi, ātus [arma], *arm, equip.*

arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *plough.*

Arpinum, -ī, n. *Arpinum, a town in Italy.*

ars, artis, f. *art, skill; plur. qualities.*

arvum, -ī, n. [arō], *ploughed land, field.*

arx, arcis, f. [arceō], *citadel.* (152.)

**Asia**, -ae, f. *Asia*.

**at**, conj. *but*. Cf. *sed* and *autem*.

**āter**, -tra, -trum, adj. *black*. Cf. *niger*.

**Athēna**, -ae, f. *Athena*, a goddess.

**Athēnae**, -ārum, f. *Athens*.

**Athēniēnsis**, -is, m. [*Athēnae*], *an Athenian*.

**at-que** (before vowels and consonants, *āc* before consonants only) [*ad*], *and also, and especially, and*. Cf. *et* and *-que*.

**at-tingō**, -ere, -tigī, tāctus [*ad*, tangō], *touch, reach*.

**at-tonitus**, -a, -um [*ad*], *thunder-struck, astounded, awe-struck*.

**auctōritās**, -ātis, f. *authority, dignity*.

**aūdācia**, -ae, f. [*audāx*], *daring, boldness*.

**audāx**, -ācis, adj. [*audeō*], *daring, bold*. (163.) **AUDĀCIOSUS**.

**audeō**, -ēre, ausus sum [*audāx*], *dare, be bold*. (363, a.)

**audiō**, -īre, -īvi (-īi), -ītus, *hear, listen*. (515.) **AUDIENS**.

**au-ferō**, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [*ab(s)*], *bear off, carry away*. (510.) **ABLATIVE**.

**au-fugiō**, -ere, fūgī, — [*ab*], *run away, escape*.

**augeō**, -ēre, auxī, auctus [*auxiliū*], *increase, enlarge*.

**Augustus**, -ī, m. *Augustus, title of Caesar Octavianus as emperor*.

**aureus**, -a, -um, adj. [*aurum*], *of gold, golden*.

**auris**, -is, f. *ear*.

**aurum**, ī, n. *gold*.

**aut**, conj. *or*; *aut . . . aut*, *either . . . or*.

**autem**, conj. (never the first word), *but, however, moreover*.

**auxilium**, -ī, n. [*augeō*], *help, aid, support*; plur. *auxiliaries*.

**avārus**, -a, -um, adj. *greedy, rapacious*. **AVARICIOUS**.

**avis**, -is, f. *bird*. (148, c.)

**avunculus**, -ī, m. [*dimin. of avus, grandfather*], (*maternal*) *uncle*.

**barba**, -ae, f. *beard*.

**barbarus**, -ī, m. *barbarian*.

**beātus**, -a, -um, adj. *happy*.

**bellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*bellum*], *war, carry on war*. Cf. *bellum gerō*.

**bellum**, -ī, n. [*bellō*], *war*.

**bene**, adv. [*bonus*], *well*. (215.)

**benignus**, -a, -um, adj. [*bene, genus*] (*of good birth*), *kind, good*. **BENIGNANT**.

**bēstia**, -ae, f. *beast*.

**bibō**, -ere, bibī, —, *drink*.

**bonus**, -a, -um, adj. *good*. (207, 500.)

**bōs**, bovis, m. and f. *ox, cow*. (499.)

**bracchium**, -ī, n. *arm*.

**brevis**, -e, adj. *short, brief*.

**Britannia**, -ae, f. *Britain*.

**Brūtus**, -ī, m. *Brutus, a Roman surname*.

**C.**, abbreviation for *Gāius*.

**cachinnō**, -āre, —, —, *laugh aloud*. Cf. *rideō*.

**cadō**, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall*.

**caedēs**, -is, f. [*caedō, cut*], *slaughter, carnage*.

**caedō**, -ere, cecidī, caesus, *cut; kill*.

caenum, -ī, n. *dirt, filth, mire.*

Caesar (C. I.), -aris, m. *Gaius Julius Caesar, a famous Roman.*

calcar, -āris, n. [calx, *heel*], *spur.* (148.) Page 186.

calceus, -ī, m. *shoe.* Page 152.

Campānia, -ae, f. *Campania, a district of Italy.*

Campānus, -a, -um, adj. *Campanian.*

canis, -is, m. and f. *dog.*

Cannēnsis, -e, adj. [Cannae], *of Cannae.*

cantō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cantus], *sing.* CHANT.

cantus, -ūs, m. [cantō], *singing, song.* CHANT.

capessō, -ere, -īvi (-ii), -ītūrus [capiō], *take eagerly; resort to.*

capillus, -ī, m. [caput], *hair (of the head).*

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *take, seize, capture.*

captīvus, -ī, m. [capiō], *captive, prisoner.*

Capua, -ae, f. *Capua, a city in Italy.*

caput, -itis, n. *head.* (126.) CAPITAL.

carcer, -eris, m. *prison.*

cārē, adv. [cārus], *dearly.*

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be in want of, lack, want; with abl.*

carpō, -ere, -sī, -tus, *pluck, nibble.*

carrus, -ī, m. *wagon, cart, car.*

Carthāgō, -inis, f. *Carthage, a town in Africa.*

Carthāgō Nova, *a town in Spain.*

cārus, -a, -um, adj. *dear, precious.*

Casca, -ae, m. *Casca.*

castra, -ōrum, n. *camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō], *a falling; chance; misfortune, loss.*

Catilina, -ae, m. *Catiline, a famous Roman conspirator.*

Catō, -ōnis, m. *Cato, a celebrated Roman censor.*

causa, -ae, f. *cause, reason; causā* (after a genitive), *for the sake.*

celeritās, -ātis, f. [celer, *swift*], *swiftness, speed.*

celeriter, adv. [celer], *swiftly.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *conceal.*

cēna, -ae, f. *dinner.*

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -us, *reckon; think, deem, be of opinion.* Cf. putō.

CENSURE.

centēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [centum], *hundredth.*

centum, num. adj., indecl. *hundred.* CENT.

Cerēs, -eris, f. *Ceres, goddess of agriculture.* CEREAL.

certāmen, -inis, n. [certō], *strife, contest.*

certus, -a, -um, adj. *fixed, determined, certain, sure; certiōrem faciō, make (one) more certain, inform.*

cerva, -ae, f. *deer, hind.*

Christus, -ī, m. *Christ.*

cibus, -ī, m. *food.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m. *Cicero, a famous Roman orator.*

Cimber, -brī, m. *Cimbrian.*

Cincinnātus, -ī, m. *Cincinnatus, a famous Roman.*

circum, prep. w. acc., *around.*

circum-stō, -āre, -stetī, —, *stand around, surround.*



**circum-veniō**, -īre, -vērī, -ventus, *surround; circumvent.*

**citerior**, -ius, adj. (no positive), *hither.* (200.)

**cīvis**, -is, m. and f. *citizen.* (148, c.)

**cīvitās**, -ātis, f. [cīvis], (*body of citizens*), *state; citizenship.*

**CITY.**

**clādēs**, -is, f. *disaster, overthrow, defeat.*

**clāmitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [frequentative of clāmō], *cry out, call out.*

**clāmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *cry, shout.*

**clāmor**, -ōris, m. [clāmō, *shout*], *shout, cry.* CLAMOR.

**clārus**, -a, -um, adj. *clear, loud; renowned, famous.*

**classis**, -is, f. *fleet.*

**clausula**, -ae, f. [claudō, *close*], *close, conclusion.*

**cliēs**, -entis, m. *client.* (152.)

**coepī**, -isse, coeptus (*defective; tenses from present stem wanting*), *began.*

**cō-gnōscō**, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [co(m), gnōscō], *learn, recognize, know, understand.* Cf. āgnōscō.

**co-hortor**, -ārī, -ātus sum [co(m), *intensive*], *exhort, urge, encourage.*

**collis**, -is, m. *hill.* Cf. mōns.

**colloquium**, -ī, n. [colloquor, *converse*], *conversation, colloquy.*

**collum**, -ī, n. *neck.*

**colō**, -ere, coluī, cultus, *care for, cultivate, till; honor.* Cf. incola, agricola.

**columba**, -ae, f. *dove.*

**com-** (col-, con-, cor-, co-), *primi-*

*tive form of cum, a prefix denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive.*

**comes**, -itis, m. and f. [com, eō], *comrade, companion.*

**comitātus**, -ūs, m. [comes], *company.*

**com-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, *intrust, commit.*

**commodē**, adv. *properly, suitably.*

**com-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (*put in violent motion*), *shake, disturb, agitate, move.* COM-MOTION.

**cōmō**, -ere, -psi, -ptus, *comb, dress.*

**com-pleō**, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *fill out, fill up, cover.*

**com-prehendō**, -ere, -dī, -sus, *seize, catch, grasp; comprehend.*

**com-primō**, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [premō], *press together; check, suppress.*

**con-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessus [com], *grant, allow, concede; depart, withdraw.*

**con-citō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com], *rouse up, spur on.* Cf. incitō.

**con-clāmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com], *cry out together, shout.*

**con-curro**, -ere, -curri (-cucurri), -cursus [com], *run together, rush together.*

**concursum**, -ūs, m. [concurrō], *assault.*

**con-cutiō**, -ere, -cussi, -cussus [com, quatiō, *shake*], *shake violently.*

**con-dō**, -ere, -didi, -ditus [com], *conceal, hide.*

**cōn-ferō**, -ferre, contulī, conlātus

- (coll-), [com], *bring together, collect.* CONFER.
- cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [com, faciō], *make, accomplish, carry out, finish; weaken, wear out.*
- cōn-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus [com], *stab, pierce.*
- cōn-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [com, iaciō], *throw together; throw, put.*
- coniūrāti, -ōrum, m. [coniūrō], *conspire, conspirators.*
- con-locō (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *place, station.*
- con-loquor (coll-), -ī, -locūtus sum [com], *speak together, converse.*
- cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *endeavor, attempt, try.*
- cōn-salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *salute cordially, greet.*
- cōnsēsus, -ūs, m. [cōn-sentiō], *agreement, unanimity, consent.*
- cōn-sequor, -ī, -cūtus sum [com], *follow close upon; follow.*
- cōn-serō, -ere, -uī, -sertus [com], *join; with manum, fight hand to hand.*
- cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *preserve, save.*
- cōn-sidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus [com], *sit down.*
- cōnsilium, -ī, n. [cōnsulō, *consulī*], *advice, counsel, prudence, wisdom; plan, design.*
- cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spēcī, -spectus [com, speciō, *look*], *look at attentively; observe, see, behold.*
- cōn-spicor, -ārī, -ātus sum [cōn-spiciō], *get sight of, descry.*
- cōnstāns, -antis, adj. [p. of cōn-stō, *stand firm*], *firm, steady.*
- cōnstantia, -ae, f. [cōnstāns], *firmness; constancy.*
- cōn-sternō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *confound, terrify.*
- cōnsul, -ulis, m. [cōnsulō, *consult*], *consul.* (138.)
- contentiō, -ōnis, f. [contendō, *strain*], *struggle, exertion.*
- contentus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of contineō], *contented; w. abl.*
- con-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [com, teneō], *hold together, hold, contain.*
- continuus, -a, -um, adj. [contineō], *continuous, successive.*
- contrā, prep. w. acc., *against.* CONTRARY.
- con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [com], *come together, assemble; convene.*
- con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *call together, summon, convoke.*
- cōpia, -ae, f. [com, ops], *abundance, wealth; plur. troops, forces.* COPIOUS.
- Corinthus, -ī, f. *Corinth.* (13, 2.)
- Cornēlia, -ae, f. *Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi.*
- Cornēlius, -ī, m. *Cornelius, a Roman family name.*
- cornū, -ūs, n. *horn.* (230.) Page 130.
- corpus, -oris, n. *body.* (138.) CORPSE.
- corrigō, -ere, -rēcī, -rēctus [com, regō], *make straight, reform, correct.*
- cor-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [com, rapiō], *seize, take hold of.*
- corvus, -ī, m. *raven; grappling-hook.*

- cottidiē (cot-), adv. [quot, diēs], *daily*.  
 crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *trust, believe*; w. dat. CREDIT.  
 creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *make, create*; *choose, elect*.  
 cruentus, -a, -um, adj. [cruor, *blood*], *bloody*.  
 culpa, -ae, f. [culpō], *blame, fault*. CULPABLE. Cf. vitium.  
 culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [culpa], *blame, find fault with*.  
 cum, conj. *when; as, since; though, although*. (382, 435.)  
 cum, prep. w. abl., *with*.  
 cūnae, -ārum, f. plur. *cradle*.  
 cupiō, -ere, -īvi, -ītus, *desire, be eager for*. Cf. volō.  
 cūr, adv. [quā, rē], *why, wherefore*.  
 cūra, -ae, f. [cūrō], *care, anxiety*.  
 Cūriātius, -ī, m. *Curiatius, one of the Curiatii*.  
 cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cūra], *care for, take care*.  
 currus, -ūs, m. [currō, *run*], *chariot, car*.  
 cursus, -ūs, m. [currō], *running*.  
 custōdia, -ae, f. [custōs], *guard; custody, prison*.  
 custōdiō, -īre, -īvi (-īi), -ītus [custōs, *guard*], *guard, protect, defend*.  
 custōs, -ōdis, m. and f. [custōdiō], *guardian, keeper*.  
 cymba, -ae, f. *boat*. Page 25.  
 Dārēus, -ī, m. *Darius, king of Persia*.  
 dātor, -ōris, m. [dō], *giver*.  
 dē, prep. w. abl., *from, about, concerning, of (of time), in, during*.  
 dea, -ae, f. [deus], *goddess*. (Page 13, note 5.)  
 dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, *owe, ought*. DEBIT, DEBT.  
 decem, num. adj., indecl. *ten*.  
 dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus (*separate from*), *decide, settle, determine; decree*.  
 decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. *tenth*.  
 dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, *lead down, lead off, escort*.  
 dē-fatigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *tire out, exhaust*.  
 dē-fendō, -ere, -dī, -sus [dēfēnsor], (*strike off from*), *defend, protect*.  
 dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. [defendō], *defender, protector*.  
 dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj. *tired out, weary, very tired*.  
 de-inde (*from thence*), *then, afterwards*.  
 dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *delight*.  
 dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, *destroy*. DELETE.  
 dē-litēscō, -ere, -litui, — [lateō], *hide away, lie hid*.  
 Delphī, -ōrum, m. *Delphi, a town in Greece*.  
 dē-migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *migrate from; remove, go away*.  
 denarius, -ī, m. *denarius, a coin*.  
 dēnique, adv. *at last, finally*.  
 dēns, dentis, m. *tooth*.  
 dē-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, *put down*.  
 dē-serō, -ere, -ui, -tus, *abandon, desert*.  
 dē-sistō, -ere, -stiti, -stitus (*stand off or apart*), *leave off, cease; desist*.

dē-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *be from, be wanting, lack*; w. dat. (516.)

dē-terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, *frighten off, deter*.

deus, -i, m. *god*. (499.)

dē-vincō, -ere, -vici, -victus, *overcome, subdue*.

dexter, -era, -erum (oftener -trum), adj. *right (hand)*.

dīcō, -ere, dixi, dictus, *say, tell, speak; appoint*.

dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dīcō], *chief magistrate, dictator*.

dictātūra, -ae, f. [dictātor], *dictatorship*.

diēs, -ēi, m. and f. *day*. (258.)

dif-ficilis, -e, adj. [dis, facilis, *apart from easy*], *hard, difficult*. (198.)

diligēns, -entis, adj. *diligent, careful, industrious*.

diligenter, adv. [diligēns], *diligently, industriously*.

diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns], *diligence, carefulness, industry*.

dīmīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight, contend*. Cf. pūgnō.

dī-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move asunder; separate, drive away*.

dis-, dī- (a prefix denoting separation), *asunder, apart, in different directions*. Cf. dīmoveō, discēdō, dispertiō, dissimilis.

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, *depart, withdraw, go off*.

discō, -ere, didici, —, *learn*.

dis-pertiō, -īre, -īvi (-īi), -itus [partiō, *divide*], *distribute, divide*.

dis-similis, -e, adj. (*apart from like*), *unlike, dissimilar*. (198.)

dis-trahō, -ere, -āxī, -āctus, *pull apart; perplex, distract*.

diū, adv. *for a long time, long*.

diūtius (comp. of diū), *longer*.

divitiae, -arum, f. [dīves, *rich*], *riches, wealth*.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give; put; dō poenās, suffer punishment*.

doceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus, *teach, show*.

doctor, -ōris, m. [doceō], *teacher*.

dolor, -ōris, m. *pain, grief*. DOLOROUS.

dominus, -i, m. *lord, master*. (61.) DOMINATE.

domus, -ūs, f. *house, home*; domī, *at home*. (407, a, 499.) DOMESTIC.

dōnum, -i, n. [dō], *gift, present*. DONATE.

Drūsus, -i, m. *Drusus, a Roman*.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dubius], *hesitate, doubt*.

dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo], *doubtful*. DUBIOUS.

ducentēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [ducentī], *two hundredth*.

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo, centum], *two hundred*.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dux], *lead*.

Duilius (C.), -i, m. *Caius Duilius, a Roman general*.

dulcis, -e, adj. *sweet, pleasant*. DULCET.

dum, conj. *while, as long as; until*.

duo, duae, duo, num. adj. *two*. (284.)

duo-dē-trigintā, num. adj., indecl. *twenty-eight*.

dux, ducis, m. and f. [dūcō],

*leader, general.* DUKE. Cf. *imperātor*.

*ē*, see *ex*.

*ecquid*, interrog. adv. *whether . . . at all*.

*ē-dō*, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *put forth, raise, utter*.

*ēducō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring up, train, educate*.

*ē-dūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out, lead forth, bring away*.

*ef-ferō*, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus [ex], *bear out, carry forth*. (521.)

*ego*, pers. pron. I. (245.)

*ēheu*, interj. *alas!*

*ēlegantia*, -ae, f. *elegance*.

*elephantus*, -ī, m. *elephant*.

*ē-lūdō*, -ere, -sī, -sus, *deceive, mock*.

*ē-mergō*, -ere, -sī, -sus, *arise, come forth; emerge*.

*ē-mittō*, -ere, -misi, missus, *send forth, let loose*.

*enim*, conj. (never the first word), *for*.

*Ennius*, -ī, m. *Ennius, father of Roman poetry*.

*eō*, adv. [is], *to that place, thither, there*.

*eō*, ire, ivī (iī), itūrus, *go*. (520.)

*epistula*, -ae, f. *letter, epistle*.

*epulae*, -ārum, f. plur. *feast, banquet*.

*eques*, -itis, m. [equus], *horseman, knight*. Page 44.

*equitātus*, -ūs, m. [eques], (*body of equites*), *cavalry*.

*equus*, -ī, m. *horse*.

*ē-ripio*, -ere, -uī, -reptus [rapiō], *snatch out, seize; sē eripere, escape*.

*ēruditus*, -a, -um, adj. [p. of *ērudīō*, *train*], *educated, learned*.

*et*, conj. *and*; *et . . . et*, *both . . . and*. Cf. *atque*, *ac*, and *-que*.

*etiam*, adv. and conj. [et, iam, and now], *also, even*.

*Eurōpa*, -ae, f. *Europe*.

*ē-vertō*, -ere, -tī, -sus, *overturn, destroy*.

*ex* or *ē*, prep. w. abl., *out of, from*.

*excelsus*, -a, -um, adj. *elevated, lofty, high*.

*ex-clāmō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out, exclaim*. Cf. *clāmitō*.

*ex-cōgitō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think out, devise, contrive*.

*excubiae*, -ārum, f. plur. *watch, watchmen*.

*ex-cūsō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [causa], *excuse*.

*ex-eō*, -ire, -iī, -itus, *go out, come out*. (520.) EXIT.

*exercitus*, -ūs, m. [exerceō, *train*], (*the thing trained*), *army*.

*eximius*, -a, -um, adj. *excellent, remarkable*.

*ex-orior*, -iri, -ortus sum, *arise, begin*.

*ex-pōnō*, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set forth, explain, relate*.

*ex-pūgnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take by storm, take, capture*. Cf. *oppūgnō*.

*ex-sistō*, -ere, -stitī, —, *come forth; arise; be, exist*.

*ex-spectō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *await, wait for, expect*.

*ex-spīrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe out, expire, die*.

*ex-stinguō*, -ere, -nxi, -nctus

(*quench completely*), *extinguish*; *kill, destroy*.

**ex-sultō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *leap up, exult*.

**ex-terreō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten, affright*.

**ex-timēscō**, -ere, -timui, — [timeō], *fear greatly*.

**ex-trahō**, -ere, -trāxi, -trāctus, *draw out, drag out*.

**extrēmus**, -a, -um, adj. [exterus], *outermost, last; extreme*. (199.)

**Fabricius**, -i, m. *Fabricius, a famous Roman general*.

**fābula**, -ae, f. [for, *speak*], *story, tale, fable*.

**facētus**, -a, -um, adj. *witty, facetious*.

**facile**, adv. [facilis], *easily*.

**facilis**, -e, adj. [faciō], (*that can be done*), *easy to do, easy*. (198.)

**FACILITY**.

**facinus**, -oris, n. [faciō], (*the thing done*), *deed; crime*.

**faciō**, -ere, fēcī, factus, *do, make*.

**fāma**, -ae, f. [for, *speak*], *rumor, report; fame, renown*.

**familia**, -ae, f. *household, family*.

**fascis**, -is, m. *bundle, load*.

**fatigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *tire out, fatigue*.

**fātum**, -i, n. [for, *speak*], *fate*.

**faveō**, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *be favorable to, favor, befriend*; w. dat.

**fēliciter**, adv. [fēlix, *fortunate*], *luckily, fortunately, successfully*.

**fēmina**, -ae, f. *woman*. Cf. *mulier*. **FEMININE**.

**fera**, -ae, f. [ferus, *wild*], *wild beast*.

**ferē**, adv. *nearly, for the most part, almost, about*.

**ferō**, ferre, tuli, lātus, *bear, bring; fertur, it is said; ferunt, they say*. (521.) Cf. portō and vehō.

**ferōx**, -ōcis, adj. [ferus], *fierce, impetuous*. **FEROCIOUS**.

**ferreus**, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], *of iron*.

**ferrum**, -i, n. *iron; sword*.

**fessus**, -a, -um, adj. *wearied, exhausted*.

**fidēlis**, -e, adj. [fidō], *trustworthy, faithful*.

**fidēliter**, adv. [fidēlis], *faithfully*.

**fidō**, -ere, fīsus sum, *trust*. (362, a.)

**fidus**, -a, -um, adj. [fidō], *trustworthy, faithful*.

**figūra**, -ae, f. *shape, form; figure*.

**filia**, -ae, f. *daughter*. (P. 13, n. 5.)

**filiolus**, -i, m. [dimin. of filius], *little son*.

**filius**, -i, m. *son*. (59.) **FILIAL**.

**finis**, -is, m. *end, border*; plur. *territories*. (148, c.) **FINAL**.

**fīō**, fierī, factus sum (*supplies pass. to faciō*), *be made, become*. (520.)

**flectō**, -ere, flexī, flexus, *bend, turn*.

**flōreō**, -ēre, -uī, — [flōs], *flourish, be conspicuous, be distinguished*.

**flōs**, flōris, m. [flōreō], *flower*.

**fluctus**, -ūs, m. [fluō, *flow*], *wave*.

**flūmen**, -inis, n. [fluō], (*that which flows*), *river, stream*.

**foedus**, -eris, n. *league, treaty*.

**folium**, -i, n. *leaf*. **FOLIAGE**.

**fōns**, fontis, m. *spring, fountain, source*.

**fore**, for futūrum esse.

**foris**, -is, f. *door, gate*; plur. *fold-ing door*.

**fōrma**, -ae, f. *form, figure*; *beauty*.

**formidō**, -inis, f. *fear, terror*.

**forte**, adv. [*fors, chance*], *by chance, perhaps*.

**fortis**, -e, adj. *strong, brave, courageous*.

**fortiter**, adv. [*fortis*], *bravely, courageously*.

**fortitūdō**, -inis, f. [*fortis*], *strength, bravery, endurance*; *fortitude*.

**fortūna**, -ae, f. [*fors, chance*], *fortune, good fortune*.

**forum**, -i, n. *market-place*; *forum*.

**frāter**, -tris, m. *brother*. FRA-  
TERNAL.

**frīgus**, -oris, n. *cold*.

**frūmentum**, -i, n. [*frūor*], *corn, grain*.

**frūor**, -i, fructus sum, *enjoy*; w. abl. (361.)

**frūstrā**, adv. *in vain*.

**Fufetius**, -i, m. *Fufetius, leader of the Albans*.

**fuga**, -ae, f. [*fugiō*], *flight*.

**fugiō**, -ere, fūgī, — [*fugō, fuga*], *run away, flee; flee from*. FUGITIVE.

**fugō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*fugiō, fuga*], *put to flight, rout*.

**fulgeō**, -ēre, fulsī, —, *flash, gleam*.

**fūnāle**, -is, n. *torch*.

**fungor**, -i, fūnctus sum, *perform, discharge*; w. abl. (361.)

FUNCTION.

**Gāius**, Gāi (also written Cāius), m. *Caius, a Roman first name*.

**Galba**, -ae, m. *Galba*.

**galea**, -ae, f. *helmet*. Page 97.

**Gallia**, -ae, f. *Gaul*.

**gallīna**, -ae, f. [*gallus, cock*], *hen*.

**Gallus**, -i, m. *a Gaul*.

**gaudeō**, -ēre, gāvīsus sum [*gaudium*], *be glad, rejoice*. (362, a.)

**gaudium**, -i, n. [*gaudeō*], *joy, gladness*.

**geminātus**, -a, -um, adj. [p. of *geminō*], *doubled, double*.

**gener**, -eri, m. *son-in-law*.

**genus**, -eris, n. *race*; *kind, class*.

**Germānia**, -ae, f. *Germany*.

**Germānus**, -i, m. *a German*.

**gerō**, -ere, gessi, gestus, *bear, carry on, wage (war)*; *manage, do*.

**gladius**, -i, m. *sword*. Page 67.

**glōria**, -ae, f. *glory, fame, renown*.

**Gracchus**, -i, m. *Gracchus, a Roman name*.

**gradus**, -ūs, m. *step*; *period, stage*. (230.) GRADE.

**Graecia**, -ae, f. *Greece*.

**Graecus**, -i, m. *a Greek*.

**grāmen**, -inis, n. *grass*.

**graphium**, -i, n. *stilus (for writing)*.

**grātulor**, -ārī, -ātus sum [*grātus*], *congratulate*.

**grātus**, -a, -um, adj. *acceptable, pleasing*. GRATEFUL.

**gravis**, -e, adj. *heavy, severe*. GRAVE.

**graviter**, adv. [*gravis*], *heavily, severely, vehemently*.

**grex**, gregis, m. *flock, herd*.

**gustō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *taste, eat*.

**habeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *have, hold, keep*.

**habitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [frequentative of habeō], *inhabit; dwell, live.*

**Hannibal**, -alis, m. *Hannibal, a famous Carthaginian general.*

Page 55.

**hasta**, -ae, f. *spear.* Page 15.

**haud**, adv. *not.* Cf. nōn.

**Helvētia**, -ae, f. *Helvetia.*

**Helvētīi**, -ōrum, m. *the Helvetians.*

**Henna**, -ae, f. *Henna, a city of Sicily.*

**herī**, adv. *yesterday.*

**hiberna**, -ōrum, n. [hiems], *winter-quarters* (sc. castra). **HIBERNATE.**

**hīc**, haec, hōc, demon. pron. *this, this of mine;* as pers. pron. *he, she, it.* (100.)

**hīc**, adv. *here, hereupon.*

**hiems** (hiemps), hiemis, f. *winter; storm.*

**hilaritās**, -ātis, f. *cheerfulness, hilarity.*

**hinc**, adv. [hīc], *hence.*

**Hispānia**, -ae, f. *Spain.*

**Hispānus**, -i, m. *a Spaniard.*

**historia**, -ae, f. *history.*

**hō-diē**, adv. [hōc, diē], *to-day.*

**homō**, -inis, m. and f. *(human being), man.* (141.)

**hōra**, -ae, f. *hour.*

**Horātius**, -i, m. *Horatius, one of the Horatii.*

**horror**, -ōris, m. *trembling; dread, horror.*

**hortus**, -i, m. *garden.* (43.)

**hospes**, -itis, m. and f. *guest-friend.*

**hostilis**, -e, adj. [hostis], *hostile.*

**hostis**, -is, m. and f. *enemy.* (148, 149.) **HOSTILE.**

**humī** (loc. of humus, ground), *on the ground.*

**iaceō**, -ēre, -uī, — [iaciō], *(be thrown), lie.*

**iaciō**, -ere, iēcī, iactus [iaceō], *throw, cast, hurl.*

**iam**, adv. *already, now, at last;* nōn iam, *no longer.* Cf. nunc.

**iamiam**, adv. *already;* iamiam ventūrus, *just about to come.*

**ibi**, adv. [is], *in that place, there.*

[icō], -ere, icī, ictus, *strike;* foedus icō, *make a league.*

**īdem**, eadem, idem, demon. pron. [is], *same.* (303.)

**idōneus**, -a, -um, adj. *fit, suitable.*

**igitur**, conj. (seldom the first word), *therefore, then.* Cf. itaque.

**ignis**, -is, m. *fire.* (148.) **IGNITE.**

**ignōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ignārus, ignorant], *not know, be ignorant of.* Cf. nēsciō. **IGNORE.**

**ilicō**, adv. [in, locō], *on the spot, immediately.*

**ille**, -a, -ud, demon. pron. *that (yonder);* as pers. pron. *he, she, it.* (100.)

**immānis**, -e, adj. *huge, immense.*

**im-pār**, -paris, adj. [in], *unequal;* *not a match for.*

**imperātor**, -ōris, m. [imperō], *commander, general.* **EMPEROR.**

**imperātum**, -i, n. [imperō], *order, command.*

**im-perītus**, -a, -um, adj. [in], *unskilled.*



- imperium**, -ī, n. [imperō], *command, rule, power*. EMPIRE.
- imperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [imperium], *order, command*; w. dat. IMPERATIVE.
- impetrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gain, procure, obtain*.
- impetus**, -ūs, m. [impetō, *rush upon*], *attack, assault*. IMPETUOUS.
- im-plōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in], *cry out to, beseech, implore*.
- im-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, [in], *put or place upon; mount*; w. dat. IMPOSE.
- im-pudēns**, -entis, adj. [in, *not*; pudēns, *modest*], *shameless, impudent, bold, brazen*.
- in**, prep. w. acc., *into, to, against, for*; w. abl., *in, on*.
- in-**, prefix, in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. un-, in-, not.
- inānis**, -e, adj. *empty, useless*.
- in-cipīō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [cipiō], (*take in hand*), *begin*. INCIPIENT.
- incitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arouse, excite, incite*.
- in-clāmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out; appeal to*.
- in-cōgnitus**, -a, -um, adj. *unknown*.
- incola**, -ae, m. and f. [incolō], *inhabitant*.
- in-colō**, -ere, -uī, — [incola],  *dwell in, inhabit; live, dwell*. Cf. habitō and vivō.
- incolumis**, -e, adj. *unharmed, safe*.
- in-crepō**, -āre, -uī, -itus, *sound, resound, clush*.
- in-cūriōsus**, -a, -um, adj. *careless, negligent*.
- inde**, adv. [is], *thence*.
- in-dīcō**, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *proclaim, appoint*.
- indūtus**, -a, -um [p. of induō], *clothed, clad*.
- in-eō**, -īre, -īvī (-ī), -itus, *go in, enter; begin*. (520.)
- in-eptus**, -a, -um, adj. [aptus, *fit*], *awkward, silly*.
- in-ermis**, -e, adj. [arma], *unarmed*.
- inferī**, -ōrum, m. [inferus], *inhabitants of the lower world; the Infernals*.
- inferior**, -ius, adj. *lower*. (199.)
- in-ferō**, inferre, intulī, inlātus (ill-), (*bear in or against*), *cause; bellum inferre, make war upon*; w. dat. (521.)
- inferus**, -a, -um, adj. *below*. (199.)
- infēstus**, -a, -um, adj. *unsafe; hostile*.
- infrā**, prep. with acc., *below*.
- ingenium**, -ī, n. *genius*.
- ingēns**, -entis, adj. *huge, great*.
- in-gredior**, -ī, gressus sum [gradior], *step in, enter*.
- in-hiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gape at, long for*.
- in-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw upon, cast upon*.
- in-imicus**, -ī, m. *enemy* [amicus]. (149.) INIMICAL.
- in-lidō** (ill-), -ere, -sī, -sus, *dash against, crush*.
- inopia**, -ae, f. [inops, *without resources*], *want, poverty, lack*.
- inquit** (placed after one or more quoted words), *said he, says he*.

**in-ruō** (irr-), -ere, -uī, —, *rush upon, make an attack.*

**in-siliō**, -ire, -uī, — [saliō], *leap upon.*

**in-struō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *build in, form; instruct, train; prepare, provide.*

**insula**, -ae, f. *island.* PENINSULA.

**in-sum**, -esse, -fuī, —, *be in, be among; w. dat. and w. in and abl.* (516.)

**in-tāctus**, -a, -um, adj. *untouched, uninjured.*

**integer**, -gra, -grum, adj. *untouched, uninjured; fresh.*

**inter**, prep. w. acc., *between, among, amid.*

**inter-dum**, adv. *sometimes.*

**inter-eā**, adv. *meanwhile.*

**inter-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *kill, put to death.* Cf. *necō* and *occidō*.

**interim**, adv. *in the meantime, meanwhile.*

**inter-pellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *entreat, importune.*

**inter-rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, inquire, question.* (422.) INTERROGATION.

**inter-sum**, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be among, be present at; w. dat.* (516.) Cf. *adsum*.

**inter-vāllum**, -ī, n. *interval, distance; per intervalla, at intervals.*

**intus**, adv. [in], *within, inside.*

**in-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come upon, find, discover.* Cf. *reperiō*.

**in-vicem**, adv. *in turn, mutually.*

**in-victus**, -a, -um, adj. [vincō], *unconquered, invincible.*

**in-vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call.*

**iocus**, -ī, m. (plur. *iocī* and *ioca*), *joke, jest; per iocum, in jest, for a joke.*

**ipse**, -a, -um, demon. adj. and pron. *self, very.* (303.)

**īra**, -ae, f. *anger, wrath, ire.*

**is**, *ea*, *id*, demon. pron. *that; as pers. pron. he, she, it.* (119.)

**iste**, -a, -ud, demon. pron. *that (of yours).* (303.)

**isthmus**, -ī, m. *isthmus.*

**ita**, adv. *so, thus.* Cf. *adeō*, *sic*, *tam*.

**Italia**, -ae, f. *Italy.*

**ita-que**, conj. *and so, therefore.* Cf. *igitur*.

**iter**, *itineris*, n. [eō], *way, journey, march.* (499.) ITINERANT.

**iterum**, adv. *a second time, again.* ITERATION.

**iubeō**, -ēre, *iussī*, *iūssus*, *bid, order, command.* Cf. *imperō*.

**iūgerum**, -ī, n. (gen. plur. *iūgerūm*), *acre, juger.*

**iugulum**, -ī, n. *throat, neck.*

**iugum**, -ī, n. *yoke.*

**Iuppiter**, *Iovis*, m. *Jupiter, the supreme deity of the Romans.* (499.)

**iūs**, *iūris*, n. *right, justice.*

**iūssū**, m. only abl. [iubeō], *by command, by order.*

**iūstus**, -a, -um, adj. *just.*

**iuvenis**, -e, adj. *young.* Cf. *adulēscēns*. (207.) JUVENILE.

**iuventūs**, -ūtis, f. [iuvenis], *body of youth, youth.*

**iuvō**, -āre, *iūvī*, *iūtus*, *help, aid.*

**Labiēnus**, -ī, m. *Labienus, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.*

**labor**, -ōris, m. [labōrō], *labor*, *toil*. Cf. opus.

**labōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [labor], *work, toil; suffer*. ELABORATE.

**laetus**, -a, -um, adj. *glad, merry*.

**lapis**, -idis, m. *stone*. (130.)

LAPIDARY.

**lateō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *lurk, lie hid*.

LATENT.

**Latīni**, -ōrum, m. [Latium], *the Latins*.

**lātītūdō**, -inis, f. [lātus], *width*.

LATITUDE.

**lātus**, -a, -um, adj. *broad, wide*.

**laudō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [laus], *praise, laud*.

**laus**, laudis, f. [laudō], *praise, glory, fame*.

**lēgātus**, -ī, m. [lēgō, *depute*], *ambassador, deputy, lieutenant*.

LEGATE.

**legiō**, -ōnis, f. [legō], (*a gathering*), *legion*.

**legō**, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *gather; select; read*.

**lēnis**, -e, adj. *soft, smooth, gentle, mild*. LENIENT.

**lēnōcinium**, -ī, n. *allurement, charm, personal adornment*.

**Lentulus**, -ī, m. *Lentulus*.

**leō**, -ōnis, m. *lion*.

**levō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [levis], *lift up, raise*.

**lēx**, lēgis, f. *law*. LEGAL.

**libenter**, adv. [libet, *it pleases*], *willingly, gladly*.

**liber**, -bri, m. *book*.

**liber**, -era, -erum, adj. *free*. LIBERAL. (500.)

**liberī**, -ōrum, m. [liber], *children*. (61.)

**liberō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [liber], *set free, free, liberate*; w. abl. of separation.

**libertās**, -ātis, f. [liber], *freedom, liberty*.

**licet**, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, impers. *it is permitted, (one) may*.

**lictor**, -ōris, m. *lictor, ceremonial attendant of a high officer*.

**ligneus**, -a, -um, adj. [lignum], *wooden*.

**lignum**, -ī, n. *wood*; plur. *sticks*.

**ligō**, -ōnis, m. *mattock, hoe*.

**littera**, -ae, f. *letter (of the alphabet)*; plur. *letter, epistle; despatches*.

**locus**, -ī, m. (plur. loci and loca), *place, position*. LOCAL.

**longē**, adv. [longus], *far, far off*.

**longus**, -a, -um, adj. *long*. LONGITUDE.

**lōrum**, -ī, n. *thong, strap*.

**lūdō**, -ere, lūsī, lūsus [lūdus], *play*. INTERLUDE.

**lūdus**, -ī, m. [lūdō], *game, play*.

**lūgeō**, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus, *mourn, lament*.

**lūgubris**, -e, adj. [lūgeō], *doleful, mournful*.

**lūna**, -ae, f. [lūx], *moon*. LUNATIC.

**lupus**, -ī, m. *wolf*.

**lūx**, lūcis, f. [lūceō, *shine*], *light*.

**M.**, abbreviation for *Mārcus*, a Roman first name.

**māchina**, -ae, f. *machine, engine, device*.

**maestus**, -a, -um, adj. *sad*.

**magis**, adv. [māg(nus)], *more*. (215.)

**magister**, -trī, m. [māg(nus)], *master, teacher.* (61.)

**māgnificus**, -a, -um, adj. [māgnus, faciō], *splendid, magnificent.*

**māgnitūdō**, -inis, f. [māgnus], *greatness, size, magnitude.*

**māgnus**, -a, -um, adj. *great, large.* (207.)

**māior**, -ius, adj. *greater, larger.* (207.) MAJOR.

**male**, adv. [malus], *badly, ill.* (215.)

**maleficus**, -ī, m. [male, faciō], *evil-doer.*

**mālō**, mālī, mālūī, — [magis, volō], *be more willing, prefer, would rather.* (519.)

**malum**, -ī, n. [malus], *bad thing, evil.*

**malus**, -a, -um, adj. *bad, evil.* (207.)

**mandātum**, -ī, n. [mandō], *order, command.*

**maneō**, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *stay, remain, wait.* PERMANENT.

**manus**, -ūs, f. *hand; force, band.* (229, a.) MANUAL.

**Mārcus**, -ī, m. *Marcus, a Roman first name.*

**mare**, -is, n. *sea.* (148.) MARINE.

**Marius** (C.), -ī, m. *Caius Marius, a famous Roman general.*

**massa**, -ae, f. *mass, lump.*

**māter**, -tris, f. *mother.* MATER-  
NAL.

**mātrōna**, -ae, f. [māter], *matron, wife, lady.*

**māximē**, adv. [māximus], *most, especially, greatly.* (215.)

**māximus**, -a, -um, adj. *greatest.* (207.)

**medicus**, -ī, m. [medeor, *cure*], *physician.* MEDICINE.

**medius**, -a, -um, adj. *in the middle, middle.*

**melior**, -ius, *better.* (207.) AMEL-  
IORATE.

**memoria**, -ae, f. *memory.*

**mendāx**, -ācis, adj. [mentior, *lie*], *lying, deceitful.*

**mēnsa**, -ae, f. *table.*

**mēnsis**, -is, m. *month.*

**Mercurius**, -ī, m. *Mercury, messenger of the gods.* (59.)

**mergō**, -ere, -si, -sus, *sink.*

**metus**, -ūs, m. *fear, dread.*

**meus**, -a, -um, poss. adj. and  
pron. *my, mine.* (247.)

**micō**, -āre, -uī, —, *quiver; flash, gleam.*

**mīles**, -itis, m. *soldier.* MILI-  
TARY. Page 133.

**militāris**, -e, adj. [mīles], *military.*

**militiae** (loc. of militia), *in ser-*  
*vice, in the field.*

**mille**, num. adj., indecl. in sing.;  
in plur., mīlia, -ium, *thousand.*  
(284, d.)

**Milō**, -ōnis, m. *Milo, a famous Roman.*

**Miltiadēs**, -is, m. *Miltiades, a Greek general.*

**mīmus**, -ī, m. *mimic; farce.*

**Minerva**, -ae, f. *Minerva, goddess of wisdom.*

**minor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *threaten.*

**minor**, -us, adj. *smaller.* (207.)

**Minturnae**, -ārum, f. plur. *Min-*  
*turnae, a town in Campania.*

**mīrābilis**, -e, adj. [mīror], *to be*  
*wondered at; wonderful, ex-*  
*traordinary.* ADMIRABLE.

**mīrōr**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wonder, wonder at, admire.*

**miser**, -era, -erum, adj. *wretched, unhappy, miserable.*

**miseria**, -ae, f. [miser], *wretchedness, misery.*

**mittō**, -ere, mīsi, missus, *send.*  
MISSION.

**moenia**, -ium, n. [mūniō], *walls (of a city).*

**molestus**, -a, -um, adj. [mōlēs, *pile*], *troublesome, tiresome.*  
MOLEST.

**moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *remind, advise, warn.* (512.) MONITOR.  
**mōns**, montis, m. *mountain, hill.*  
Cf. collis.

**monumentum**, -ī, n. [moneō], *monument.* (346, a.)

**mora**, -ae, f. *delay.*

**morior**, -ī, mortuus sum (fut. part. moritūrus), [mors], *die.*

**mors**, mortis, f. (morior), *death.*  
MORTAL.

**mōs**, mōris, m. *manner, habit, custom.* MORAL.

**moveō**, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*

**mox**, adv. *soon, presently.*

**mulier**, -eris, f. *woman.* Cf. fēmina.

**multus**, -a, -um, adj. *much, many.* (207.)

**mūniō**, -īre, -ivī, -itus [moenia], *fortify, defend.*

**mūnus**, -eris, n. *duty, office.*

**mūrus**, -ī, m. *wall.*

**Mūsa**, -ae, f. *Muse.*

**mūtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *change, alter.* MUTATION.

**nam**, conj. *for.*

**nārrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *tell, relate, narrate.*

**nāscor**, -ī, nātus sum, *be born.*

**Nāsica**, -ae, m. *Nasica, surname of one of the Scipios.*

**nātiō**, -ōnis, f. [nāscor], *race, nation.*

**nātū** (abl. of nātus), [nāscor], *by birth, in age.*

**nauta**, -ae, m. [for nāvita; nāvis], *sailor.*

**nāvālis**, -e, adj. [nāvis], *naval.*

**nāvis**, -is, f. *ship.* (149.) NAVAL.  
Pages 79, 88.

**nē**, conj. *that not, that; lest; w. hortatory subjunctive, not.*

**-ne**, interrog. adv. enclitic. (9, 3.)  
Cf. nōnne and num.

**necō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *kill, slay.*  
Cf. interficiō and occidō.

**nectō**, -ere, nexuī, nexus, *bind, weave.* CONNECT.

**neg-legō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [nec], *disregard, neglect.*

**negō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *say not; deny, refuse.*

**nēmō**, -inī (dat.), m. and f. [nē, homō], (no gen. or abl.), *no one, nobody.*

**nē-quāquam**, adv. *by no means, not at all.*

**ne-que or nec**, conj. *and not, nor; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.*

**neuter**, -tra, -trum, adj. *neither (of two).* (291.) NEUTRAL.

**niger**, -gra, -grum, adj. *black.* Cf. āter. NEGRO.

**nihil**, n., indecl. *nothing.* NIHILIST.

**Nilus**, -ī, m. the *Nile.*

ni-si, conj. *if not, unless, except.*

nix, nivis, f. *snow.* (499.)

nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōscō], *well-known, of high birth; noble.*

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *do harm to, hurt, injure; w. dat. NOXIOUS.* Cf. obsum.

Nōla, -ae, f. *Nola, a town in Campania.*

nōlō, nolle, nōluī, — [nē, volō], *be unwilling, will not, not wish.* (519.)

nōmen, -inis, n. [nōscō], (*that by which a thing is known*), *name.*

NOMINAL.

nōn, adv. [nē, ūnūm], *not.*

nōn-ne, interrog. adv. *expecting an affirmative answer, not.* Cf. -ne and num.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *learn, know.* P. nōtus, -a, -um, as adj. *known.*

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron. *our, ours.* Nostri, *our men.*

novus, -a, -um, adj. *new.* NOVELTY.

nox, noctis, f. *night.* (152.) NOCTURNAL.

nūbēs, -is, f. *cloud.* (148.)

nūdus, -a, -um, adj. *unclothed, stripped; nude.*

nūllus, -a, -um, adj. [nē, ūllus], *no, none, no one.* (291.) NULLITY.

num, interrog. adv. *expecting a negative answer, whether.* Cf. nōnne and -ne.

numerus, -ī, m. *number.*

numquam, adv. [nē, umquam], *never.*

nunc, adv. *now.* Cf. iam.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūntius], *report, announce.*

nūntius, -ī, m. [nūntiō], *bearer of news, messenger.*

nūper, adv. [for noviper; novus], *recently, lately.*

Ō, interj. *O, Oh!*

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

ob-eō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, *go to meet; perish, die.* (520.)

ob-linō, -ere, -lēvī, -litus, *daub, smear, defile.*

obliviscor, -ī, oblitus sum, *forget.* OBLIVIOUS.

obses, -idis, m. and f. [ob, sedeō, sit], (*one who sits or remains as a pledge*), *hostage.*

ob-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *be against, be opposed to; injure; w. dat.* (516.) Cf. noceō.

ob-temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *comply with, yield to; w. dat.*

obviam, adv. *in the way; obviam fiō, meet; w. dat.*

ob-volvō, -ere, -ī, -volūtus, *wrap around, cover up.*

oc-cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus [ob, caedō, cut], *cut down, kill.* Cf. necō and interficiō.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, capiō], *take possession of, seize; occupy.* Cf. potior.

oc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [ob], *run to meet; meet, fall in with.*

Ocelum, -ī, n. *Ocelum, a town in Hither Gaul.*

of-fendō, -ere, -dī, -sus [ob], *strike against; come upon, find.*

**officium**, -ī, n. [opus, faciō], *service, kindness*.

**ōlim**, adv. [olle, old form of ille], *(at that time); formerly, once; once upon a time*. Cf. aliquandō.

**omnis**, -e, adj. *whole, all, every*. Cf. tōtus.

**onus**, -eris, n. *load, burden*.

**onustus**, -a, -um; adj. [onus], *laden, loaded*.

**opera**, -ae, f. [opus], *labor, care; operam dō, try*. Cf. labor.

**oppidānus**, -ī, m. [oppidum], *townsman*.

**oppidum**, -ī, n. *town*.

**op-pūgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob], *attack, assault, besiege*. Cf. expūgnō.

[ops], opis, f. *aid, help*.

**optimus**, -a, -um, adj. *best*. (207.)  
OPTIMIST.

**opus**, -eris, n. *work, labor*. Cf. labor.

**ōrātor**, -ōris, m. [ōrō, *speak*], *orator*.

**orbis**, -is, m. *circle, orb; orbis terrārum, earth, world*.

**ōrnāmentum**, -ī, n. [ōrnō], *(that which adorns), ornament, jewel*.

**ōrnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *adorn, ornament, deck*.

**os-tendō**, -ere, -dī, -tus [ob(s)], *stretch out; show, display*.

**ōtium**, -ī, n. *leisure, idleness*.

**ovis**, -is, f. *sheep*.

**ovō**, -āre, —, —, *exult; triumph*.

**ōvum**, -ī, n. *egg*.

**pācō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pāx], *make quiet, subdue*. Cf. vincō.

**Padus**, -ī, m. *the Po, a river of Italy*.

**paene**, adv. *nearly, almost*.

**paenitentia**, -ae, f. *repentance, penitence*.

**palūs**, -ūdis, f. *swamp, marsh*.

**pār**, paris, adj. *equal*.

**parcō**, -ere, peperci (parsī), par-sus, *spare; w. dat.*

**parēns**, -entis, m. and f. *parent*. (152, a.)

**pārēō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *(come forth, appear), be obedient to, obey; w. dat.*

**pariō**, -ere, peperī, partus, *bring forth, bear; lay*.

**Parmeniō**, -ōnis, m. *Parmenio, one of Alexander's generals*.

**parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *get ready, prepare for*.

**pars**, partis, f. *part, share*.  
PARTIAL.

**parvus**, -a, -um, adj. *small, little*. (207.)

**pāscō**, -ere, pāvi, pāstus, *feed, tend; pasture*.

**passus**, -ūs, m. [pateō], *(a stretching out of the feet in walking), step, pace; mille passuum, mile*.

**pater**, -tris, m. *father*. (138.)  
PATERNAL.

**patienter**, adv. [patiēns, *patient*], *patiently, with patience*.

**patientia**, -ae, f. [patior, *bear*], *patience*.

**patria**, -ae, f. [patrius, sc. terra; pater], *fatherland, native land, country*. PATRIOTISM.

**paucus**, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *few, little*. PAUCITY.

**paulō**, adv. [paulus], *by a little, little.*

**paulum**, adv. [paulus], *a little, somewhat.*

**pāx**, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.), *peace.* PACIFY.

**peccō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *make a mistake, commit (a fault), sin.*

**pectus**, -oris, n. *breast.*

**pecūnia**, -ae, f. [pecus, *cattle*], *money.* PECUNIARY.

**pedes**, -itis, m. [pēs], *foot-soldier.*  
**peditātus**, -ūs, m. [pedes], *infantry.*

**pēior**, -ius, adj. *worse.* (207.)

**pellō**, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive away; repel.*

**pēnsūm**, -ī, n. [pendō, *weigh*], (*what is weighed out, e.g. wool, as a task for spinning*), *task; lesson, exercise.*

**per**, prep. w. acc., *through, by, by means of, on account of.*

**pēra**, -ae, f. *bag, wallet.*

**per-agrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ager], *wander through, pass over, traverse.*

**per-contor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *ask, inquire.*

**per-dō**, -ere, -didi, -ditus, *lose.*

**per-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *spread abroad.* (521.)

**per-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *accomplish; perfect.*

**per-fruor**, -ī, -fructus sum, *enjoy thoroughly, enjoy; w. abl.*

**periculum**, -ī, n. *trial, attempt; risk, danger, peril.*

**perītus**, -a, -um, adj. [p. of perior, *try*], (*having tried*), *skilful.*

**per-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus,

*allow, grant, suffer, permit; w. dat.*

**Persae**, -ārum, m. *the Persians.*

**per-sequor**, -ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue.*

**per-stō**, -stāre, -stitī, stātūrus, *stand fast, persist.*

**per-stringō**, -ere, -strinxī, -strictus, *bind closely; affect deeply, thrill.*

**per-suādeō**, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade; w. dat.*

**per-terreō**, -ēre, —, -itus, *thoroughly frighten.*

**pertinācia**, -ae, f. *perseverance; obstinacy, pertinacity.*

**pēs**, pedis, m. *foot.* (130.) PEDAL.

**pessimus**, -a, -um, adj. *worst.*

(207.) PESSIMIST.

**petō**, -ere, -ivī (-iī), -ītus, *seek, demand, beg; attack.* PETITION. Cf. rogō.

**pharetra**, -ae, f. *quiver.*

**Philotimus**, -ī, m. *Philotimus.*

**piger**, -gra, -grum, adj. *slow, lazy.*

**pigritia**, -ae, f. [piger], *laziness, sloth.*

**pīlum**, -ī, n. *javelin.* Page 102.

**placeō**, -ere, -uī, -itus, *please; w. dat.*

**plāga**, -ae, f. *stroke, blow, thrust.*

**plānitīēs**, -ēī, f. [plānus, *even, level*], (*a flatness*), *level ground, plain.*

**plūrimus**, -a, -um, adj. *most, very many.* (207.)

**plūs**, plūris, adj. *more.* (208.)

**Plūto**, -ōnis, m. *Pluto, god of the lower world.*

**pōculum**, -ī, n. *cup, bowl.* Page 69.

**poena**, -ae, f. [pūniō], *quit-money; fine, punishment.* PENAL.



**Poenus**, -ī, m. *a Carthaginian.*

**poēta**, -ae, m. *poet.*

**polliceor**, -ēri, -itus sum, *promise.*

**Pompēius**, -ēi, m. *Pompey, a famous Roman general.*

**pōnō**, -ere, posuī, positus, *put, place, set, pitch (camp).* POSITION.

**pōns**, pōntis, m. *bridge.*

**Popēdius**, -ī, m. *Popedius.*

**populus**, -ī, m. *people.*

**Porcius**, -ī, m. *Porcius, family name of Cato.*

**porta**, -ae, f. *gate, door.* PORTAL.

**portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry, bring.* Cf. ferō and vehō.

**portus**, -ūs, m. *harbor, port.* (231.)

**possum**, posse, potuī, — [potis, *able, sum*], *be able, can*; plūrimum posse, *be very powerful, have most influence.* (296, 517.)

**post**, prep. w. acc., *after, behind*; as adv., *afterwards.*

**post-eā**, adv. *afterwards.*

**[posterus]**, -a, -um, adj. [post], *following, next.* (199.)

**post-quam**, conj. *after.*

**potior**, -īrī, -itus sum [potis, *able*], *become master of, get, get possession of*; w. gen. or abl.

**praebeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [prae, habēō], *hold forth, offer, furnish*; *cause, render.*

**prae-cinō**, -ere, -cinuī, — [canō, *sing*], *play before.*

**prae-clārus**, -a, -um, adj. *very splendid, glorious.*

**praeda**, -ae, f. *booty, spoil, prey.*

PREDATORY.

**prae-dicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prae, dicō, -āre, *make known*], *proclaim, boast.*

**prae-ferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *carry before.* (521.)

**prae-lūcēō**, -ēre, -xī, —, *shine before, light the way before.*

**praemium**, -ī, n. *reward, prize.* PREMIUM.

**praesidium**, -ī, n. [prae, sedēō, *sit before*], *defense, help, protection.*

**prae-stō**, -stāre, -stitī, -stitus, *stand out, surpass, be superior to.*

**prae-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *be before, be at the head of, command*; w. dat. (516.)

**praeter**, prep. w. acc., *beyond, besides, except.*

**praetextus**, -a, -um, adj. [p. of praetexō, *fringe*], *bordered*; toga praetexta, *toga with purple border, worn by the higher magistrates and by free-born children.* Page 191.

**prātum**, -ī, n. *meadow.*

**pretiōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [pretium, *price*], *precious.*

**[prex, precis]**, f. (used mostly in plur.), *prayer, entreaty.*

**primus**, -a, -um, adj. *first, foremost.* (200.) PRIME.

**prīnceps**, -cipis, m. [prīmus, capiō], *(taking the first place), chief, leader.* (126.) PRINCE.

**prius**, adv. [prior], *before, sooner, previously.*

**prius-quam**, conj. *sooner than, before.*

**prō**, prep. w. abl., *before, in behalf of, for*; *considering.*

prō, interj. *O!*

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, —, *go forward, advance, proceed.* Cf. prōgredior.

procul, adv. *far, afar off.*

proelium, -i, n. *battle, combat.* Cf. pūgna.

prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring forth.* (521.)

proficiscor, -i, -fectus sum, *set out, march, go.* Cf. exeō.

prō-gredior, -i, -gressus sum [*gradior, step*], *go forward, advance, progress.* Cf. prō-cēdō.

prope, prep. w. acc., *near, near to;* adv. *close at hand, nearly.*

properē, adv. *hastily, quickly.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten.*

propior, -ius, adj. [*prope*], *nearer.* (200.)

propius, adv. [*prope*], *nearer.*

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put before, set forth; make known, declare.* PROPOSE.

prōpositum, -i, n. [*prōpōnō*], *purpose, design, resolution.* PROPOSITION.

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

Prōserpina, -ae, f. *Proserpine, daughter of Ceres.*

prō-siliō, -ire, -uī, — [*siliō*], *leap forward.*

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *be before, be useful to, benefit;* w. dat. (518.)

prōvincia, -ae, f. *province.*

proximus, -a, -um, adj. *nearest, next.* (200.) PROXIMITY.

prūdēns, -entis, adj. [*for prōvi-*

*dēns*], *wise, sagacious, knowing, prudent.* (163.)

prūdēntia, -ae, f. [*prūdēns*], *fore-sight, sagacity, wisdom, prudence.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [*populus*], (*pertaining to the people*), *public.*

Pūblius, -i, m. *Publius, a Roman first name.*

puella, -ae, f. [*dimin. of puer*], *girl, maiden.*

puer, -eri, m. *boy, child.* (57, 61.) PUERILE.

puerulus, -i, m. [*dimin. of puer*], *little boy.*

pūgiō, -ōnis, m. *short dagger.*

pūgna, -ae, f. [*pūgnō*], *battle, contest.* Cf. proelium. PUGNACIOUS.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*pūgna*], *fight.* Cf. dimicō.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj. *beautiful, fair, pretty.*

pulvis, -eris, m. *dust.*

Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj. *Carthaginian.*

pūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus [*poena*], *punish.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, believe, reckon.* Cf. reor.

Pyrrhus, -i, m. *Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, *seek, ask, inquire.* (422.)

quaesō (-ere), (used only in ind. pres. 1st sing. and plur.), [*quaerō*], *beg, pray.*

quam, adv. *than.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj. [*quam*],

*how great, how much; as great as, as much as.*

**quā-rē**, adv. (*on account of which thing*), *wherefore*.

**qua-si**, adv. *as if*.

**quater**, num. adv. [quattuor], *four times*.

**quattuor**, num. adj., indecl. *four*.

**-que**, conj., enclitic, *and*. Cf. *et*, *atque*, and *ac*.

**quī**, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron. *who, which, what, that*. (110.)

**quia**, conj. *because*. Cf. *quod*.

**quidam**, quaedam, quod- or quid-  
dam, indef. pron. *certain, a certain one, a*. (308.)

**quidem**, adv. (never the first word), *indeed, certainly, in truth; nē . . . quidem, not . . . even*.

**quilibet**, quaelibet, quod- or quid-  
libet, indef. pron. *any one* (you please). (308, b.)

**Quīntilius**, -ī, m. *Quintilius, family name of Varus*.

**Quīnctius**, -ī, m. *Quinctius, family name of Cincinnatus*.

**quīndecim**, num. adj., indecl. *fifteen*.

**quīnquāgintā**, num. adj., indecl. [quinque], *fifty*.

**quīnque**, num. adj., indecl. *five*.

**quis** or **quī**, quae, quid or quod, interrog. pron. and adj. *who? which? what?* (105.)

**quisquam**, quidquam (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron. *any, any one (at all)*. (308, b.)

**quisque**, quaeque, quid- or quod-  
que, indef. pron. *each one, each, every*. (308, b.)

**quī-vīs**, quaevis, quod- or quidvis, indef. pron. *any one* (you please). (308, b.)

**quō**, adv. [quī], *whither, where*.

**quod**, conj. *because*. Cf. *quia*.

**quoque**, conj. (after an emphatic word), *also, too*.

**quot**, interrog. and rel. adj., indecl. *how many? as many as*.

**quot-annis**, adv. *every year, yearly*.

**Racilia**, -ae, f. *Racilia*.

**rapīō**, -ere, -uī, -tus, *seize and carry off; snatch, drag*.

**re-cipīō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [capiō], *take back, receive, recover*. Sē recipere, *withdraw, retreat, be-take one's self*.

**re-creō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [creō], *make, refresh, recreate*.

**re-cūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [causa], *decline, refuse*.

**red-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus [re], *give back, return*.

**red-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itus [re(d)], *go back, return*. (520.)

**re-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead back, bring back*. REDUCE.

**rēgīna**, -ae, f. [regō], (*the ruling one*), *queen*.

**rēgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [rēgnum, rēx], *be king; rule, reign*.

**rēgnum**, -ī, n. [rēgnō, rēx], *kingdom, throne*.

**regō**, -ere, rēxī, rēctus [rēx], *rule*. REGENT.

**re-linguō**, -ere, -līquī, -līctus, *leave behind, leave, abandon*. RELINQUISH.

**re-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back, give up*. REMIT.

rēmus, -i, m. *oar*.

re-nuō, -ere, -uī, —, *nod backward; deny, refuse*.

reor, rēri, rātus sum, *reckon, think*. Cf. putō.

re-periō, -ire, repperi, repertus [pariō, *procure*], *find, discover, ascertain*.

re-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring back, win, gain*. Cf. referō.  
REPORT.

re-putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*count over*), *reckon, think over*.

rēs, rei, f. *thing, event, circumstance, affair* (258); rēs pūblica, *republic, state, commonwealth*.

re-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [speciō], *look back*.

re-spondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus (*promise in return*), *answer, reply, respond*.

re-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [statuō, *place*], *replace, restore*.

re-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, —, *come back, return*.

re-vertor, -i, -i, -sus (*deponent in pres., imp., and fut.*), *turn back, return*. REVERT.

re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call back, recall; revoke*.

rēx, rēgis, m. [regō], (*ruler*), *king*. (126.) REGAL.

Rhēnus, -i, m. *the Rhine*.

rictus, -ūs, m. [ringor, *open the mouth*], *jaws wide open, jaws*.

rideō, -ēre, risi, risus, *laugh*. Cf. cachinnō. DERIDE.

rōbur, -oris, n. *oak; strength*.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, question*.

Rōma, -ae, f. *Rome*.

Rōmānus, -i, m. [Rōma], *a Roman*.

Rōmulus, -i, m. *Romulus, first king of Rome*.

rosa, -ae, f. *rose*.

rōstrum, -i, n. [rōdō, *gnaw*], *beak of a vessel*. ROSTRUM.

Page 39.

rūrī (loc. of rūs), *in the country*.

rūs, rūris, n. *the country*. (269, a.)

rūsticus, -i, m. [rūs], *countryman, peasant*. RUSTIC.

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. *the Sabines*.

saepe, adv. *often, frequently*.

sagitta, -ae, f. *arrow*.

salūs, -ūtis, f. *safety, welfare*.

SALUTARY.

sapiēns, -entis, adj. [sapiō, *be wise*], *wise, sensible*.

schola, -ae, f. *school*.

scientia, -ae, f. [sciō], *knowledge, skill*.

sciō, -ire, scīvī, scītus, *know, know how*. SCIENCE.

Scīpiō, -ōnis, m. *Scipio, a famous Roman general*. Page 55.

scribō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write*. SCRIPTURE.

scrīptor, -ōris, m. [scribō], *writer, author*.

scūtum, -i, n. *shield*. Page 76.

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor], *following, next; second*.

sed, conj. *but*. Cf. autem.

sēmentis, -is, f. *a sowing*.

semper, adv. *always, ever*.

sempiternus, -a, -um, adj. [semper], *everlasting*.

senātor, -ōris, m. [senex], *senator*.

**senātus**, -ūs, m. [senex], *council of elders, senate.*

**senectūs**, -ūtis, f. [senex], *old age.*

**senex**, senis, adj. *old*; noun, *old man.* (211, 499.) **SENILE.**

**sententia**, -ae, f. [sentiō], *opinion; purpose.*

**sentiō**, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, know (by the senses), see, perceive.*

**septem**, num. adj., indecl. *seven.*

**septen-decim**, num. adj., indecl. [decem], *seventeen.*

**septuāgēsīmus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [septuāgintā], *seventieth.*

**sequor**, -ī, secūtus sum, *follow.*

**sermō**, -ōnis, m. *speech, conversation.* **SERMON.**

**serō**, -ere, sēvī, satus, *sow.*

**serta**, -ōrum, n. [serō, *plait*], *garlands, wreaths of flowers.*

**sērus**, -a, -um, adj. *late.*

**servō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, keep, preserve.*

**servus**, -ī, m. [serviō], *slave, servant.*

**sex**, num. adj., indecl. *six.*

**sexāgintā**, num. adj., indecl. [sex], *sixty.*

**sextus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [sex], *sixth.*

**Sextus**, -ī, m. *Sextus, a Roman first name.*

**sī**, conj. *if, whether.*

**sic**, adv. *so, thus.* Cf. adeō, ita, and tam.

**Sicilia**, -ae, f. *Sicily.*

**sīgnum**, -ī, n. *mark, sign, signal.*

Page 105.

**silva**, -ae, f. *wood, forest.* **SILVAN.**

**similis**, -e, adj. [simul], *like, resembling, similar.* (198.)

**simul**, adv. [similis], *at the same time.*

**sine**, prep. w. abl., *without.*

**singulī**, -ae, -a, adj. *one at a time, one on each side, single, separate.*

**sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj. *left (hand).* **SINISTER.**

**Sōcratēs**, -is, m. *Socrates, a famous Greek philosopher.*

**sōl**, sōlis, m. (no gen. plur.), *sun.* **SOLAR.**

**Sōl**, Sōlis, m. *the Sun-god.*

**soleō**, -ēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed, be wont.* (362, a.)

**solitus**, -a, -um, adj. [soleō], *usual, customary.*

**sōlum**, adv. [sōlus], *alone, only.*

**sōlus**, -a, -um, adj. *alone, single; sole.* (291.)

**solvō**, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loose, loosen; break.* **SOLVE.**

**somnus**, -ī, m. *sleep.*

**spargō**, -ere, -sī, -sus, *strew, scatter.* **SPARSE.**

**spatium**, -ī, n. *room, space.*

**speciēs** (-ēī), f. *sight, appearance, pretense.*

**spectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [speciō, *look*], *look at, behold, witness.*

**SPECTACLE.**

**speculum**, -ī, n. *looking-glass, mirror.*

**spērō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs], *hope, hope for.*

**spēs**, speī, f. [spērō], *hope.*

**spoliō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rob, plunder, spoil, despoil.*

**statim**, adv. [stō], *(standing*

- there), on the spot, immediately, at once.*
- statua**, -ae, f. [statuō, *set*], (*the thing set up*), *statue*.
- statura**, -ae, f. [stō], *stature*.
- status**, -ūs, m. [stō], *station, position, condition*.
- stō**, stāre, stetī, *status, stand*.
- strepitus**, -ūs, m. *din, applause*.
- stringō**, -ere, strinxī, strictus, *draw tight; draw*.
- studeō**, -ēre, -uī, — [studium], *be eager, strive earnestly, study*.
- studium**, -ī, n. [studeō], *zeal, eagerness; study*.
- stultus**, -a, -um, adj. *foolish*.
- sub**, prep. w. acc. and abl., *under, up to*.
- subeō**, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go under or up to, enter; undergo*. (520.)
- subitō**, adv. [subitus], *suddenly, unexpectedly*.
- subitus**, -a, -um, adj. [subeō], *sudden*.
- sub-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *let down; let grow*.
- sub-siliō**, -īre, -uī, — [saliō, *leap*], *jump up*.
- sub-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (*come to one's relief*), *help, aid, assist*.
- suc-currō**, -ere, -currī, -cursus [sub], (*run up to*), *help, aid, succor*.
- sūdor**, -ōris, m. *sweat*.
- suī**, reflex. pron. *of himself (herself, itself, themselves)*. (245.)
- sum**, esse, fui, futūrus, *be, exist*. (516.)
- summus**, -a, -um, adj. *highest, greatest*. (199.) CONSUMMATE.
- sūmō**, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, take up; assume*.
- super**, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, upon*.
- super-iaciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw over, cast upon*.
- superior**, -ius, adj. *higher, superior*. (199.)
- superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [super], *pass over; surpass, outdo, overcome, conquer*.
- super-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *be over, be left over; survive*. (516.)
- superus**, -a, -um, adj. [super], *above*. (199.)
- supplicātiō**, -ōnis, f. [supplicō, *kneel down*], *supplication; thanksgiving*.
- suprēmus**, -a, -um, adj. *last*. (199.)
- sus-pendō**, -ere, -dī, -pēnsus [sub, pendō, *hang*], *hang up, hang, suspend*.
- su-spīcor**, -ārī, -ātus sum [su-spiciō, *look askance at*], *suspect, mistrust*.
- sus-tineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [sub, teneō], *hold up, bear, endure; sustain*.
- suus**, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron. reflex. [suī], *his, her, hers, its, theirs, their*. (247.)
- T.**, abbreviation of *Titus*.
- talentum**, -ī, n. *talent, a sum of money* (\$1132). [ita, and sic.
- tam**, adv. *so, so much*. Cf. adeō,
- tamen**, adv. *yet, but, nevertheless*.
- tandem**, adv. [tam], (*just so far*), *at length, finally*.
- tangō**, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch*.
- TANGENT**.

**tantum**, adv. [tantus], *only*.  
**tantus**, -a, -um, adj. *so great, such*.  
**tardō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *delay, hinder*.  
**tegō**, -ere, tēxi, tēctus, *cover*.  
**tēlum**, -ī, n. *weapon*.  
**temerē**, adv. *rashly, inconsiderately*.  
**templum**, -ī, n. *temple*. Page 93.  
**tempus**, -oris, n. *time*. TEMPORAL.  
**teneō**, -ēre, -uī, tentus, *hold, keep, have*.  
**tener**, -erā, -erum, adj. *soft, delicate, tender*.  
**tentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *try, attempt*.  
**ter**, num. adv. [trēs], *three times, thrice*.  
**Terentia**, -ae, f. *Terentia, Cicero's wife*.  
**tergum**, -ī, n. *back*.  
**ternī**, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [trēs], *three each, three on each side, three*.  
**terra**, -ae, f. *earth, land*. TERRACE.  
**terreō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [terror], *frighten, alarm, terrify*.  
**terrestris**, -e, adj. [terra], *of the land, land*. TERRESTRIAL.  
**terrītus**, -a, -um, adj. [p. of terreō], *frightened*.  
**terror**, -ōris, m. [terreō], *terror, alarm*.  
**tertius**, -a, -um, num. adj. [trēs], *third*.  
**testūdō**, -inis, f. [testa, shell], *testoise; shed or covering to protect besiegers, testudo*. Page 148.  
**Themistoclēs**, -is, m. *Themistocles, a famous Athenian*.

**Tiberis**, -is, m. (acc. in -im), *the Tiber*.  
**Tiberius**, -ī, m. *Tiberius, a Roman first name*.  
**tībicen**, -inis, m. [tibia, pipe, canō, sing], *piper*.  
**Ticinus**, -ī, m. *the Ticinus, a river of Italy*.  
**timeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear, be afraid of*. TIMID.  
**Titus**, -ī, m. *Titus, a Roman first name*.  
**toga**, -ae, f. *toga*. Page 191.  
**togātus**, -a, -um, adj. [toga], *clad in the toga*.  
**tolerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *bear, endure*. TOLERATE.  
**tollō**, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *raise, pick up*.  
**tōnsor**, -ōris, m. [tondeō, shear], *barber*.  
**tot**, adj., indecl. *so many*. Cf. quot.  
**tōtus**, -a, -um, adj. *whole, all, entire*. (291.) TOTAL.  
**trahō**, -ere, trāxi, trāctus, *draw, drag*.  
**trā-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [trāns, iaciō], *throw across, pierce*.  
**Trallēs**, -ium, f. *Tralles, a town in Asia*.  
**tranquillus**, -a, -um, adj. *calm, tranquil*.  
**trāns**, prep. w. acc., *across, beyond, over, the other side of*.  
**trāns-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go over, cross*. (520.) TRANSIENT.  
**trans-igō**, -ere, -ēgī, -actus [agō], *drive through; finish, transact*.  
**tre-decim**, num. adj. [trēs, decem], *thirteen*.

tremō, -ere, -uī, —, *shake, tremble.*

trēs, tria, num. adj. *three.* (284.)

trigeminī, -ōrum, m. *triplets.*

trīgintā, num. adj., indecl. [trēs], *thirty.*

tristis, -e, adj. *sad, gloomy.*

triumphālis, -e, adj. [triumphus], *triumphal, having enjoyed a triumph.*

triumphō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [triumphus], *celebrate a triumph.*

triumphus, -ī, m. [triumpho], *triumph.*

trucidō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *kill.*

tū, pers. pron. *thou, you.* (245.)

tuba, -ae, f. *trumpet.* (19.) Page 13.

tubicen, -inis, m. [tuba, canō, *sing*], *trumpeter.*

tugurium, -ī, n. *hut, cottage.*

Tullus Hostilius, -ī, m. *Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome.*

tum, adv. *at that time, then.*

tumultus, -ūs, m. *uproar, confusion, tumult.*

tunc, adv. [tum], *at that time, then.*

turpis, -e, adj. *ugly, foul; base, disgraceful, shameful.*

tūtus, -a, -um, adj. *safe.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron. *thy, thine; your, yours* (of only one person). (247.)

ubi, adv. *where, when.*

ūllus, -a, -um, adj. [for ūnulus, dimin. of ūnus], *any, any one.* (291.)

ūlterior, -ius, adj. (no positive), *further.* (200.)

ūltimus, -a, -um, adj. *furthest, last.* (200.) ULTIMATE.

umbra, -ae, f. *shade.* UMBRELLA.

umerus, -ī, m. *shoulder.*

unde, adv. *whence.*

undique, adv. *from all parts, on all sides, everywhere.*

ūnicus, -a, -um, adj. [ūnus], *only.*

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj. *one; alone.* (284.)

urbs, -is, f. *city.* (152.) SUB-URBS.

ūsus, -ūs, m. *use, benefit.*

ut or uti, adv. and conj. *how, as, when; that, in order that, so that.*

uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron. *which (of two)?* (291.)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. *each (of two), both.* (291.)

ūtilis, -e, adj. [ūtor], *useful, advantageous.* UTILITY.

uti-nam, adv. *would that! O that! I wish that.*

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *use, employ;* w. abl. (361.)

utrimque, adv. *on both sides.*

ūva, -ae, f. *grape, bunch of grapes.*

uxor, -ōris, f. *wife.*

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. *empty, vacant, destitute.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be strong, be in good health; valē, fare-well, good-bye.*

valētūdō, -inis, f. [valeō], *state of health, health.*

validus, -a, -um, adj. [valeō], *strong, stout, sturdy.* VALID.

Vārus, -ī, m. *Varus, one of Augustus's generals.*



**vāstō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vāstus, *waste, desolate*], *lay waste, ravage*.

**vēhō**, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, *carry, draw, convey*; pass. *ride*. **VEHICLE**.

**vēlōcitās**, -ātis, f. [vēlōx], *swiftness, velocity*.

**vel-ut**, adv. *just as*.

**vēnātor**, -ōris, m. [vēnor, *hunt*], *hunter*.

**venēnum**, -ī, n. *poison*. **VENOM**.

**veniō**, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *come*.

**ventus**, -ī, m. *wind*.

**venustus**, -a, -um, adj. *charming, beautiful, graceful*.

**vēr**, vēris, n. *spring*. **VERNAL**.

**verbum**, -ī, n. *word*. **VERB**.

**Vergilius**, -ī, m. *Vergil, a famous Roman poet*.

**vēritās**, -ātis, f. [vērus], *truth, verity*.

**vertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn, change*.

**vērus**, -a, -um, adj. *true, real*.

**Vesta**, -ae, f. *Vesta, a goddess*.

**vester**, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron. *your, yours* (of more than one person). (247.)

**vestimentum**, -ī, n. [vestiō], *clothing*.

**vestiō**, -īre, -īvi, -ītus [vestis, *garment*], *clothe*.

**vetus**, -eris, adj. *old*. (175, 207, 211.) **VETERAN**.

**vēxillum**, -ī, n. *signal-flag*.

**via**, -ae, f. *way, road, street*.

**vicinus**, -a, -um, adj. [vicus, *village*], *near, neighboring*; as a noun, *neighbor*. **VICINITY**.

**victor**, -ōris, m. [vi(n)cō], *conqueror, victor*. (138.)

**Victōria**, -ae, f. *Victoria*.

**victōria**, -ae, f. [victor], *victory*.

**videō**, -ēre, vidī, vīsus, *see, perceive*; pass. *be seen, seem*. **VISION**.

**vīginti**, num. adj., indecl. *twenty*.

**vinciō**, -īre, vinxī, vinctus, *bind*.

**vincō**, -ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, defeat*.

**vīnum**, -ī, n. *wine*.

**vir**, virī, m. *man, hero*. (57, 141.)

**virtūs**, -ūtis, f. [vir], *manliness, courage, bravery*; *virtue*.

**vīs**, vīs, f. (gen. and dat. rare), *strength, power*. (499.)

**vīta**, -ae, f. [vīvō], *life*; *vitam agō*, *pass life*. **VITAL**.

**vītis**, -is, f. *vine*.

**vitium**, -ī, n. [vītis], (*a moral twist*), *fault, blemish, vice*. Cf. *culpa*.

**vituperō**, -āre, -āvi, —, *blame, censure*. Cf. *culpō*. **VITUPERATION**.

**vīvō**, -ere, vixī, —, *live*. Cf. *habitō* and *incolō*. **VIVID**.

**vīvus**, -a, -um, adj. [vīvō], *alive, living*.

**vix**, adv. *hardly, with difficulty*.

**vōci-feror**, -ārī, -ātus sum [vōx, *ferō*], *cry out, exclaim*; *vociferate*.

**vocō**, -āre, āvi, -ātus [vōx], *call*.

**volō**, velle, voluī, —, *wish, be willing, desire, intend*. (519.)

**volō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, *fly*.

**Volscī**, -ōrum, the *Volscians*.

**voluptās**, -ātis, f. [volō], *pleasure, enjoyment*.

**voveō**, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *vow, promise solemnly*.

**vōx**, vōcis, f. [vocō], *voice*,  
*word*.

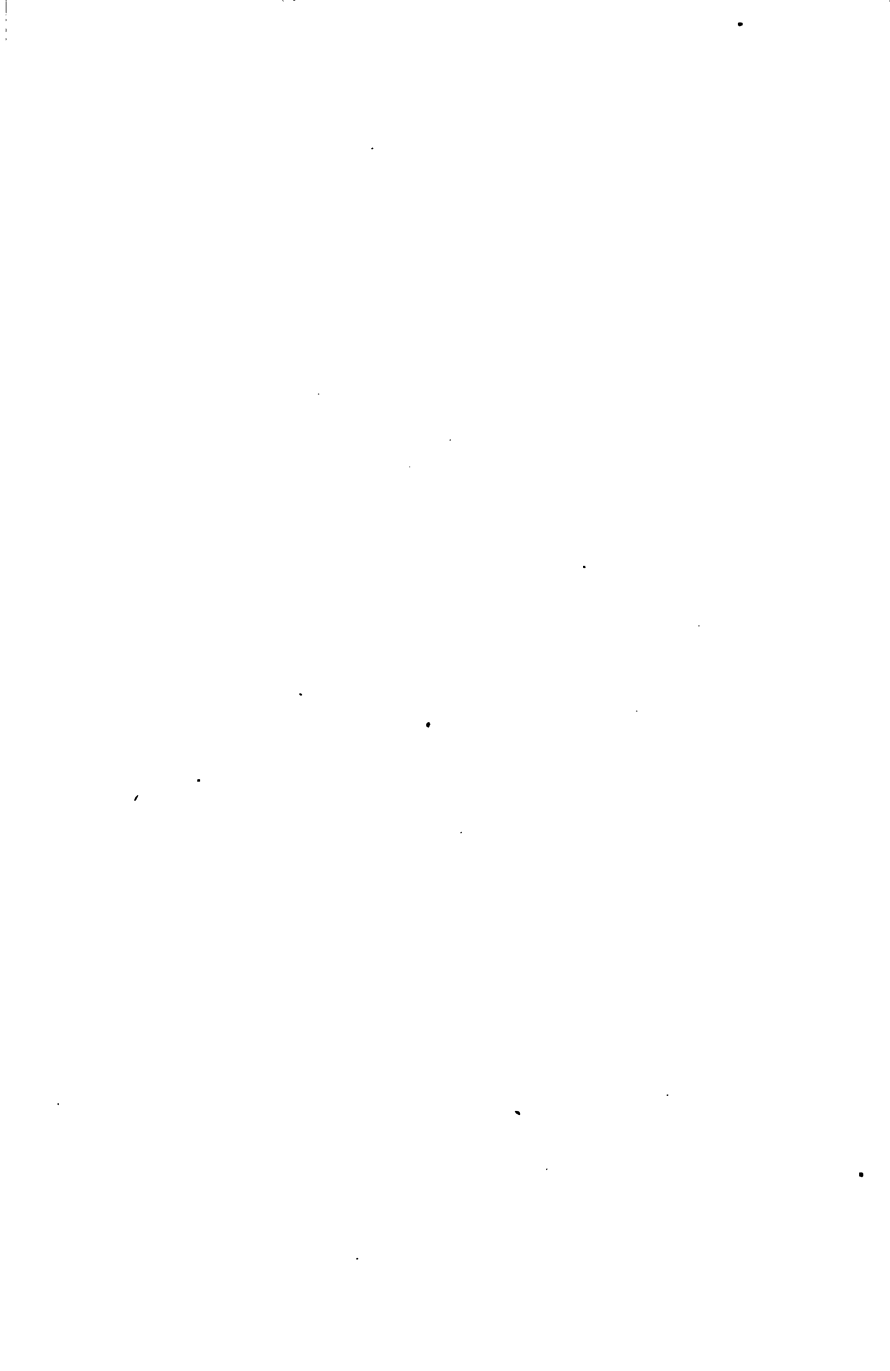
**vulnerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vulnus],  
*wound, hurt, injure*. VULNER-  
ABLE.

**vulnus**, -eris, n. [vulnerō], *wound*.

**vulpēs**, -is, f. *fox*.

**vultus**, -ūs, m. *countenance, looks*,  
*features*.

**Zama**, -ae, f. *Zama, a town in*  
*Africa*.



## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

---

For the principal parts of verbs and other details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary or to the special vocabularies.

- a**, art., commonly not translated; **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** (**quiddam**) (308).  
**abandon**, **relinquō**, 3.  
**able** (be), **possum** (296, a, 517).  
**about**, **dē**, *w. abl.*  
**absent** (be), **absum** (516).  
**abundance**, **cōpia**, -ae, *f.*  
**abuse**, **abūtor**, 3, *w. abl.*  
**accept**, **accipio**, 3.  
**account of** (on), *abl. of cause.*  
**accuse**, **accūsō**, 1.  
**accustomed** (be), **soleō**, 2 (362).  
**address**, **cōtiōnor**, 1.  
**admonish**, **moneō**, 2 (512).  
**adorn**, **ōrnō**, 1.  
**advice**, **cōnsilium**, -ī, *n.*  
**advise**, **moneō**, 2 (512).  
**Africa**, **Āfrica**, -ae, *f.*  
**Africanus**, **Āfricānus**, -ī, *m.*  
**after**, **post**, *w. acc.*; **cum**, *w. subj.*;  
     sometimes implied in participle.  
**afterwards**, **postea**, **deinde**.  
**aid**, **iuvō**, 1.  
**alarm**, *n.* **terror**, -ōris, *m.*  
**alarm**, *v.* **terreō**, 2.      **alas!** **ēheu!**  
**Alexander**, **Alexander**, -drī, *m.*  
**all**, **omnis**, -e; **tōtus**, -a, -um (292).  
**alone**, **sōlus**, -a, -um; **ūnus**, -a, -um (291).  
**also**, **quoque**.  
**altar**, **āra**, -ae, *f.*  
**although**, **cum**.  
**always**, **semper**.  
**ambassador**, **lĕgātus**, -ī, *m.*  
**ancient**, **antīquus**, -a, -um; **vetus**, -eris (175, 207).  
**and**, **et**; **atque**, *or* **āc**; -que.  
**anger**, **īra**, -ae, *f.*  
**animal**, **animal**, -ālis, *n.* (148).  
**another**, **alius**, -a, -ud (292).  
**any**, **ūllus**, -a, -um (291); **aliquis**, -qua, -quid, *or* -quod (308); **quisquam**, —, **quidquam** (308, b); **quīvis** (308, b).  
**arm**, **armō**, 1.  
**arms**, **arma**, -ōrum, *n.*  
**army**, **exercitus**, -ūs, *m.*  
**around**, **circum**, *w. acc.*  
**arouse**, **incitō**, 1.  
**Arpinum**, **Arpīnum**, -ī, *n.*

arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*  
 art, ars, artis, *f.*  
 as, ut.  
 as to, ut.  
 Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*  
 ask, interrogō, 1; (for), quaerō, 3.  
 assault, *n.* impetus, -ūs, *m.*  
 assault, *v.* oppugnō, 1.  
 at, in, *w. acc. or abl.*; in combina-  
 tion *w. verbs* (*wonder at*, etc.),  
 see the verbs; *w. names of*  
*towns*, locative case (180).  
 at once, statim.  
 attack, *n.* impetus, -ūs, *m.*  
 attack, *v.* oppugnō, 1.  
 away (go), abeō (327); discēdō, 3.  
 away from, ā or ab, *w. abl.*; ē or  
 ex, *w. abl.*  
 back (bring or carry), referō  
 (521); reportō, 1.  
 bad, malus, -a, -um (207).  
 band, manus, -ūs, *f.*  
 barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*  
 battle, pugna, -ae, *f.*; proelium,  
 -ī, *n.*  
 be, sum (516).  
 beak (of a ship), rōstrum, -ī, *n.*  
 bear, ferō (521); portō, 1; tolerō,  
 1; (off), abdūcō, 3; auferō (521).  
 beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.  
 because, quod; quia.  
 become, fiō (520).  
 before, ante, *w. acc.*  
 begin, incipiō, 3; ineō (521).  
 Belgae, Belgae, -ārum, *m.*  
 believe, crēdō, 3, *w. dat.*  
 benefit, prōsum (518), *w. dat.*  
 besiege, obsideō, 2; oppugnō, 1.  
 best, optimus, -a, -um (207).  
 better, melior, -us (207).

between, inter, *w. acc.*  
 bid, iubeō, 2.  
 big, māgnus, -a, -um.  
 bind, vinciō, 4.  
 bird, avis, -is, *f.* (148, c).  
 black, niger, -gra, -grum.  
 blame, culpa, -ae, *f.*  
 boat, cymba, -ae, *f.*  
 body, corpus, -oris, *n.*  
 boldly, cum audāciā.  
 book, liber, -brī, *m.*  
 booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*  
 born (be), nāscor, 3.  
 both (each of two), uterque, utra-  
 que, utrumque (200); both . . .  
 and, et . . . et.  
 bow, arcus, -ūs, *m.* (231).  
 boy, puer, -erī, *m.*  
 brave, fortis, -e.  
 bravely, fortiter; cum virtūte.  
 bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, *f.*; virtūs,  
 -ūtis, *f.*  
 bring, portō, 1; ferō (521); to-  
 gether), cōferō; (up), educō,  
 1; (back), reportō, 1.  
 Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*  
 broad, lātus, -a, -um.  
 brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*  
 build, aedificō, 1.  
 building, aedificium, -ī, *n.*  
 but, at; autem; sed.  
 by, ā, ab, *w. abl.*; denoting means  
 or instrument, *abl. alone*; some-  
 times implied in participle.  
 Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*  
 call, appellō, 1; vocō, 1; (to-  
 gether), convocō, 1.  
 camp, castra, -ōrum, *n.*  
 can, possum (296, a, 517).  
 captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*

capture, capiō, 3.

Capua, Capua, -ae, *f.*

care, cūra, -ae, *f.*

carefully, cum cūrā.

carry, portō, 1; ferō (521); (away, off), auferō, abdūcō; (back), referō; *carry on war*, bellum gerō.

Carthaginian, Poenus, -ī, *m.*

cause, praebeō, 2.

cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*

certain, (a), quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam) (308); (= *sure*), certus, -a, -um.

change, mūtō, 1.

chief, princeps, -cipis, *m.*

children, puerī, -ōrum, *m.*; liberī, -ōrum, *m.* (61).

Christ, Christus, -ī, *m.*

Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*

circumstance, rēs, rei, *f.* (258).

citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*

citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.* and *f.*

city, urbs, -is, *f.*

close at hand, prope.

clothe, vestiō, 4.

cold, frīgus, -oris, *n.*

come, veniō, 4; (back), reveniō, 4; (out), ēmergō, 3; (together), conveniō, 4.

command, imperō, 1, *w. dat.*; iubeō, 2, *w. acc.*; praesum (516), *w. dat.*

commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*; dux, ducis, *m.* and *f.*

companion, comes, -itis, *m.* and *f.*

comrade, comes, -itis, *m.* and *f.*

conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3.

consul, cōsul, -ulis, *m.*

corn, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*

Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*

correct, corrigō, 3.

country (*fatherland*), patria, -ae, *f.*; terra, -ae, *f.*; (*not city*), rūs, rūris, *n.*

country people, rūsticī, -ōrum, *m.*

courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

course, iter, itineris, *n.* (499).

creature, bēstia, -ae, *f.*

cross, trānseō (520).

cultivate, colō, 3.

cup, pōculum, -ī, *n.*

danger, periculum, -ī, *n.*

dare, audeō, 2 (362).

daring, audācia, -ae, *f.*

daringly, cum audāciā.

Darius, Dārēus, -ī, *m.*

daughter, filia, -ae, *f.* (p. 13, n. 5).

day, diēs, -ēī, *m.* and *f.* (258).

daybreak (at), primā lūce.

dear, cārus, -a, -um.

deck, ōrnō, 1.

decree, dēcernō, 3.

deep, altus, -a, -um.

deer, cerva, -ae, *f.*

defeat, vincō, 3; superō, 1.

defend, dēfendō, 3.

delay, mora, -ae, *f.*

delight, dēlectō, 1.

Delphi, Delphī, -ōrum, *m.*

depart, discēdō, 3; exeō (520).

deputy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

desire, volō (519); cupiō, 3.

despatch, litterae, -arum, *f.*

destroy, dēlēō, 2.

die, morior, 3.

difficult, difficilis, -e (198).

difficulty (with), vix.

diligence, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*

diligent, dīligēns, -entis.

**diligently**, *diligenter*; *cum dīlīgentiā*.

**disgraceful**, *turpis*, -e.

**do**, *faciō*, 3; *agō*, 3.

**doubtful**, *dubius*, -a, -um.

**dove**, *columba*, -ae, *f*.

**draw up**, *instruō*, 3.

**drive**, *agō*, 3; *agitō*, 1.

**Duilius**, *Duilius*, -ī, *m*.

**during**, (= *amid*) *inter*.

**duty**, *mūnus*, -eris, *n*.

**each (one)**, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque* (*quodque*) (308, *b*); (of two), *uterque*, *utroque*, *utrumque* (291).

**eager**, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.

**eagerly**, *cum studiō*.

**eagerness**, *studium*, -ī, *n*.

**earth**, *terra*, -ae, *f*.

**easily**, *facile*.

**easy**, *facilis*, -e (198).

**educate**, *educō*, 1.

**eighth**, *octāvus*, -a, -um.

**elder**, *senior*, -ius (207).

**encourage**, *cohortor*, 1.

**end**, *finis*, -is, *m*. (148, *c*).

**endure**, *tolerō*, 1.

**enemy**, *hostis*, -is, *m*. and *f*.; *inimicus*, -ī, *m*. (149).

**enjoy**, *fruo*, 3, *w. abl*.

**Ennius**, *Ennius*, -ī, *m*.

**enter**, *ineō* (520).

**equal**, *pār*, *paris*.

**escape**, *sē ēripere*.

**especially**, *māximē*.

**Europe**, *Eurōpa*, -ae, *f*.

**even**, *etiam*; *ipse* (304, *g*).

**Fabricius**, *Fabricius*, -ī, *m*.

**fact**, *rēs*, *rei*, *f*. (258).

**fair**, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum.

**faithfully**, *fidēliter*.

**famous**, *clārus*, -a, -um.

**far**, *longē*.

**farmer**, *agricola*, -ae, *m*.

**father**, *pater*, -tris, *m*.

**fault**, *vitium*, -ī, *n*.; *culpa*, -ae, *f*.; *find fault with*, *vituperō*, 1; *culpō*, 1.

**favor**, *faveō*, 2, *w. dat*.

**fear**, *n. terror*, -ōris, *m*.

**fear**, *v. timeō*, 2.

**few**, *pauci*, -ae, -a.

**field**, *ager*, *agri*, *m*.; *in the field*, *militiae* (*loc.*).

**fight**, *pugnō*, 1; *dīmicō*, 1.

**fill up**, *compleō*, 2.

**find**, *reperiō*, 4.

**fine**, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum.

**finish**, *cōficiō*, 3.

**fire**, *ignis*, -is, *m*.

**firmness**, *cōstantia*, -ae, *f*.

**first**, *primus*, -a, -um.

**five hundred**, *quīgentī*, -ae, -a.

**flee**, *fugiō*, 3.

**flight**, *fuga*, -ae, *f*.

**flower**, *flōs*, *flōris*, *m*.

**follow**, *sequor*, 3.

**fond of (be)**, *amō*, 1.

**food**, *cibus*, -ī, *m*.

**foot**, *pēs*, *pedis*, *m*.

**foot-soldier**, *pedes*, -itis, *m*.

**for**, *conj. nam*.

**for**, *sign of dative*; *prep.*, *dē*, *prō*, *w. abl.*; of time, space, purpose, *in*, *w. acc.*

**force**, *manus*, -ūs, *f*.

**forces**, *cōpiae*, -ārum, *f*.

**foresight**, *prudentia*, -ae, *f*.

**forever**, *semper*.

**form**, *faciō*, 3.

**former (the),** ille (100, *e*).  
**fortify,** mūniō, 4.  
**fortune,** fortūna, -ae, *f*.  
**forum,** forum, -ī, *n*.  
**forward (go),** prōcēdō, 3; prō-  
 gredior, 3.  
**free,** liber, -era, -erum.  
**friend,** amicus, -ī, *m*.  
**friendly,** amicus, -a, -um.  
**frighten,** terreō, 2.  
**frightened,** territus, -a, -um.  
**from,** dē, *w. abl.*; away from, ā  
 or ab, *w. abl.*; out of, ē or ex,  
*w. abl.*  
**furnish,** praebeō, 2.  
**further,** ūlterior, -ius (200).  
**gain,** reportō, 1.  
**Galba,** Galba, -ae, *m*.  
**garden,** hortus, -ī, *m*.  
**gate,** porta, -ae, *f*.  
**Gaul,** Gallia, -ae, *f*.  
**Gaul (a),** Gallus, -ī, *m*.  
**general,** dux, ducis, *m.* and *f.*;  
 imperātor, -ōris, *m*.  
**Germans,** Germānī, -ōrum, *m*.  
**get (possession of),** potior, 4, *w.*  
*abl.*; (ready), parō, 1.  
**gift,** dōnum, -ī, *n*.  
**girl,** puella, -ae, *f*.  
**give,** dō, 1.  
**glad,** laetus, -a, -um.  
**go,** eō (520); (forth, out), exeō;  
 (off, away), abeō; discēdō, 3;  
 (on, forward), prōgredior, 3;  
 (up to), subeō.  
**god,** deus, -ī, *m*. (499).  
**goddess,** dea, -ae, *f*. (p. 13, *n*. 5).  
**gold,** aurum, -ī, *n*.  
**golden,** aureus, -a, -um.  
**good,** bonus, -a, -um (500).

**good-bye,** valē, valēte.  
**grain,** frumentum, -ī, *n*.  
**grant,** dō, 1.  
**great,** māgnus, -a, -um (207);  
 ingēns, -entis.  
**greatest,** summus, -a, -um (199).  
**greatly,** māximē.  
**Greece,** Graecia, -ae, *f*.  
**Greek (a),** Graecus, -ī, *m*.  
**ground (on the),** humi (*loc.*).  
**guard,** custodiō, 4.  
**hand,** manus, -ūs, *f*.  
**handsome,** pulcher, -chra, -chrum.  
**Hannibal,** Hannibal, -alis, *m*.  
**happen,** accidō, 3.  
**harbor,** portus, -ūs (231).  
**harm (do),** noceō, 2; obsum (395);  
*w. dat.*  
**hasten,** properō, 1.  
**have,** habeō, 2.  
**he, is** (119); hīc (100); ille (100).  
**head,** caput, -itis, *n*. (126); *be at*  
*the head of,* praesum (516).  
**health,** valētūdō, -inis, *f*.  
**health (be in good),** valeō, 2.  
**hear,** audiō, 4 (515).  
**heavy,** gravis, -e.  
**helmet,** galea, -ae, *f*.  
**help,** iuvō, 1.  
**Helvetia,** Helvētia, -ae, *f*.  
**Helvetians (the),** Helvētīi, -ōrum,  
*m*.  
**Henna,** Henna, -ae, *f*.  
**her,** eius (119); illius (100); *re-*  
*flexive,* suus, -a, -um (248, *θ*).  
**hero,** vir, viri, *m*. (141).  
**hesitate,** dubitō, 1.  
**hide,** lateō, 2.  
**high,** altus, -a, -um; superus, -a,  
 -um (199).



**highest**, summus, -a, -um (199).  
**hill**, collis, -is, *m.*  
**himself**, *see* self.  
**his**, eius (119); illius (100); *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (248, *b*).  
**history**, historia, -ae, *f.*  
**hither**, citerior, -ius (200).  
**hold**, habeo, 2; teneo, 2; contineo, 2.  
**home**, domus, -ūs, *f.* (499); **at home**, domi.  
**hope**, *n.* spēs, -eī, *f.*  
**hope**, *v.* spero, 1.  
**horn**, cornū, -ūs, *n.* (230).  
**horse**, equus, -ī, *m.*  
**horseman, horse-soldier**, eques, -itis, *m.*  
**hostage**, obses, -idis, *m.* and *f.*  
**hour**, hōra, -ae, *f.*  
**house**, domus, -ūs, *f.* (499).  
**hundred**, centum.  
**hunter**, venātor, -ōris, *m.*  
**hurt**, noceo, 2, *w. dat.*  
**I**, ego (245).  
**if**, si; *if not*, nisi.  
**ill**, adv. male (215).  
**in**, in, *w. abl.*  
**incite**, incito, 1.  
**increase**, augeo, 2.  
**industriously**, cum diligentia.  
**industry**, diligentia, -ae, *f.*  
**infantry**, peditēs, -um, *m.*; peditatus, -ūs, *m.*  
**Infernals (the)**, inferī, -ōrum, *m.*  
**inform**, certiorem facio.  
**inhabitant**, incola, -ae, *m.* and *f.*  
**injure**, noceo, 2; obsum (516); *w. dat.*  
**into**, in, *w. acc.*  
**island**, insula, -ae, *f.*

**it, is, ea, id** (119); hīc, ille (100)  
**Italy**, Italia, -ae, *f.*  
**itself**, *see* self.  
**javelin**, pilum, -ī, *n.*  
**jewel**, ornāmentum, -ī, *n.*  
**joy**, gaudium, -ī, *n.*  
**joyfully**, cum gaudiō.  
**Jupiter**, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.* (499).  
**just**, iustus, -a, -um.  
**keep**, habeo, 2; teneo, 2.  
**keep off**, arceo, 2.  
**kill**, neco, 1; interficio, 3.  
**king**, rex, regis, *m.*  
**know**, scio, 4; (not), nescio, 4.  
**known**, notus, -a, -um.  
**Labienu**s, Labienus, -ī, *m.*  
**labor**, *n.* labor, -ōris, *m.*  
**labor**, *v.* labōro, 1.  
**lack**, desum (516); careo, 2.  
**land**, terra, -ae, *f.*  
**large**, magnus, -a, -um (207).  
**last**, suprēmus, -a, -um (199); ultimus, -a, -um (209).  
**latter (the)**, hīc, haec, hōc (100, *e*).  
**laugh**, rideo, 2; (aloud), cachinnō, 1.  
**laziness**, pigritia, -ae, *f.*  
**lazy**, piger, -gra, -grum.  
**lead**, dūco, 3; (out, forth, off), ēdūco, 3.  
**leader**, dux, ducis, *m.* and *f.*; princeps, -ipis, *m.*  
**leaf**, folium, -ī, *n.*  
**learn**, discō, 3.  
**left (hand)**, sinister, -tra, -trum.  
**legate**, lēgatus, -ī, *m.*  
**legion**, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**let**, *sign of subj. or imperative.*

**letter**, epistula, -ae, *f.*; litterae, -ārum, *f.*

**lie** (= *recline*), iaceō, 2.

**lieutenant**, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

**life**, vīta, -ae, *f.*

**light**, *adj.* levis, -e.

**light**, *n.* lūx, lūcis, *f.*

**like**, similis, -e (198.)

**line of battle**, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*

**little**, parvus, -a, -um.

**live**, vivō, 3; habitō, 1.

**long**, longus, -a, -um; *for a long time*, long, diū.

**look** (at), spectō, 1; (out for), cūrō, 1.

**love**, amō, 1 (511).

**lower**, inferior, -ius (199).

**luckily**, fēliciter.

**maiden**, maid, puella, -ae, *f.* (servant), ancilla, -ae, *f.*

**make**, faciō, 3.

**man**, vir, virī, *m.* (57); homō, -inis, *m.* (141).

**many**, multī, -ae, -a.

**march**, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itinēris, *n.* (499).

**Marcus**, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*

**Marius**, Marius, -ī, *m.*

**master**, dominus, -ī, *m.*; magister, -tri, *m.* (61).

**mean**, habēō in animō.

**means** (*by means of*), *use abl.*

**meantime** (*in the*), interim.

**meanwhile**, interim.

**Mercury**, Mercurius, -ī, *m.*

**merry**, laetus, -a, -um.

**messenger**, nūntius, -ī, *m.*

**mind**, animus, -ī, *m.*

**mine**, meus, -a, -um (247).

**Minerva**, Minerva, -ae, *f.*

**money**, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*

**month**, mēnsis, -is, *m.*

**moon**, lūna, -ae, *f.*

**more**, plūs (208); magis.

**most**, plūrimus, -a, -um (207).

**mother**, māter, -tris, *f.*

**mountain**, mōns, montis, *m.*

**mourn**, lūgēō, 2.

**move**, movēō, 2.

**much**, multus, -a, -um (207).

**multitude**, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*

**Muse**, Mūsa, -ae, *f.*

**must**, *expressed by gerundive.*

**my**, meus, -a, -um (247).

**name**, nōmen, -inis, *n.*

**narrow**, angustus, -a, -um.

**Nasica**, Nāsica, -ae, *m.*

**near**, ad, *w. acc.*; prope, *w. acc.*

**near by**, at hand, prope.

**nearer**, propior, -ius (200).

**neighbor**, vicinus, -ī, *m.*

**neither**, neque.

**neither** (of two), neuter, -tra, -trum (291).

**never**, numquam.

**nevertheless**, tamen.

**new**, novus, -a, -um.

**next**, posterus, -a, -um; postrēmus, -a, -um (199).

**nibble**, carpō, 3.

**night**, nox, noctis, *f.*

**Nile** (the), Nilus, -ī, *m.*

**nine**, novem.

**ninth**, nōnus, -a, -um.

**no**, nullus, -a, -um (291).

**nobody**, no one, nēmō, -inis, *m.* and *f.*; *that no one* (*neg. purpose*), nē quis.

**no longer**, iam, *w. neg.*

**nor**, neque.

not, nōn; nē.

nothing, nihil, *indecl.*

now, nunc; iam.

number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

oar, rēmus, -ī, *m.*

obey, pāreō, 2, *w. dat.*

of, *sign of genitive*; dē, *w. abl.*;  
out of, ē or ex, *w. abl.*

offer, *n.* prōpositum, -ī, *n.*

offer, *v.* prōpōnō, 3.

often, saepe.

Oh! O.

old, antiquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris  
(175, 206, 211); (man), senex,  
senis (499).

on, in, *w. abl.*; (of time), *abl.*

once (upon a time), ōlim.

one, ūnus, -a, -um (284); one . . .  
another, alius . . . alius; the one  
. . . the other, alter . . . alter.

only, tantum.

open, aperīō, 4.

order, imperō, 1, *w. dat.*; iubeō,  
2, *w. acc.*; in order to, ut, *w.*  
*subj.*

other, alius, -a, -ud (292); some  
. . . others, alii . . . alii; (of  
two), alter, -era, -erum.

ought, dēbeō, 2; *gerundive.*

our, noster, -tra, -trum.

ourselves, *see self.* [the verbs.

out, in combination w. verbs, *see*  
out of, ē or ex, *w. abl.*

overcome, vincō, 3; superō, 1.

overwhelm, superō, 1.

own (his, her, their), suus, -a,  
-um; (my), meus, -a, -um; (our),  
noster, -tra, -trum; (your),  
vester, -tra, -trum; (thy), tuus,  
-a, -um (247).

parent, parēns, -entis, *m.* and *f.*  
Parmenio, Parmeniō, -ōnis, *m.*

part, pars, partis, *f.*

patience, patientia, -ae, *f.* [entiā.

patiently, patienter; cum pati-

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

peasant, rūsticus, -ī, *m.*

people, populus, -ī, *m.*

perform, fungor, 3, *w. abl.*

peril, periculum, -ī, *n.*

permit, permittō, 3, *w. dat.*

persuade, persuādeō, 2, *w. dat.*

physician, medicus, -ī, *m.*

pitch (camp), pōnō, 3.

place, locus, -ī, *m.* (242); in  
that place, ibi.

plain, plānitēs, -ēī, *f.*

pleasant, grātus, -a, -um.

please, placeō, 2, *w. dat.*

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.

plough, *n.* arātrum, -ī, *n.*

plough, *v.* arō, 1.

pluck, carpō, 3.

Pluto, Plūtō, -ōnis, *m.*

Po (the), Padus, -ī, *m.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*

Pompey, Pompēius, Pompēī, *m.*

poor, miser, -era, -erum.

praise, *n.* laus, laudis, *f.*

praise, *v.* laudō, 1.

prefer, mālō (519).

present (be), adsum (516), *w. dat*

presently, mox.

preserve, cōservō, 1.

pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

Proserpine, Prōserpina, -ae, *f.*

protect, tegō, 3.

province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

prudence, prūdētia, -ae, *f.*

prudent, prūdēns, -entis.

punish, pūniō, 4.

**punishment**, poena, -ae, *f.*  
**purpose** (*for the purpose of*), ut  
 or quī, *w. subj.*; ad, *w. gerund*  
 or *gerundive*; causā, *w. gerund*  
 or *gerundive*; *supine*.  
**put**, pōnō, 3; (**to death**), inter-  
 ficiō, 3; (**to flight**), fugō, 1.

**queen**, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*  
**question**, interrogō, 1.

**rather**, *comp. degree*; *wish rather*,  
 mālō (519).  
**read**, legō, 3.  
**receive**, recipiō, 3; accipiō, 3;  
 excipiō, 3.  
**refresh**, recreō, 1.  
**reign**, rēgnō, 1.  
**rejoice**, gaudeō, 2.  
**remain**, maneō, 2.  
**remove** (= *emigrate*), dēmigrō, 1.  
**render**, praebeō, 2.  
**renown**, fāma, -ae, *f.*; glōria, -ae, *f.*  
**reply**, respondeō, 2.  
**return**, redeō (520); revertor, 3.  
**reward**, praemium, -ī, *n.*  
**riches**, divitiae, -ārum, *f.*  
**right (hand)**, dexter, -tra, -trum.  
**river**, flūmen, -inis, *n.*  
**road**, via, -ae, *f.*  
**Roman**, Rōmānus, -a, -um.  
**Rome**, Rōma, -ae, *f.*  
**Romulus**, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*  
**rose**, rosa, -ae, *f.*  
**rout**, fugō, 1.  
**rule**, *n.* imperium, -ī, *n.*  
**rule**, *v.* regō, 3 (513); rēgnō, 1.

**Sabines**, Sabīnī, -ōrum, *m.*  
**sad**, trīstis, -e; maestus, -a, -um.  
**safe**, tūtus, -a, -um.

**safety**, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*  
**sailor**, nauta, -ae, *m.*  
**sake** (*for the sake*), causā, *w. gen*  
**same**, idem, eadem, idem (303).  
**save**, servō, 1; cōservō, 1.  
**say**, dīcō, 3; inquit.  
**Scipio**, Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*  
**sea**, mare, -is, *n.*  
**second**, secundus, -a, -um.  
**see**, videō, 2.  
**seem**, videor, 2.  
**seize**, occupō, 1.  
**self**, ipse, -a, -um (303); suī (245).  
**senate**, senātus, -ūs, *m.*  
**send**, mittō, 3.  
**servant**, servus, -ī, *m.*  
**set (out)**, proficiscor, 3; (**free**),  
 liberō, 1.  
**seventeen**, septendecim.  
**seventh**, septimus, -a, -um.  
**Sextus**, Sextus, -ī, *m.*  
**shake**, agitō, 1.  
**share**, dispertiō, 4.  
**she**, ea (119, c); haec, illa (100, f).  
**shield**, scūtum, -ī, *n.*  
**ship**, nāvis, -is, *f.* (149).  
**short**, brevis, -e.  
**shrewd**, ācer, -cris, -cre.  
**sick**, aeger, -gra, -grum.  
**side** (*on the other side of*), trāns,  
*w. acc.*  
**since**, cum, *w. subj.*; sometimes  
 implied in participle.  
**sixth**, sextus, -a, -um.  
**sixty**, sexāgintā.  
**size**, māgnitūdō, -inis, *f.*  
**skill**, scientia, -ae, *f.*  
**skillful**, **skilled**, perītus, -a, -um.  
**slave**, servus, -ī, *m.*  
**slay**, necō, 1; interficiō, 3.  
**sleep**, somnus, -ī, *m.*

**small**, parvus, -a, -um.

**so**, ita; tam; (**great**), tantus, -a, -um; (**that**), ut; (**as not to**), ut nōn; nē.

**soldier**, miles, -itis, *m.*

**some (one)**, aliquis, -qua, -quid, -quod (308); quīdam, quaedam, quod- or quiddam; *some . . . others*, alii . . . alii; (*of two parties*), alteri . . . alteri; often not expressed.

**something**, aliquid.

**sometimes**, interdum.

**son**, filius, -ī, *m.* (495).

**soon**, mox.

**source**, fōns, fontis, *m.*

**sowing**, sēmentis, -is, *f.*

**space**, spatium, -ī, *n.*

**Spain**, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*

**spear**, hasta, -ae, *f.*

**speedily**, cum celeritāte, celeriter.

**spirit**, animus, -ī, *m.*

**spirited**, ācer, -cris, -cre.

**spur**, calcar, -āris, *n.*

**state**, cīvitas, -ātis, *f.*; rēs publica, rei publicae, *f.*

**statue**, statua, -ae, *f.*

**stature**, statūra, -ae, *f.*; māgnitūdō corporis.

**stay**, manēō, 2.

**stone**, lapis, -idis, *m.*

**story**, fābula, -ae, *f.*

**still**, *adv.* tamen.

**strange**, mirābilis, -e.

**street**, via, -ae, *f.*

**strong**, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.

**sturdy**, validus, -a, -um.

**subdue**, pācō, 1.

**successfully**, optimē; fēliciter.

**suddenly**, subitō.

**suffer**, tolerō, 1; labōrō, 1.

**summer**, aestās, -ātis, *f.*

**sun**, sōl, sōlis, *m.*

**superior**, superior, -ius (199).

**sure (be)**, fac, facite, *w. ut.*

**surpass**, superō, 1.

**survive**, supersum (516).

**swiftly**, celeriter.

**sword**, gladius, -ī, *m.*

**table**, mēsa, -ae, *f.*

**take**, capiō, 3; occupō, 1; sūmō, 3; (**by storm**), expūgnō, 1.

**talent**, talentum, -ī, *n.*

**tale**, fābula, -ae, *f.*

**tall**, altus, -a, -um.

**task**, pēsum, -ī, *n.*

**taste**, gustō, 1.

**tell**, nārrō, 1; dicō, 3.

**temple**, templum, -ī, *n.*

**ten**, decem.

**tender**, tener, -era, -erum.

**tenth**, decimus, -a, -um.

**terrify**, terreō, 2.

**territories**, finēs, -ium, *m.*

**terror**, terror, -ōris, *m.*

**testudo**, testūdō, -inis, *f.*

**than**, quam; *abl.* (194).

**thanksgiving**, supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

**that**, *conj.* (*in purpose or result clauses*), ut; (*after verbs of fearing*), nē; (**not**), nē; ut nōn; (*after verbs of fearing*), ut; (*after verbs of saying and the like*), not translated.

**that**, *demon. pron.*, is, ea, id (119);

ille, -a, -ud (100); iste, -a, -ud

(303); *rel. pron.*, quī, quae,

quod (110). [ea, id (119).

**the**, commonly not expressed; is,

**their**, *gen. plur. of is*; *reflexive*,

suus, -a, -um (247).

**themselves**, *see* self.

**then**, tum.

**there**, ibi; as an expletive, not translated.

**therefore**, igitur.

**thing**, rēs, rei, *f.*; sometimes omitted.

**think**; putō, *i.*

**thirteen**, tredecim.

**thirty**, trīgintā.

**this**, is, ea, id (119); hīc, haec, hōc (100).

**though**, cum, *w. subj.*; sometimes implied in participle.

**thousand**, mille (284, *d*).

**three**, trēs, tria (284).

**three hundred**, trecentī, -ae, -a.

**through**, per, *w. acc.*

**throw**, iaciō, *3.*

**thus**, ita.

**Ticinus (the)**, Ticīnus, -ī, *m.*

**time**, tempus, -oris, *n.*

**tired**, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.

**to**, *sign of dative*; ad, in, *w. acc.*; (*expressing purpose*), ut, *w. subj.*; ad, *w. gerund or gerundive*; causā, *w. gerund or gerundive*; *supine*.

**to-day**, hodiē.

**together with**, cum, *w. abl.*

**toil**, labōrō, *1.*

**touch**, tangō, *3.*

**towards**, ad, in, *w. acc.*

**town**, oppidum, -ī, *n.*

**townsman**, oppidānus, *1, m.*

**train**, educō, *1.*

**triumph**, triumphus, -ī, *m.*

**troops**, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*

**true**, vērus, -a, -um.

**trumpet**, tuba, -ae, *f.*

**trumpeter**, tubicen, -inis, *m.*

**trust**, fidō, *3* (363).

**try**, tentō, *1.*

**turn**, flectō, *3.*

**twenty**, vīgintī.

**two**, duo, -ae, -o; (**which of**), uter, -tra, -trum; (**each of**), uterque, utraque, utrumque.

**under**, sub, *w. acc. and abl.*

**undergo**, subeō (520).

**unknown**, incōgnitus, -a, -um.

**unlike**, dissimilis, -e (198).

**unwilling (be)**, nōlō (519).

**up**, in combination w. verbs, *see* the verbs.

**upon**, in, *w. acc. or abl.*

**use**, ūtor, *3*; *w. abl.*

**useful**, ūtilis, -e.

**valor**, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

**vanquish**, vincō, *3.*

**vehemently**, graviter.

**Vergil**, Vergilius, -ī, *m.*

**very**, *superl. degree*; ipse, -a, -um.

**victor**, victor, -ōris, *m.*

**victory**, victōria, -ae, *f.*

**vine**, vītis, -is, *f.*

**virtue**, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

**voice**, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

**wage (war)**, gerō, *3.*

**walk** (= *take a walk*), ambulō, *1.*

**wall**, mūrus, -ī, *m.*; moenia, -ium, *n.*

**wander through**, peragrō, *1.*

**want** (= *wish*), volō (519); (= *lack*), careō, *2, w. abl.*; dēsum.

**war**, bellum, -ī, *n.*

**warn**, moneō, *2.*

**water**, aqua, -ae, *f.*

**wave**, fluctus, -ūs, *m.*

**way**, *via*, -ae, *f.*; *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*

**weapon**, *tēlum*, -ī, *n.*

**weary**, *dēfessus*, -a, -um.

**well**, *bene* (215).

**what**, *interrog.*, *quis*, *quae*, *quid* (*quod*) (105).

**when**, *cum*, *ubi*.

**whence**, *unde*.

**where**, *ubi*.

**whether**, *num*.

**which**, *quī*, *quae*, *quod* (110); (*of two*), *uter*, *utra*, *utrum* (291).

**while**, *dum*; sometimes implied in participle.

**white**, *albus*, -a, -um.

**whither**, *quō*.

**who**, *rel.*, *quī*, *quae* (110); *interrog.*, *quis*, *quae* (105).

**whole**, *tōtus*, -a, -um (291).

**why**, *cūr*.

**wide**, *lātus*, -a, -um.

**wife**, *uxor*, -ōris, *f.*

**wild beast**, *fera*, -ae, *f.*

**willing (be)**, *volō* (519).

**win**, *reportō*, *i.*

**wine**, *vinum*, -ī, *n.*

**wing (of an army)**, *cornū*, -ūs, *n.*

**winter-quarters**, *hiberna*, -ōrum, *n.*

**wisdom**, *prūdētia*, -ae, *f.*

**wise**, *sapiēns*, -entis; *prūdēns* -entis.

**wish**, *volō* (519); (*not*) *nōlō* (519).

**with**, *cum*, *w. abl.*; sometimes *abl. alone*.

**withdraw**, *discēdō*, *3.*

**without**, *sine*, *w. abl.* [-eris, *f.*

**woman**, *fēmina*, -ae, *f.*; *mulier*,

**wonder**, **wonder at**, *miror*, *i.*

**wont (be)**, *soleō*, *2* (362).

**woods**, *silva*, -ae, *f.*

**word**, *verbum*, -ī, *n.*; *vōx*, *vōcis*, *f.*

**work**, *labōrō*, *i.*

**world**, *orbis terrārum*.

**worse**, *pēior*, -ius (207).

**would that**, *utinam*.

**wound**, *n. vulnus*, -eris, *n.*

**wound**, *v. vulnerō*, *i.*

**write**, *scribō*, *3.*

**writer**, *scriptor*, -ōris, *m.*

**year**, *annus*, -ī, *m.*

**yesterday**, *herī*.

**yonder (that)**, *ille*, -a, -ud (100, *c.*).

**you**, *sing.* *tū*; *plur.* *vōs* (245).

**young**, *iuvenis*, -e (207).

**young man**, **youth**, *adulēscēns*, -entis, *m.*; *iuvenis*, -is, *m.*

**your**, *sing.* *tuus*, -a, -um; *plur.* *vester*, -tra, -trum (247).

**yourselves**, see *self*.

**youth (body of)**, *iuventūs*, -ūtis, *f.*

**Zama**, *Zama*, -ae, *f.*

**zeal**, *studium*, -ī, *n.*

**zealously**, *cum studiō*.

# INDEX.

## A

- ā** declension of nouns, 14-19.
- ā** verbs, 71-74, 88-91.
- ā** and **ab** with ablative of agent, 75, 76.
- ablative case**, 12.
  - absolute, 387, 388.
  - of accompaniment, 241.
  - of agent, 76, 133, *f*.
  - of cause, 132, 133, *f*.
  - of degree of difference, 209, *a*, 210.
  - of description, 139, *a*, 140.
  - of manner, 93, 133, *f*.
  - of means or instrument, 84, 133, *a*.
  - of separation, 412, 413.
  - of specification, 167, *a*, 168.
  - of time, 154, *a*, 155.
  - with prepositions, 405.
  - with *ūtor*, *frutor*, etc., 360, 361.
- ablative** of adjectives of third declension, 163, *c*.
- singular of adjectives used as adverbs, 214, *e*.
- ābus** in dative and ablative of first declension, p. 13, n. 5.
- accē**: 1, 9.
  - in contracted genitive of nouns in *ius*, 59.
- accusative case**, 12.
  - of extent, 259, *a*, 260.
  - like nom. in neuter nouns, 126, *c*.
  - object of transitive verbs, 23.
  - of place whither, 269.
  - singular of adjectives as adverb, 214, *d*.
- subject of the infinitive, 299.
- in indirect discourse, 317-320.
- ācer**, decl., 163, 501; comparison, 191.
- adjectives** of first and second decl. 49.
  - of third declension, 163.
  - irregular (gen. in *ius*), 291, 292.
  - comparison, 190-194, 198-201, 207, 208; meaning of comparative and superlative, 194, *c*.
  - declension of comparatives, 192.
  - irregular comparison, 198-200, 504.
  - comparison by adverbs, 201.
  - positive wanting, 200, 504.
  - interrogative adjectives, 107.
  - possessives, 247.
  - predicate, 50, *a*.
  - with complementary infinitive, 298.
  - in the plural without a noun, p. 44, n. 2.
  - with nouns: agreement, 53; order, 32, *c*, p. 22, n. 2.
  - with ablative of accompaniment, 241, *a*.
  - of description, 139, *a*, 140.
  - of manner, 93.
  - with dative, 27, *c*.
- adverbs**, formation, 214.
  - comparison, 215.
  - in place of positives of adjectives, 200, 504.
- ager**, declension, 500.
- agent**, answers the question *by whom?* 133, *f*.
  - expressed by ablative with *ā* or *ab*, 76.
  - with the gerundive, 465, *c*, 466.
- ager**, declension, 57, 405.
- agreement** of adjectives, 53.



appositives, 45.  
 predicate nouns, 37.  
 relative pronouns, 113.  
*aliquis*, declension, 308, 510.  
*alius*, declension, 292, 502.  
*alius . . . alius* (*alii . . . alii*), meaning, 292, *a*.  
*alphabet*, 1.  
*alter . . . alter*, meaning, 292, *a*.  
*altior*, declension, 192, 503.  
*altus*, comparison, 191.  
*amō*, conjugation, 511.  
*animal*, declension, 148, 496.  
*antecedent* of relative pronouns, 248.  
     of clause of characteristic, 432, *b*.  
*anteponit*, 7, 5; when accented, 9, 2.  
*appeals*, 443, 444.  
*apposition*, 44, 45.  
 arrangement of words in Latin sentence, 32.  
*artiele*, none in Latin, 16, *b*.  
*arx*, declension, 152, 496.  
*audāx*, declension, 163, 501; comparison, 191.  
*audiō*, conjugation, 515.  
*avis*, declined like *ignis*, 148, *c*.

## B

*bonī*, as noun, p. 44, n. 2.  
*bonus*, declension, 500; comparison, 207.  
*bōs*, declension, 499.  
*brevis*, declension, 163, 501; comparison, 191.

## C

*calcar*, declension, 148, 496.  
*capitō*, conjugation, 514.  
*caput*, declension, 126, 496.  
*cardinals*, table of, 505.  
     indeclinable from *quattuor* to *centum*, 284, *b*.  
*case* of relative pronouns, 113.  
*cases*, names, 12 [see under nominative, genitive, etc.].  
*causal clauses*, with *cum*, 434, 435;  
     relative, 432, 433.

*cause*, expressed by the ablative, 132, 388.  
*characteristic ablative* [see ablative of description], 140.  
     relative clauses, 432, 433.  
*characteristic vowels* of the four conjugations, 337.  
*cīvis*, declined like *ignis*, 148, *c*.  
*clauses*, final, 253, *d*.  
     of purpose, 254.  
     relative (of purpose, characteristic, etc.), 432, 433.  
     with *cum*, *when*, 381, 382.  
*clīūs*, declension, 152, 496.  
*colloquia*: for practice on pronunciation, etc., 11, 26, 41.  
*Duo fueri*, 70.  
*Frāter et Sorōrcula*, 137, 162, 289.  
*Pater et Filiolus*, 79, 219, 367.  
*Praeceptor et Discipulus*, 147, 264.  
*Socrātes et Rhadamanthus*, 431.  
*Tityrus et Meliboeus*, 416.  
*commands*, 443, 444.  
*comparative*, declined, 192; *plūs*, declined, 208.  
     followed by the ablative, 194.  
     meaning *too*, 194, *c*.  
*comparison* of adjectives, 190-194, 198-201, 207, 208.  
     irregular, 198-201, 207.  
     by adverbs, 201.  
     six adjectives in *lūs*, 198.  
     irregular superlatives, 199.  
     positive wanting, 200.  
     of adverbs, 215.  
     ablative of, 194.  
*compound tenses* often omit *est*, p. 106, n. 4.  
*conditional sentences*, 448.  
     present and past time with nothing implied, 449, 450.  
     contrary to fact, 450, B, 451.  
     future time, 451, C, D, 452.  
*conjugation*. See verbs.  
*cōnsiliū*, genitive in *i*, 59; declension, 495.  
*consonant* 1, 2.

stems, how named, 125.  
 consonants, 7, 2, 3.  
 how pronounced, 6.  
 cōsul, declension, 138, 496.  
 contraction in perfect and cognate  
 tenses when *v* is lost, 337, *b*.  
 in genitive of nouns in *ium* and *ius*,  
 59.  
 vowel resulting from contraction, 8, 3.  
 cornu, declension, 230, 497.  
 corpus, declension, 138, 496.  
 cum, with abl. of accompaniment, 241.  
 with ablative of manner, 93.  
 joined to ablative of personal pro-  
 nouns, 246, *c*.  
 in clauses of time, 381, 382.  
 causal and concessive, 432-435.

## D

dative case, 12.  
 of agent, 465, *c*, 466.  
 with adjectives, 27, 3.  
 with compound verbs, 397.  
 with compounds of sum, 397, *a*.  
 double dative, 399, *a*.  
 of indirect object, 28.  
 of possession, 29.  
 of service, 398, 399.  
 with intransitive verbs, 372.  
 dea, dat. and abl. plural of, p. 13, n. 5.  
 declension. See *nouns* and *adjectives*.  
 of adjectives of first and second de-  
 clensions, 49-52.  
 of third declension adjectives, 163.  
 of comparatives, 192.  
 degree of difference expressed by the  
 ablative, 209, *a*, 210.  
 demonstrative adjs. and pronouns, 101,  
*a*. See *hic*, *idem*, *ille*, *ipse*, *is*, *iste*.  
 derivation, 342-350.  
 descriptive abl. and gen., 139, *a*, 140.  
 deus, declension, 499.  
 diēs, declension, 258, 498; gender, 257.  
 diphthongs, how pronounced, 5; are  
 long, 8, 3.  
 direct statements, 317.  
 domi as locative, 232.

domum, used of place whither, 269, *a*.  
 domus, declension, 499; gender, 229, 9.  
 construction of, 407, *a*, 408.  
 dōnum, declension, 43, 495.  
 dūc for *dūce*, p. 86, n.  
 dum with present ind., p. 87, n. 1.  
 duo, declension, 284, 502.

## E

*ē* verbs, 172-174, 184-187.  
 ego, declension, 245, 506.  
 precedes pronouns of the second per-  
 son, p. 96, n. 4.  
 eius compared with *suis*, 248, *b*.  
 enclitics, 9, 3.  
 English method of pronunciation, 10.  
 eō, conjugation, 404, 520.  
 est often omitted, p. 106, n. 4.  
 extent of time or space, how expressed,  
 259, *a*, 260.

## F

fables: *Mulier et Gallina*, 481.  
*Puer Mendax*, 484.  
*Rūsticus et Canis Fidēlis*, 483.  
*Senex et Mors*, 485.  
*Vulpes et Lēd*, 486.  
*Vulpes et Ūva*, 482.  
 fac for *face*, p. 103, n.  
 fearing, verbs of, 333.  
 feminine gender, rule, 13, 2.  
 ferō, conjugation, 425, 521.  
 filia, declension of, p. 13, n. 5.  
 filius, vocative, 59, 495, *a*.  
 declension, 495.  
 final clauses, 253, *d*.  
 finis, declined like *ignis*, 148, *c*.  
 finite verb, p. 10, n.  
 fiō, conjugation, 425, 520.  
 formation of words, 342-350.  
 fruor, followed by the ablative, 361.  
 fungor, followed by the ablative, 361.  
 future active participle in intransitive  
 verbs, p. 96, n. 1.  
 conditions (more and less vivid), 451.  
 452.

## G

gender, rules, 13.

- of first declension, p. 7.
- of second declension, 42.
- of third declension, 159.
- of fourth declension, 229.
- of fifth declension, 257.

genitive case, 12.

- descriptive, 139, *a*, 140.
- partitive, 203.
- with nouns, 36.

gerund is a verbal noun, 471.

- nominative supplied by the inf., 471.
- use, 472, 474.

gerundive implies necessity, duty, or obligation, 465, *a*.

- takes the dative of agent, 465, *c*, 466.
- used as a verbal adjective, 473, 474.
- used with *ad* to express purpose, 474 *c*.
- used with *sum* to form the Second Periphrastic Conjugation, 464.

gradus, declension, 230, 497.

## H

hie, declension, 100, 507.

- how related to *is* and *ille*, 119, *b*.
- as a personal pronoun, 245, *a*.

homō, declension, 138, 496.

- distinguished from *vir*, 141.

hortus, declension, 43, 495.

hostis, declension, 148, 496.

- distinguished from *inimicus*, 149.

## I

*i* with force of a consonant before a vowel, 2.

idem, declension, 303, 507; use 304, *e, f*.

igitar, postpositive, p. 33, n. 2.

ignis, declension, 148, 496.

ille, declension, 100, 507.

- common uses, 100, *c-f*.
- as personal pronoun, 245, *a*.

imperative in commands, 443, 444.

impersonal use of verbs, 465, *b*.

in with accusative and ablative, 405, *b, c*.

indefinite antecedent of relative clauses of characteristic, 432, *b*.

indirect discourse, 317-320.

model sentences, 317, 319.

rule, 318.

indirect object, case of, 28.

indirect questions, 420, 421.

infinitive, complementary, 297, *b*.

in indirect discourse, 317, 318.

tenses in indirect discourse, 319, 320.

used as in English, 297.

not used to express purpose, 254, *a*.

regarded as a neuter noun, p. 81, n. 3.

takes a subject accusative, 299.

in compound forms *esse* is often omitted, p. 133, n. 1.

inimicus, distinguished from *hostis*, 149.

instrumental ablative, 84.

answers the question *by what?* 133, 2.

interrogative adjectives, 107, *a, b, c*.

pronouns, 105-107; declined, 105, 509.

table of meanings, 106.

review sentences, 117, 118.

words introducing indirect questions, 421, *a, b*.

interrogō, compared with *quaerō*, 422.

intransitive verbs followed by dative, 372.

*is*, verbs in *is* of the third conjugation, 265-267.

ipse, declension, 303, 507.

used for emphasis, 304, *g*.

distinguished from *is*, 304, *g*.

irregular adjectives (genitive in *ius*), 291, 292, 502.

comparison: of adjectives, 198-200, 207, 504; of adverbs, 215, *b*.

verbs: *es*, 404, 520; *ferō* and *fiō*, 425, 520, 521; *possum* and *prosum*, 395, 518; *volō*, *nolō*, *malō*, 368-370, 519.

*is*, declension, 119, 507.

common uses, 120.

used as a personal pronoun, 245, *a*.

relation to *hic* and *ille*, 119, *b*.

*iste*, declension, 303, 507; uses of, 304, *e, f*.

iter, declension, 499.

Iuppiter, declension, 499.

iuvenis, comparison, 207.

## L

**lapis**, declension, 130, 496.

**liber**, declension, 500.

**liquids**, 3.

**liquid stems**, 125, 138.

declension, 138, 496.

**locative case**, 12.

endings, 180, *b*.

in what words used, 180, *a*.

## M

**māto**, conjugation, 368-370, 519.

**malus**, comparison, 207.

**māgnus**, comparison, 207.

**manner**, how expressed, 92, *a*, 93.

ablative of, answers the question *how*?

133, *3*.

**manus**, gender, 229, *a*.

**mare**, declension, 148, 496.

**masculine**, rule of gender, 13, *r*.

**means**, denoted by the ablative, 84.

ablative of, answers the question *by*

*what*? 83, *a*, 133, *2*.

**Mercurius**, has a vocative in *i*, 59.

**miles**, declension, 126, 496.

**mille**, declension, 284.

**miser**, comparison, 191.

**moneo**, conjugation, 512.

**multa**, used as a noun, p. 44, n. 2.

**multus**, comparison, 207.

**mute**, 3.

followed by a liquid, 8, 5.

**mute stems**, 125; declension, 126, 130,

496.

## N

**nē** = *that (lost)*, 333, *a*.

as negative of wishes and appeals,

441, *a*; 444, *a*.

**-ne**, enclitic, 9, *3*.

when not used, p. 39, n.

**nē nōn** used instead of *nē*, 333, *b*.

**neuter**. See *nouns*.

**nix**, declension, 499.

**noceō**, intrans., and governs dat., 371.

**nōto**, conjugation, 368-370, 519.

the imperatives *nōti* and *nōtite* in neg-

ative appeals or commands, 444, *b*.

**nominative case**, 12.

subject of a finite verb, 22.

in the third declension has a different vowel from the stem, 126, *a*.

drops the final letter of the stem before *s*, 130, *a*.

of pronouns expressed only for emphasis or contrast, 246, *a*.

predicate nominative, 37.

**nōne** expects the answer *yes*, p. 15, n.

**nōs** declension, 245, 506.

**nostrum** is chiefly partitive, 246, *d*.

**nouns**, neuters have accusative like nominative, 126, *c*.

order of noun and adjective, 32, *c*, p. 22, n. 2.

predicate nouns, 36, 37.

rules of gender, 13.

**nox**, declension, 152, 496.

**nūbēs**, declension, 148, 496.

**num** in questions, 421, *b*.

**numerals**, 284, 290; given in 505.

## O

**o-stems** (*second declension*); 42, 43, 57-59.

**object** of a transitive verb, 23.

indirect object, 28.

**optative subjunctive**, 442, *c*.

**order** of words in Latin, 32, 33.

**ordinals**, 505; declined like *bonus*, 290.

## P

**parēs**, genitive plural of, 152, *a*.

**pāreō** intransitive, 371, *a*.

**participles**, agreement, 89, 352.

declension, 352.

equivalents in English, 353, *c*.

force of, 353, *a*, *b*.

future used with *sum* to form the periphrastic conjugations, 462, 464.

have no present passive or perfect active, 351.

in deponent verbs, 359.

perfect of in deponent verbs, 359, *a*.

sometimes rendered as a present, p. 197, n. 13.

**participles**, with *sum*, 353, *d.*  
 uses in general, 353.  
**partitive genitive**, 203.  
**parvus**, how compared, 207.  
**passive**, compound forms, 89.  
     the agent expressed by the ablative  
     with *a* or *ab*, 76.  
**pater**, declension, 138, 496.  
**penult**, 7, 5; when accented, 9, 2.  
**perfect tense**: loss of *v* in, when contrac-  
 tion may take place, 337, *b.*  
     subjunctive in appeals and commands.  
     See also *participles*.  
**periphrastic conjugations**, 462-466.  
**person** of relative pronouns, 248.  
**personal pronouns**. See *pronouns*.  
**persuadeō**, intransitive, 371, *a.*  
**pes**, declension, 130, 496.  
**place**, where, whence, 406, 407.  
     whither, 269, 406, 407.  
**placeo**, intransitive, 371, *a.*  
**plūs**, declension, 208, 503.  
**portus**, irregular dative and ablative  
     plural, 231.  
**possessive adjectives**, 247.  
     dative, 29.  
**possum**, how compounded, 296, *a.*  
     conjugation, 517.  
**postpositive words**, p. 33, n. 2.  
**potior** governs the ablative, 361.  
**predicate nouns** (nominative), 36, 37.  
**prefixes**, their force, 350.  
**prepositions** which govern the abla-  
     tive, 405.  
     used as the positive of adjs., 200,  
     504.  
**present participle** declined, 352.  
**primary tenses**, 418, *a.*  
**princeps**, declension, 126, 496.  
**principal parts** of verbs, p. 26, n.  
**pronouns**, demonstrative: *hic* and *ille*,  
     100, 101, declension, 100, 507; *is*,  
     119; uses, 119, *a, b, c*, 120; relation  
     to *hic* and *ille*, 119, *b*; *iste*, *idem*,  
     *ipse*, 303, 507; uses, 304.  
 indefinite, *aliquis* and *quidam*, declen-  
     sion, 308, 510; *quisquam*, *quilibet*,

*quisvis*, *quisque*, how declined, 308,  
*b*; *quid*-forms used as nouns, 308, *c.*  
 interrogative, 105-107; declension,  
 105, 509; review sentences, 116-118.  
 personal, declension, 245, 506; nomi-  
 native expressed only for emphasis  
 or contrast, 246, *a*; use, 245, *a*, 246,  
 248.  
 possessive. See *possessive adjectives*.  
 reflexive, 245, 246, *b, c.*  
 relative, 110-113; agreement, 113;  
 declension, 110, 508; table of mean-  
 ings, 111; review sentences, 116-  
 118.  
**pronunciation**, Roman method, vowels,  
     4, 5, 6.  
     English method, 10.  
**proper names** in *ius* contract *ī* to *i*, 59.  
**prōsum**, conjugation, 518.  
**prudēs**, declension, 163, 501.  
**puer**, declension, 57, 495.  
**purpose**, or *final* clauses, 253, *d.*  
     expressed by the subjunctive with *ut*  
     and *nē*, 254.  
 accusative of the gerund or gerundive  
     with *ad*, 474, *c.*  
 dative of service, 398, *a.*  
 relative clauses, 432, 433.  
 supine in *um*, 475, 476.  
 not expressed by the infinitive, 254, *a.*

## Q

**quaerō** compared with *interrogō*, 422.  
**quam** with a comparative, 194.  
**-que**, enclitic, 9, 3.  
**questions** (indirect), 420, 421.  
**quid** equivalent to *aliquid* after *si*, *nē*,  
     *nisi*, *num*, p. 123, n. 6.  
**quidam**, declension, 308, 510.  
**quis**, declension, 105, 509.  
**quisquam**, declined like *quidam*, 308, *b.*  
**quilibet**, declined like *quidam*, 308, *b.*  
**quisque**, declined like *quidam*, 308, *b.*  
**quisvis**, declined like *quidam*, 308, *b.*  
     neuter forms in *quid-* are used as  
     nouns, 308, *c.*

quō . . . eō, *the . . . the*, p. 92, n. 5.  
 quod used for *quid* as an interrogative  
 adjective, 107, b.  
 quoque and quōque, p. 129, n.

## B

reading exercises: *Alexander et Parmenio*, 455.  
*De Amicitia*, 402.  
*Nasica et Ennius*, 385.  
*Tubicon*, 479.  
 reading lessons: *A Battle*, 273.  
*Ars Memoriae*, 376.  
*Cerva et Vitis*, 377.  
*Cicerōnis Epistula ad Terentiam Uxorē*, 312.  
*Cornelia's Jewels*, 226.  
*De Vitis Hominum*, 313.  
*Gallia Pacata*, 392.  
*Proserpina*, 457, 458.  
*Scipio and Hannibal*, 144.  
*The Romans and the Sabines*, 97.  
*The Volscians*, 177.  
 reflexive pronouns, 245, 246, b; of the first and second persons, 246, c.  
 regō, conjugation, 513.  
 relative pronouns, 110-113; agreement, 113; declension, 110, 508.  
 clauses of result, purpose, etc., 432, 433.  
 rēs, declension, 258, 498.  
 result expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ut nōn*, 278.  
 rēx, declension, 126, 496.  
 Roman history: *stories of Caesar Octavianus Augustus*, 493.  
*Cincinnātus*, 488.  
*Gaius Duilius*, 489.  
*Gaius Julius Caesar*, 492.  
*Gaius Marius*, 491.  
*Horatius et Curiatius*, 487.  
*Marcus Porcius Catō, Puer*, 490.  
 Roman method of pronouncing Latin, 4, 5, 6.  
 rūs, the accusative of, 269, a.  
 like names of towns, 407, a, 408.

## S

sē, distinguished from *ipse*, 304, g.  
 secondary tenses, 418, a.  
 semi-deponent verbs, 362, a.  
 senex, comparison, 207.  
 separation, how expressed, 412, 413.  
 sequence of tenses, 418, 419.  
 service (dative of), 398, 399.  
 sibilant, 3.  
 space (extent of), 259, a, 260.  
 specification, ablative of, 168.  
 answers the question, in *what respect?* 167, a.  
 stem of a word, defined, p. 7, n.  
 of nouns of the *first declension*, p. 7.  
 of nouns of the *second declension*, p. 16.  
 of nouns of the *third declension*, 124;  
 how found, 126, b; the last vowel changed to form the nominative, 126, a; the last letter dropped to form the nominative, 130, a; mute, 125; declension, 126, 130, 496;  
 liquid, 125; declension, 138, 496;  
*i*-stems, 148, 152, 153; declension, 148, 152, 496; list of *i*-stems, 153.  
 of nouns of the *fourth declension*, p. 89.  
 of nouns of the *fifth declension*, p. 100.  
 of verbs, 73, a.  
 of the *first and second conjugations*, 172, a.  
 sub with accusative and ablative, 405, d.  
 subject of a finite verb, 22.  
 of an infinitive, 298, c, 299.  
 agreement, 65.  
 not expressed, 21, d.  
 position in a sentence, 32, a, b.  
 subjunctive of purpose, 253, 254.  
 result, 277-280.  
 in relative clauses of cause, purpose, result, and characteristic, 432, 433.  
 after verbs of fearing, 333.  
 in less vivid future conditions, 451, 3, 452.

**subjunctive**, in wishes and appeals, 440-444.

with *cum* causal and concessive, 434, 435; temporal, 381, 382.

present tense translated as future, 333, *c*.

**suī**, declension, 245, 506.

distinguished from *ipse*, 304, *g*.

**sum**, conjugation, 516.

compounds, inflected, 395; govern the dative (except *absum* and *possum*), 397, *a*.

**suns**, how formed and declined, 247.

compared with *ēius*, 248, *b*.

**suplne** in *um*, 475, 476.

in *ū*, 476, *b*, *c*.

**syllables**, number of, 7, *i*.

division of, 7, 2, 3.

in compound words, 7, 4.

how named, 7, 5.

## T

**temporal clauses** introduced by *cum*, 381, 382.

**tenses of infinitive** in indirect discourse, 319, 320.

primary and secondary, 418, *a*.

sequence of, 419.

**terminations**, 19, *a*.

**time**, how expressed, 154, 155; extent, 259, *a*, 260.

**towns**, rules for names of, 407.

place whither, 269.

**tōtus**, declension, 292, 502.

**trēs**, declension, 284, 502.

**tu**, as reflexive, 246, *c*.

**tuba**, declension, 19, 494.

**tuns**, how formed and declined, 247.

compared with *vester*, 247, *a*.

## U

**u** as a semi-vowel, p. 2, *n*.

**ultima**, 7, 5.

**ūllus**, rendered *any* after a negative, *sine*, etc., p. 124, *n*. 7.

**ūnus**, declension, 284, 502.

**urbs**, declension, 152, 496.

**ut** of purpose (negative *nō*), 254.

translated in various ways, 253.

of result (negative *ut nōn*), 277, 278.

translated *that not* with verbs of fearing, 333, *a*.

translated *when* or *as*, when followed by the indicative, p. 196, *n*. 6.

**utinam** in subjunc. of appeal, 440, 441.

omitted with the present, 441, *a*.

**ūtor** governs the ablative, 361.

## V

**v**, often lost between vowels in the perfect and cognate tenses, 337, *b*.

**verbs**: agreement, 65; in relative clauses, 248, *a*.

case of subject, 22; of object, 23.

personal endings show the person and number of the omitted subject, 21. *d*.

invariably intransitive give the future active participle in the principal parts, instead of the perfect passive, p. 96, *n*. 1.

transitive in English are often intransitive and govern the dative in Latin, 371, 372.

of *first conjugation*, 71-74, 88-91; conjugation, 511.

of *second conjugation*, 172-174, 184-187; conjugation, 512.

of *third conjugation*, 220-222, 237-239; conjugation, 513; in *id*, 265-267; conjugation, 514.

of *fourth conjugation*, 324-326, 330-332; conjugation, 515.

how conjugations are distinguished, p. 26, *n*. 1.

review of four conjugations, 337-341.

deponents: form, meaning, and characteristics, 358; how conjugated, 359.

periphrastic conjugations, 462-466.

irregular verbs: see under *ed*, *fiō*,

*ferō*, etc.

special constructions: see under *subjunctive*, *infinitive*, *participle*.

**vester**, how formed and declined, 247.

compared with *tuns*, 247, *a*.

**vestrum**, usually partitive, 246, *d*.

**vetus**, comparison, 207.

compared with *senex*, 211.

**victor**, declension, 138, 496.

**videō** in the passive often rendered  
*seem*, p. 96, n. 2.

**vir**, declension, 57, 495.

distinguished from *homō*, 141.

**virtūs**, declension, 130, 496.

**vis**, declension, 499.

**vocabularies**: Latin-English, p. 251.

English-Latin, p. 275.

**vocative case**, 12; use, 43, *δ*.

of proper names in *-ius*, 59.

of *us*-nouns of the second declension,  
43, *a*, 495, *a*.

**volō**, 368-370; conjugation, 519.

**vōs**, declension, 245, 506.

**vowels**, quantity: short, 8, *2*; long, 8, *3*.

**vulnus**, declension, 138, 496.

## W

**whither**, place, how expressed, 269.

**wishes**, 440-442; negative, 441, *a*.





ALLEN AND  
GREENOUGH'S LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

Founded on comparative grammar. Revised and Enlarged by

JAMES B. GREENOUGH,

Assisted by

GEORGE L. KITTREDGE,

*Professors in Harvard University.*

---

12mo. Half leather. 488 pages. For introduction, \$1.20.

THIS is offered as a thoroughly satisfactory manual for preparatory schools and colleges, and it is believed to combine excellences of diverse kinds in such a way as to be the closest possible approach to an ideal grammar.

**First.** This has always been regarded as the truest and soundest of Latin grammar manuals. Instead of making arbitrary laws and distinctions in order to secure an artificial clearness of statement, this grammar has been faithful to the spirit and the facts of the language. This is its fundamental excellence. The grammar explains the language instead of trying to make the language bear out the grammar.

**Second.** The present edition is as strong in class-room availability as it is for linguistic truth. George L. Kittredge, Professor of English at Harvard, was associate reviser, and largely on account of his combining special qualifications in Latin and in English, the style of the grammar was radically improved. It is believed to be now much clearer, more crisp and definite, more interesting and learnable, than any other grammar.

**Third.** Even in all the little points, the closest care was taken in the revision, and scarcely a book can be found in which the excellence is so uniform and in which the finish reaches so faithfully to the minutest details.

**Fourth.** In a word, the consensus of competent opinion seems to fully justify the belief that Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar is clearly the best: best for scholarship, convenience, completeness, and beauty; best for reference; and best for regular study.

*Tracy Peck, Professor of Latin in Yale University:* The essential facts of the language are stated with great clearness, and there is a rich suggestiveness as to the rationale of constructions.

*William A. Packard, Professor of Latin in Princeton University:* I find it essentially improved by the revision and the additions it has received, and regard it as an unsurpassed compendious grammar for use in our schools and colleges.

---

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

# Easy Latin for Sight Reading

FOR SECONDARY SCHOOLS.

*Selections from Ritchie's "Fabulae Faciles," Lhomond's "Urbs Romae Viri Inlustres," and Gellius' "Noctes Atticae."*

Edited, with Introduction, Models for Written Lessons, Idioms, and Annotations,

By **B. L. D'OOGHE,**

*Professor of Latin and Greek in the Michigan State Normal College;  
editor of "Viri Romae," etc.*

---

12mo. Cloth. 146 pages. Illustrated. For introduction, 40 cents.

---

**T**HIS little book is designed to be helpful to those who desire to do more sight reading in secondary schools. It is intended especially for students who wish to learn to read Latin easily and need an elementary guide.

The author holds that students should be taught to read, and to understand as they read, without translation, from the very beginning. The aim from the outset should be to learn to *read Latin*. This is not so difficult, in the opinion of the author, as it seems, and pupils in secondary schools can with proper instruction acquire considerable facility in this direction.

For a well-graded series of selections for higher schools nothing better can be found than Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles*, Lhomond's *Urbs Romae Viri Inlustres*, and Gellius' *Noctes Atticae*. The selections of this book have accordingly been made from these three sources. The *Fabulae Faciles* may be used to advantage during the latter half of the first year and the first part of the second; the selections from *Viri Romae* come next in difficulty, and then those from Gellius. It has been the plan of the author to afford sufficient and suitable material for the entire preparatory course. The quantities are marked.

From considerable experience with classes in sight reading, and from the experience and publications of others, Professor D'Ooge has compiled and formulated in a few introductory pages some hints and suggestions that will be found useful in teaching the art of reading Latin. These are followed by a few models for written lessons, which will be of practical use to the young student.

The increasing and very proper emphasis placed upon translation at sight in the curricula of all our best higher schools and colleges has insured a cordial welcome to this little book.

---

**GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,**

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

# Via Latina

## AN EASY LATIN READER.

By

**WILLIAM C. COLLAR,** *Head-Master of Roxbury  
Latin School, Boston.*

With VOCABULARY by

**CLARENCE W. GLEASON,** *Master in Roxbury  
Latin School.*

---

12mo. Cloth. 203 pages. For introduction, 75 cents.

---

This book is an attempt to bridge the gap between the first Latin manual, covering forms and simple constructions, and a continuous classical work, like the "Lives of Nepos" or Cæsar's "Gallic War." It has been proved by experience that discouragement and great loss of time result from plunging beginners too early into difficult Latin.

This book is designed for a few months of rapid reading, beginning with selections from "The New Gradatim," and ending with the "Life of Cæsar" and the "Alcibiades" of Nepos slightly simplified.

**E. C. Warriner,** *Principal of High School (East Side), Saginaw, Mich.:* It is an excellent selection of easy Latin reading, and a book which is admirably suited for the purpose intended.

**Emma A. Scudder,** *Teacher of Latin, English High School, Cambridge, Mass.:* The subject-matter is interesting, well arranged, and attractive in every respect. I wish we might have such a work introduced into our school to precede Nepos and Cæsar.

**Thomas Fitz-Hugh,** *Professor of Latin, University of Texas, Austin, Tex.:* It shows the same eminently practical and efficient qualities that characterize all of Mr. Collar's text-books. I entirely approve of the general plan. I can imagine no more useful and available manual for every purpose involved in our discussions.

**C. C. Ramsey,** *Principal of High School, Fall River, Mass.:* A capital Latin reader; the notes and vocabulary are excellent and the selections could not be better. -

---

**GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,**

**Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.**

# MOULTON'S LATIN COMPOSITION

By F. P. MOULTON,

*Teacher of Latin in the Hartford High School,*

WITH REVISION AND EDITORIAL ASSISTANCE BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR,

*Head-Master in the Roxbury Latin School, Boston.*

**PREPARATORY LATIN COMPOSITION.** Cloth. 142 pages. 80 cents.

**PART II. A SYSTEMATIC DRILL IN SYNTAX.** Paper. 57 pages.  
25 cents.

**PREPARATORY LATIN COMPOSITION, including A Systematic Drill  
in Syntax. (Complete Edition.)** Cloth. 199 pages. \$1.00.

MOULTON AND COLLAR'S LATIN COMPOSITION, without Part II (Part II is described on the next page), contains connected passages based on each chapter of the first four books of Cæsar, and on six orations of Cicero; there are also supplementary exercises for sight tests.

While the words, idioms, and constructions required in translating into Latin may all be found in the text, the author has avoided the mistake of merely putting together parts of different sentences, taken from the text unchanged, which the pupil may hunt up and put together without knowing the construction of the sentence.

The exercises have been carefully constructed so as to preserve the narrative, style, and spirit of the original. The utmost care has been taken to lead the pupil to observe, appreciate, and use the proper *conjunctions* and *pronouns* which mark the transitions from one sentence to another in Latin.

It has been the constant aim of the author to lead the pupil to acquire a *working knowledge* of grammar, so that he may rely more upon himself and less upon the teacher.

The plan has been adopted of giving numerous cross-references, to foster the habit of comparing various passages in which a given construction, or idiom, occurs, — a practice invaluable to the student at every stage of his progress.

---

**GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,**

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

# TEXT-BOOKS FOR HIGHER SCHOOLS

By WILLIAM C. COLLAR, Head-Master of Roxbury Latin School,  
Boston, and M. GRANT DANIELL, recently Principal  
of Chauncy-Hall School, Boston.

**Collar and Daniell's First Latin Book.** 12mo. Cloth. Illustrated.  
286 pages. For introduction, \$1.00.

**Collar and Daniell's Beginner's Latin Book.** Complete with Grammar  
Exercises, Selections for Translating, and Vocabulary. 12mo. Cloth. 283 pages.  
For introduction, \$1.00.

**Latine Reddenda.** The English-Latin exercises from "The Beginner's Latin Book."  
With Glossarium Grammaticum. 12mo. 41 pages. Paper. For introduction,  
20 cents.  
With Glossarium Grammaticum and English-Latin Vocabulary, 12mo. 58 pages.  
Cloth. For introduction, 30 cents.

**Collar and Daniell's Beginner's Greek Composition.** Based mainly  
upon Xenophon's Anabasis, Book I. Sq. 16mo. Cloth. 201 pages. Illustrated.  
For introduction, 90 cents.

By WILLIAM C. COLLAR.

**Collar's Via Latina.** A new Latin Reader. 12mo. Cloth. 203 pages.  
For introduction, 75 cents.

**Collar's New Gradatim.** Revised. 16mo. Cloth. 189 pages. For  
introduction, 50 cents.

**Collar's Practical Latin Composition.** 12mo. Cloth. 268 pages. For  
introduction, \$1.00.

**Collar's Gate to Caesar.** Sq. 16mo. Cloth. 141 pages. For intro-  
duction, 40 cents.

**Caesar, Gallic War. Book II.** Edited, with Notes and a Vocabulary.  
16mo. Cloth. 96 pages. For introduction, 35 cents. *Latin and Greek School  
Classics.*

**Vergil's Aeneid. Book VII.** Issued both with and without translation.  
16mo. Cloth. Illustrated. For introduction, 45 cents. *Latin and Greek School  
Classics.*

**Collar's Shorter Eysenbach.** Eysenbach's Practical German Grammar.  
Revised and largely rewritten, with Notes to the exercises and Vocabularies.  
Revised by CLARA S. CURTIS. 12mo. Cloth. 242 pages. For introduction,  
\$1.00.

**Collar's German Lessons.** Eysenbach's Practical German Grammar.  
Revised and largely rewritten, with Notes, Selections for Reading, and Vocabu-  
laries. 12mo. Cloth. 360 pages. For introduction, \$1.20.

**Collar's English into German.** The English Exercises from Collar's  
Eysenbach's German Lessons. 12mo. Paper. 51 pages. For introduction,  
25 cents.

---

**GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,**

**Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.**

# ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S NEW CAESAR

EDITED BY

JAMES B. GREENOUGH, Professor of Latin in Harvard University, B. L. D'OOGHE, Professor of Latin and Greek in Michigan State Normal College, Ypsilanti, and M. GRANT DANIELL, recently Principal of Chauncy-Hall School, formerly Master in the Roxbury Latin School, Boston.

---

Seven books. 12mo. Half morocco. Fully illustrated. 1x + 432 pages.  
With a special vocabulary of 162 pages.  
For introduction, \$1.25.

---

THIS new edition of Caesar's "Gallic War" keeps prominently in view the needs of the beginner, on the ground that a large majority of those who read Caesar take it up immediately after finishing their first lessons. It is believed that all this class of students' needs have been fully met in the present edition.

Professor Greenough has specially qualified himself for editing this edition by traveling and making recent investigations in France. Not only the notes, but the illustrations have profited greatly. A considerable number of the pictures in this edition are from photographs made especially for it. In other cases, pictures not previously seen in this country have been obtained. The museums have been visited and many new illustrations drawn from them. At the same time, all the standard and essential illustrations are used. It is believed that this part of the editing will be found of signal excellence and practical value.

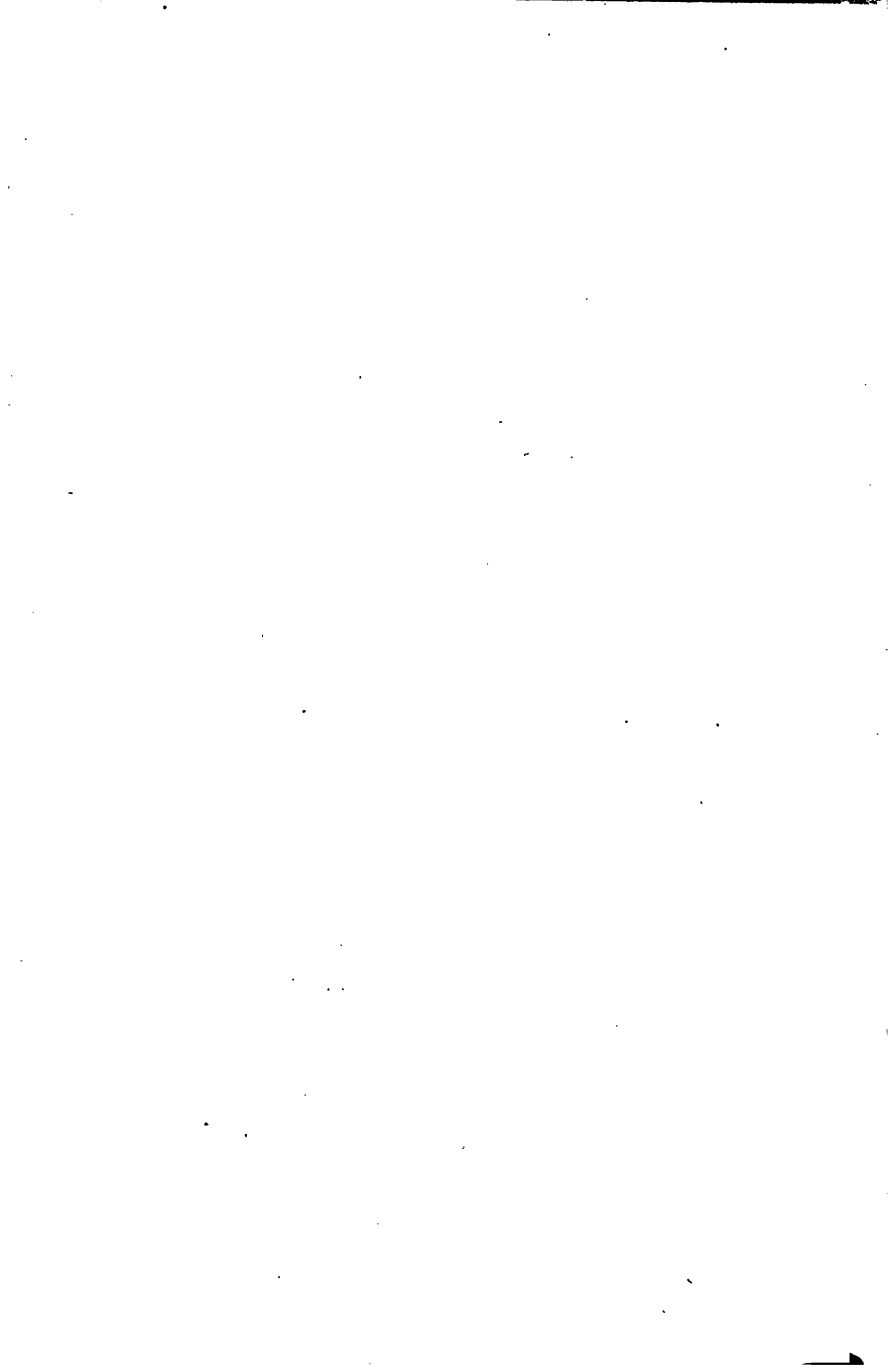
Several reading courses are suggested, each one of which, while embracing an amount of text equal to the first four books, contains choice selections of narrative and adventure from the various books. It is believed that this feature will be especially acceptable to teachers who have found the monotony of Caesar irksome, but have seen no way to vary the course.

The text has been revised, many changes having been made, and the whole presents the commentaries in an ideal form for rapid and enjoyable reading. Quantities of long vowels are marked.

---

**GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,**

**Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.**





To avoid fine, this book should be returned on  
or before the date last stamped below

228-7-42

--	--	--



Collar, W.C.  
The first Latin book.

326

68532

[illegible]

